



3 1761 02002017 8

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



This book is purchased from  
The Schofield Fund  
given in memory of  
William Henry Schofield  
Victoria College, B.A. 1889  
Harvard University, Ph. D. 1895  
Professor of Comparative Literature  
Harvard University, 1906-20.  
Harvard Exchange Professor at  
University of Berlin, 1907  
Lecturer at the Sorbonne and  
University of Copenhagen, 1910.  
Harvard Exchange Professor at  
Western Colleges, 1918.











# The Three Kings' Sons.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LXVII.

1895.

(19)

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

# The Three Kings' Songs.

(ENGLISH FROM THE FRENCH.)

---

## PART I, THE TEXT.

EDITED FROM ITS UNIQUE MS, HARLEIAN 326, ABOUT 1500 A.D.

BY

F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A.,

TRINITY HALL, CAMBRIDGE; HON. DR. PHIL., BERLIN.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

By KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,

PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1895.

PR  
1119  
E5  
no. 67

61033  
22-1-37

Extra Series, LXVII.

---

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

## FOREWORDS.

WHAT a blessing it was, in old Days of Romance, for a Christian King, beset by Turks, to have a beautiful daughter! Of course all the young Princes and knights of Christendom pictured to themselves the lovely girl in distress, about to be sacrificed to a Heathen brute, and they at once resolved to go and fight for her father, and marry her. They thus kild two—nay, three—birds with one stone: first, they fought for the Faith, and saved their souls; next, they got a chance of the girl; and last, of her father's Kingdom. War, Love, and Sovereignty,—what could a man want more?

Here, surely, was a good subject for a story; and so thought the Frenchman—David Aubert, or some one else<sup>1</sup>—who wrote the original of the englisht romance (Harl. 326, ab. 1500 A.D.) told in the following pages. It is not a stirring narrative, for it's after the time when men really cared for fighting. In all the battles, no one is split in two; no one has his head clean cut off at one swipe; no one's back is broken; no one's arm or leg even is chopt right off. All the old details of a combat are smotherd up in generalities. Folks' feelings and apprehensions are dwelt upon; and the repetitions are as frequent and as tedious as in Tory speeches against Home Rule. Still, the story is readable, and this it is in brief:—

King Alfour of Sicily is invaded and half-conquered by the Turks. He has a lovely daughter Iolante. To help them, Prince Philip of France steals away incognito from Paris, and falls ill in Toledo. When well, he proceeds to Sicily with one of King Alfour's generals, Ferant, whom he rescues from

<sup>1</sup> "Several copies of this Romance are in the Bibliothèque Nationale, one of which (No. 6766) is described by Paulin Paris in *Les Manuscrits François*, tome i. (1836), pp. 106—108. This French MS was transcribed at Hesdin in 1463 by David Aubert, librarian to Philip the Good, Duke of Burgundy. For an account of Aubert, see the description of vol. i. of Perceforest in Royal MS. 15. E. V. (under *British and English Traditions*), in the authorship of which romance he there (at f. 3) claims (p. 2) a share. It seems that he makes a similar claim in the MS of the 'Conquestes du noble empereur Charlemaine' (see J. Marchal's *Catalogue des MSS . . . de Bourgogne*, Brussels, tome ii. p. 291); and it is conjectured by Gaston Paris (*Histoire poétique de Charlemagne*, 1865, p. 96) that the whole authorship of the present Romance may not improbably be ascribed to David Aubert."—H. Ward's *Catalog*. i. 782-3.

the Turks, when taken in his first battle, and also captures King Ferabras of Persia. On seeing Princess Iolante, Philip falls violently in love with her.

Also to aid King Alfour, a joint expedition of French, Scotch and English troops, led by Prince David of Scotland, sails for Sicily, but is repulst. Afterwards a storm wrecks the allied fleet, and Prince David is saved from his Turkish foes, only by the mercy of Orcays, the Sultan's son, who soon sets him free, and sends him to Ferant and Prince Philip. They fight often with the Turks, and win, as Philip and David hearten the downcast Sicilian troops. Prince David falls in love with Iolante too.

Meantime, the third King's son, Prince Humphrey of England, steals away from England, also to help King Alfour. His ship is driven ashore at a Turkish town, and he is thrown into a dungeon. From this, he is freed by K. Ferabras of Persia, who has been temporarily releast by the Sicilians, and has promist to liberate Christian prisoners. By him, Prince Humphrey is enabled to join Prince Philip of France and Prince David of Scotland, and all three incognito,<sup>1</sup> are servants of Ferant, and attend on Princess Iolante, whom they all, of course, love. The Turkish prince, Orcays, who is taken prisoner, is also desperately in love with her.

In one battle, Prince Philip is taken, and beaten till he bleeds, by the Sultan, but is rescued. At last the Sultan is slain. King Alfour—by the help of the Three Princes—recovers all his cities, drives out the Turks, and is made Emperor of Germany.

War being over, the Three Princes go home, but return the next May as Kings—of France, England, and Scotland,—their fathers having died. They come back for the grand three-days' Tourney for the hand of Princess Iolante. King Philip of France wins her; and as the other kings have to be provided with wives, King Humphrey of England gives one of his beautiful sisters to King David of Scotland, and the other to the Sultan of Turkey; while he himself weds the Sultan's lovely sister, who has followd her brother's example, and turnd Christian. There are grand wedding festivities; and the Emperor and Kings visit one another. King Philip gets Sicily after the Emperor's death. He and Kings Humphrey and David live happy with their wives, and have lots of fine children; but Sultan Orcays dies soon, childless; and his English widow comes back to England.

For language, the text has not much interest—to me, at least. *Finance*<sup>2</sup> for 'ransom' (p. 20/39, 93/13, &c.); 'yngoodly' for excellent (p. 174/23),

<sup>1</sup> Prince Philip's incognito is 'Le Despurven' till Iolante changes it to 'Le Surnome.' Prince David is 'Athis,' and Prince Humphrey 'Ector.'

<sup>2</sup> This word is also used thus in the Romance of *Partenay*, l. 1853.



'amegred' = emaciated, Fr. *amaigrir* (p. 9/36); 'chapelet,' metaphorically (p. 25/1); 'ensured' = trained (p. 10/18), and a few other words are noteworthy: see Mr. Thomas Austin's Glossary, where some interesting information, glossing Thucydides (IV. 135), will be found on p. 123/3. But Dr. Leon Kellner will deal with the Vocabulary, Syntax, sources, &c. in his Introduction. He was to have edited the Text,—of which his Wife made an excellent copy for the Society,—but he was prevented by his revision of Dr. R. Morris's *Historical English Accidence*. I therefore had to take up *The Three Kings' Sons*, and here is Part I. Dr. Kellner has collated the English text with its French original in Paris, and hopes to give us Part II next year. Our knowledge of the existence of the English version is due to Mr. Henry Ward's admirable *Catalogue of the Romances in the British Museum*, one of the best bits of work that any member of the Museum staff has ever turned out.

F. J. FURNIVALL.

3, St. George's Square, London, N.W.,  
Saturday midnight, 9 Sept. 1893.



# The Threë Kings' Sons.

[Harley 326, leaf 8. The slight tags to final f and g are not printed].

4 **A**ftir the crucifyng of oure lord Ihesu crist, and that the After Christ's death,  
 holy cristen feith was magnified and augmented in alle  
 the Reaumes that at this day be cristened / and that  
 were founde in oure holy feith by the Apostells, and  
 aftir by the holy doctoures / that same feith of oure  
 lord Ihesu crist was so moche honoured and kepte that  
 alle cristen Reaumes were in so good tranquillite and pees, that and when all Christian lands are at peace,  
8 there was no warre a-monges them. ¶ And in this tyme reigned a  
 kyng in ffrance, of right excellent and grete recommendacion,  
 whos name was Charles, and had weddid a right faire lady, Charles, the King of France, weds a princess of Naverne.  
2 daughter to the kyng of Naverne, whiche for hir vertues was so  
 moche biloued and honoured of alle maner people thoroughout the  
 Reaume, that more might no princesse be / The kyng and the  
 Quene governed the Reaume in suche loue, pees, and concord, that  
 the laude & praise therof sounded and spred ouer alle the worlde,  
6 for neuer thei did nor suffred, to their power, no creature to haue  
 wrong nor violence; and if any gentilman were disherite bi mys- They help all men in trouble,  
 fortune or euil governaunce of his fadir, or were in any maner  
 mysery or trouble, thei wolde helpe and comfort hym, & do their  
20 deuoir to recouer hym <sup>his</sup> right, and suche honour as he was born [ leaf 8, bk.]  
 vnto. And in like wise, if ther were any poure gentilwoman  
 frendles / thei wold helpe to mary hir / and so did they by Mar- and poor girls to marry.  
 chauntes that were fallen in-to pouerte by Infortune: thei wold  
24 releue them / and so wele thei did, pat by their merites the grace  
 of god so largely abounded in them that thei had a sone / wherof At last they have a son,  
 thei were so ioifull / that more they might not be; and good cause  
 had thei to be glad / for long it was or they had any / and at laste  
28 god sent them suche one as was bettir than any man can write of,  
 aswele towards god as to the world / and god had formed hym of  
 suche beaute, witte, trouthe and worthynes / and of alle condicions

THREE KINGS' SONS.

B

the best possible.

All the realm  
thank God.

The Prince  
is christend  
Philip,

is well  
brought-up,

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 9]

and grows  
wiser and  
better till he  
is 19.

Now I turn  
to the King  
of Sicily.

that to a kynges sone perteyne to haue, not only for to gouerne that Reaume / but for to haue had al that part of the world vnder his gouernaunce. Now may ye thynke wele / that at his birthe the kyng & the Quene, and alle the Reaume, were gretly reioised / and 4  
gave thankinges and preisynges to god, with general processions, doying thorough alle the Reaume as belongeth to suche cas / and moche more were thei comfortid / that the Reaume shold be succeeded by hym that came of that noble lyne / than of any othir cristen 8  
prince that they myght haue aftir the deth of their kyng. ¶ It is to thinke<sup>1</sup> that childe was cristened as to a kynges sone bilongeth / and he was named Philip. ¶ Of his norture & of his kepyng in his childhode / it is to thynke<sup>1</sup> also that he was diligently kepte / 12  
and whan he was paste vij. yere age / he was putte in the handes of notable knyghtes / whiche were chosen by the kyng and his counseill for the most noble of the Reaume, bycause that by them he shulde be induced in alle good maners & condicions ; for at that tyme / the 16  
sones of kynges and of grete princes aftir that age were put in the handes of the moost notable knyghtes and worthi men / that the kynges or princes had in their lond / for bicause that the condicions of princes may many tymes auaille and helpe to the comon 20  
wele / and that princes wele condicioned may make and restore a desolat Reaume / and the contrary may put the moost noble and myghti Reaume in captyuyte & wrecchidnes. ¶ Wherefore it befell that this yonge Philip, the kynges sone, was so wele & honorably 24  
norissched to god-ward and to the worlde / that alle thei of the Reaume, grete and litle, loued hym as moche as fadir myght loue  
the childe / and with all this was <sup>2</sup>he the moost faire creature that any hert coude deuise / and the moost anyable persone to beholde / 28  
that they that beheld hym, consideryng the maner & condicions werwith he was enewred / coude neuer be satisfied in beholdyng hym, so moche thei desired it / and more and more multiplied and grewe in hym witte, trouthe and curtesie / so long til he came to the 32  
age of xix. yere, in such perfeccion as I haue tolde you / so moche biloued and so moche honoured / that vnnethe was there any withyn the Reaume that coude be wele content without they had seyn hym sumtyme of the yere. ¶ Now shal I leue of a while to speke of 36  
hym til tyme shal be / and shal speke of the kyng of Syzile, whiche was at that tyme the next Reaume vnto the mysbileuers and enemyes of the feith / the whiche suffrid for the feith of Ihesu crist

<sup>1</sup> Bear in mind, remember.

moche peyne and duresse / he and alle tho of his Reaume / yn-so-  
moche that they were brought to the vttirmost poynt of there  
destrucccion / sauf that god sent them socours / like as ye may here

4 fether yn this present Boke.

[*Illumination: a Wedding.*]

**N**ow seith the tale / that than was there a kyng yn that  
Reaume named Alfour, a valaunt knight, and gretely  
loned & dred god / and kepte his commaundementes as-  
moche as any prince might, and so shewed it wele; for to  
sustene the feith / put he his body many <sup>1</sup>tymes in auenture / and  
shedde his blode in diuerse batailles. ¶ This kyng was to mary /  
and,—for to haue comfort and helpe ayenst the miscreauntes / that  
night and day made him warre, aswele the Turke as othir / holding  
the dampnable feith of Machoumete,—had counseH of his princes  
and Barons to aske to wif the doughter of the kyng of Spayne, named  
Sybille / And the kyng of Spayne was called Albors, and had to  
wif the doughter of the kyng of Portyngale / and it was concluded  
by the hole counseH of the Reaume / that in asmoche as the kyng  
of ffrance had no doughter / that this was the moost myghty place  
for the kyng of Sizile to be alied with / to haue helpe and comfort  
for to sustene his warres. ¶ Now then were notable messangers  
sent forth / and thei labored so that, by the kyng of Spayne, his  
doughter was agreed & yeuen to the kyng of Syzile; wherof aH his  
Reaume was right ioifuH, and trusted by tho seide kyng of Spayne  
to be gretely socoured and holpen. ¶ Now was this lady delyuerd  
to the Ambassatours, whiche brought hir in-to the Reaume of Sizile,  
wher-as she was resceyued with fulle grete honour / the kyng  
maried hir with right grete ioie / and withyn litle while she was  
with Childe / wherof the Reaume was gretly reioised / abidyng the  
grace of god til it came to the tyme of .ix. monethes ende / that she  
was deliuerd / and had a doughter whiche was cristened and named  
Iolante. whiche was in hir daies the fairest lady of the world / best  
condicioned and the best biloued; & not without cause / for in hir  
were all the noble vertues that might or ought to be comprised in  
so high a pryncesse / and to reherce fether .I. passe ouir / for I haue  
neithir witte nor tonge that suffiseth therto / ffor in hir tyme she  
passed in beaute and vertu aH that part of the worlde / for aH-  
though the kyng hir ffather were so good a prince & so valiaunt a  
knyght / yit was the Reaume more susteyned and aided by a hundird  
part for hir sake than for his, for the pite that euery body had of  
the destrucccion of such one as she was / And whan she came to

King Alfour  
of Sicily

[leaf 9, bk.]

(In order to  
get help  
against the  
heathen)

asks for  
Princess Sy-  
bil of Spain  
(daughter of  
K. Albors),

and weds her.

She has a  
lovely girl,  
Iolante,

the most  
beautiful in  
that part of  
the world.

4 *King Alfour afterwards seeks help, and gets it for Iolante's sake.*

K. Albors  
will not wed  
Iolante to a  
Turk,

and is then so  
warred against  
[1 leaf 10]

that he has  
to ask help  
from all  
Christian  
kings.

French and  
other knights  
also beg for  
aid for Sicily,

and the mat-  
ter is talkt  
about at every  
Court.

the age of .xiiij. yere / hir renone was so grete that it spredde  
thorough the worlde. And yif the kynge hir ffadir wold haue yeuen  
hir to the grete Turke for his eldest sone, he might haue had peas  
for hym and aH his Reaume; but he wold in no wise be agreable 4  
therto, for he was so verry parfit goddys knyght, that he had leuer  
a diede / And thus eueri day increasid his warres / and his losse  
grewe more and more; but vigorously, and 1as a valiaunt knyght,  
he diffendid his Reaume so long, til his tresour was nygh dispendid / 8  
and his Reaume at the poynt of perdicion, his noble men amen-  
yssht be the warres, in-so-moche that he was fayne to sende to alle  
cristen kynges, to asserteyne hem what cas he was yn / requiryng  
hem in the name of oure lorde Ihesu criste / that, forto mayntene his 12  
holy feith / they wold socoure hym & helpe hym. ¶ Now trewe it  
was that many notable knyghtes, that had no warres in the cristen  
Reaumes, disported them thorough diuerse Reaumes / wherof many  
passid by the Reaume of Sizile / and whan thei vndirstode the 16  
warres that were there / some of them contynued stille there / and  
some retourned in-to their contrees / to abile them self for the warres  
whiche were dispuruaide there / wherof there were diuerse knyghtes  
of ffrance / aswele as of othir contrees / that were come out of the 20  
Reaume of Sizile / & euerich exorted gretly their kynge or prince,  
vndir whos obeisaunce thei were, to entreprynse the viage, & shewed  
them the grete pite that was of the Reaume, & of that faire & good  
lady the kynges doughter / of whom eueri man seide more wele than 24  
othir / and for the pite & loue that many had of hir / thei abode ful  
long in the kynges seruice at their owne charge, for he was not of  
power to sowde them / the Reaume was so gretely empouerysht /  
thus for hir loue had he the seruice of many a noble knyght. 28  
**T**Hies tidynges were opende & knowen thorough aH cristendome  
to alle kynges and prynces / yn so moche / that there was  
daily grete speche therof yn euery Court, Seyng that the reaume of  
Sizile was nygh lost without any socours, whiche was to grete a 32  
pite that so valiaunt a prince / and so noble a Reaume, & so grete,  
so faire & so good a lady, shold so be destroyed by the myscreauntes,  
which was to grete a shame to aH cristen Reaumes, seeng the litle  
seruice they did to god, wherthorough they dred that god wold 36  
vtirly be displeid / All thies thinges were often deuised in eueri  
Court / but for aH that / was noon that adressed hem, neither to go  
nor to sende any socours. ¶ I ye haue herde here-to-fore the maner  
& condicions of Philip the sone of the kynge of ffrance / that was 40

the yong man of the worlde that moost loued & dred god. This  
viage of Sizile herd he often spoken of, and many tymes wolde he  
speke to his fadir, and meue him as ferre as he durst, to sende som  
4 socours to this poure kyng of Sizile / and besought hym to be ware  
of goddes displeasir, 'remembryng the grete wele / god had yeuē  
hym / the Reaume, & the grete possession that he helde / the tran-  
quillite and peas that was in his Reaume / and he to do no thyng  
8 in the service of hym that had yeuē him all that / and though  
there were noon othir thinge but pite / that aught to meue euēri  
prince to the socours of so honorable a kynge and so faire a lady.  
Thus many tymes & ofte the right noble sone of the kynge of  
12 fraunce amonested his fadir, & so long þat þe kyng was con-  
streyned to answer him, seyng thiese wordes / "my sone, .I.  
knowe wele / that in this that ye exorte me to do socours to the  
kyng of Sizile, cometh of an high and a noble corage, wherof I am  
16 right glad & wele content / but y must remembre agein the charge  
of this Reaume, the payne and trauaile that .I. haue had, and haue,  
to kepe & mayntene it in good peas / for many grete prynces &  
lordes holde of me / that somtyme by enuy and presumption  
20 wold rebelle and reise werre / wherby the Reaume shold gretly  
be empeired / but by grete iustise that y haue alwey kepte, & euer  
shal to my power, wherfore it neuer yit bifelle so, ne neuer shaft,  
yif god be-pleasid. And be sure I haue remembred this matier ful  
24 ofte, and fayn wold do suche service as might be to god agreable /  
but I wote not how, for yif .I. shold sende any of my blode / the  
remenaunt that be of estate wold haue enuy ther-ate / and othir  
kynges and princes that wold go vndir me wold not go vndir them /  
28 & thus the service that y shol[d] do to god might litil profit or  
nought / And yif y shold go in myn oune persone / the Reaume that  
god hath yeue me to kepe shold be without a gouernour / for ye be  
but yonge yet / and thus at my comyng ageyn / yif euer it pleased  
32 god I shold retourne, I might lightly fynde my Reaume empeired  
and divided in such maner that it might be grete damage to vs  
bothe, & to the comon wele / wherof we sholde come to late to  
repentaunce. And yif y sholde sende you forth / take hede hou  
36 other kynges and princes wold be content to go vndir you & in  
your company / but rathir might growe enuy / wherof might falle to  
you such mysauenture / that y had leuer god sende me the dethe /  
ye knowe wele that in you is all my trust / and the only comfort of  
40 this Reaume, and for this y wol that ye haue no lenger hope nor

Prince Philip  
urges his  
father, K.  
Charles,  
to help the  
poor king of  
Sicily.  
[1 lf. 10, bk.]

But K.  
Charles  
makes ex-  
cuses:

It would in-  
jure France,

stir up enuy  
among his  
nobles,

risk the  
Prince's life;

6 *King Charles will not help the King of Sicily. No one else does.*

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 11]

and if he was  
kilt, France  
would be  
more desolate  
than Sicily.

The King of  
Spain does  
not help his  
son-in-law;

nor does the  
King of Eng-  
land

or the King  
of Scotland,

or the Em-  
peror,

or any Ger-  
man prince.

desire to go, nor entreprynse this viage / for and I knewe any man  
withyn my Reaume, were he neuer so gret, that wold yeuē you any  
counseH or <sup>1</sup>comfort theryn, he sholde dye for it, as he that wele  
had deserved it, for he shold take out of this Reaume the grace 4  
that god hath yeuē vs / that is, to haue an heire male aftir my  
daies, whiche is ynough to the pleasir of aH the Reaume / By whos  
losse this Reaume sholde be more desolate / then that of Sizile; not  
by the ennemyes of the feithe, but be enuy & warre of grete 8  
princes marchers vnto this Reaume, whiche thinge may lightly by-  
falle for lakke of Iustice and good gouernaunce. But y trust yu  
god that, of his grace, aftir my daies ye shaH guyde this Reaume as  
wele as y haue don, & better / if it please hym to yeuē you lif, 12  
whiche is the thyng in the worlde that y moost desire / therfore,  
yif ye haue had any desire a-fore this to take on you that viage,  
lete it passe out of your mynde / for my hert can neuer be agreable  
therto / ye se also othir cristen princes, in especiaH the kynge of 16  
Spayne, whos doughter the kynge of Sizile hath married, in trust to  
haue helpe & comfort of hym / yit y can not vndirstonde that he is  
any thyng comforted by hym. Beholde o that othir side, The  
kyng of Ingland hath a sone, right wele condicioned as men say / 20  
and of age to entreprynse suche auentures / & he hath .ij. faire  
doughters, wherby he is comforted that the Reaume shaH not out  
of the lyne / & he knoweth thies tidynge aswele as y do / yit can  
y here no worle that he any thyng peruaieH to the socours of the 24  
kynge of Sizile / Beholde / ferther, the kynge of Scottes, that hath  
.iiij. sones, wherof / one is in the age of Armes, wele norissed &  
condicioned, as y vndirstonde / & wele may ye wite that he hath  
thies tidynge aswele as othir / and he doth nothyng ther-to, and 28  
yet is he the kynge that hath leste excuse, sith he hath .iiij. sones,  
as it is saide / and yif he wold sende forth one of them / and sende  
vnto the kynge of Inglande and to me / y wote wele that for to do  
seruice vnto god / ther is noon of vs two but wolde aide therto 32  
vnto oure power. Se ferther, also the Emperour, that sholde be  
the verry trewe defence of the Churchē, & sustenaunce / and the  
right arme that aught to be defender / and y can here no thyng  
that he doth to the socours, helpe or comfort of the kyng of Sizile. 36  
Then I, that am ferre from the marches, & of noon acquey[n]taunce  
nor alliaunce, shold be the first premeuer or exorter to enterprynse  
the viage, it accordeth not. Beholde thorough all almayne, where as  
so many grete princes be, whiche of theym presenteth hem forward / 40



- whan I fynde any that <sup>1</sup>this Viage wol take vpon theym, & they  
sende to me, seurely y shal do seruice to god to my power; but tyl  
that tyme I wol not entremete me ther-with." ¶ This yonge  
4 Philippe, vnderstandyng the wordes of his ffadir, considering  
that they were resonable, dredyng his displeasir, answerd hym  
litol, seyng al sobrelly / "My lord, y know weH youre causes be  
good & resonable / but and eueri Prynce be of that opinion / the  
8 socours ys like to come to late to the good kynge of Sizile. Where  
nedith to be sought a gretter prynce or a better gouernour than he  
is / yif it pleased your grace to sende him of youre folkys. and  
yif ye thinke ther sholde growe any enuy to sende them in the  
12 conduyt of a grete lorde / put hem then in the gouernaunce of  
knyghtes, suche as be notable, & preued wise and worthy; and  
yeue them in charge to do what the kynge wil commaunde them /  
and thus shal thei be sure of a good Capteyne / And than shal  
16 there be no cristen prynce but that may and aught to make of you  
his mirroure & example to do as ye haue dōn, to þe wele of aH  
cristendome, wherof the honour shold be doubled in you, yn-  
asmoche as ye were the first meuer & begynner therof."
- 20 **T**He kynge, considering the wordes of his sone, thought hem  
trewe & right honorable / al-though he had no wille therto /  
yit answerd hym thus: "my sone, youre seyng is good and  
laudable, & I wol remembre it / and take auyse vpon your exorta-  
24 cion." The right noble sone of the kynge was wise, and knewe  
anoon / that this was but a meane to be delyuerd of hym, & that  
he had no wille to entende to this matter; & thus moornyng, pensif  
and right soroufult, he departed fro hym / & went to his chambre,  
28 where-as were many noble folkes; and he withdrewe hym in-to  
an Inner chambre with suche as pleasid hym / and made one rede  
holy stories and lyues of Seyntes, seruantes to the cristen feith /  
wher-by he sawe the paynes and trauailes that the holy Apostells  
32 and Martirs had sofred to gete the perdurable glorie. Sone aftir he  
went ayen in-to his Chambre, where-as he founde many yonge  
lordes, sonys to the grete princes and grete lordes of the Reaume /  
that had be brought vp of childhode with hym, whiche caused  
36 bitwene him and them a verry naturel loue; and they exorted hym  
to speke to the kynge for this Viage of Sizile, whiche they knewe  
for trouthe that ouir alle thyng he desired; & gladly eueri man  
meueth his maister of suche matiers as moost may please hym /  
40 Also eche of <sup>2</sup>theym was of the age to bere Armes / and ouir aH

[1. 11, bk.]  
Till they  
move, he,  
K. Charles,  
will do no-  
thing.

Prince Phillp  
answers his  
father's ob-  
jections,

and urges  
him to help  
K. Alfour.

K. Charles  
puts his son  
off:

says he'll  
think about  
it.

Prince Phillip  
goes, griev-  
ing,

to his room,

where his  
young friends  
urge the  
Sicilian enter-  
prise on him.

Prince  
Philip says  
little,

but in bed

reflects on the  
vanity of  
earthly glory.

He desires to  
be employed in  
God's service,

and to work,  
like the  
Saints, alone.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 12, bk.]  
He resolves  
to give up  
his heirship  
to the Crown,

thyng desired to be at that viage / and often saide to their maister /  
 "yif ye myghte haue this viage, ye shold haue al the sute of the  
 world / for eueri man wold be ioifuH to put hym vndir you. Ector  
 of Troie nor Alisaundre had neuer the renome that ye shold haue 4  
 aftir your dethe" / This yong philippe, heryng dayly thies wordes,  
 knowyng the kynges pleasir contrary, answerd lesse than he was  
 wont to do, wherof they that spake to hym of þe matier were  
 abashed, & thought in hem self that he was not so hote ther-yn as 8  
 he had ben bifore / but for trouthe he was more ardaunt in his  
 mynde than euir he was. Thus euerichon departid, for it was tyme  
 to go to slepe. This yong prince beyng in his bedde, contynuelly  
 thinkyng on the wordes that he had hadde with his ffadir / aftir 12  
 came him to remembraunce the stories he hadde herd redde a litle  
 bifore his going to bedde / callyng to mynde also / the paynes that  
 be in this world / hou myghti a kyng someuer he be, here hath he  
 no surete in noon erthly thyng / but only of the kyngdom of 16  
 heuen, that neuer hath fyne / thus he debated in him self, seyng  
 thies wordes / "A, verray god! y may do the no seruice / I haue  
 the wille, but I haue not the power / I remembre the paynes /  
 the seyntes of whom I rede to day endured to come to thy Reaume. 20  
 Alas! y had neuer payn for the / but aH wele and glorie / hou may  
 y than achene that crowne without ende / I am of thy grace  
 abidyng on that is erthly / whiche right sone y may lese / for  
 dethe shal make the departyng; & than shaH I haue no more 24  
 possessioun nor part yn erthe than the porest in this Reaume;  
 wele cured were I, yif y might make a chaunge of that crowne that  
 is morteH, for that whiche ys ymmorteH. So y pray the, very god,  
 þat of thy grace thou wilt helpe me, though y may not now / that 28  
 here-aftir this Reaume and I may be employed in thy seruice."  
 After, he torned hym in his bedde, and said in this wise: "what  
 seruice may y do / y haue no power but of myn only body, that  
 neuer sawe no thyng, ne wote not what it is of Armes / ner neuer 32  
 sawe company assembled. y am yong & but a childe; what seruyce  
 may .I. than do to god?" / than seide he ageyn, "A, good lord /  
 tho that y redde of to-day, that sought the Reaume of heuen / ne  
 did it not in grete company, but only with their owne propre 36  
 bodies. It were they that sought the very parfit glorie, and god  
 was suffised with the desertes of their owne bodies / wherfore alle  
 thynges <sup>1</sup>considered, y shaH put forth my body / and renounce all  
 the successioun þat in this world may befall me, and for his sake 40

- promyse with good hert to go vnto the seruice of the kyng of  
Sizile / and neuer to departe til the warres be ended / or ellis y<sup>and fight for</sup>  
shaH dye yn the defence of his reame" / and thus vttyrly con-<sup>Sicily.</sup>  
cludid Phelip to departe, & to abandoune the Reaume and aH his  
frendes / thynkyng yn hym self / hou to conduyte this matier  
that no lyving creature shold haue knowlage therof / ffor wele  
wist he that there was noman in alle the Reaume, and he knewe it /  
that durst concele it fro the kyng; for he was sure / and they did  
othirwise / they shold die; and therefore determyned he yn alle  
poyntes to entreprise this viage without discoueryng of his entent  
to any lyving creature / considering wele that he had not ben  
accostomed to be alone / and that it shold be to hym right straunge /  
neuirtheles, for the loue of oure lord, he determyned to suffre &  
bere paciently all paynes and troubles that he wolde sende hym.  
In this determynacion & purpose contynued Phelip the space of a  
Moneth and more / thinkyng on that besinesse / and did so that he  
puruaide hym of money y-nough to fynde hym .v. or .vj. yere /<sup>He collects</sup>  
trustyng withyn that terme to fynde some good auenture / So it<sup>money,</sup>  
befel that on a Monday at night, the mone shone faire and clere,  
and he departid out of Paris; and this was the xxij<sup>th</sup> day of feuyrer /<sup>leaves Paris</sup>  
And his age was than xxv. yere / and at his departyng, he verrily<sup>on Monday,</sup>  
promysed in his mynde neuer to be knowen what he was, til the<sup>Feb. 22, when</sup>  
warres were ffynysshed / and bettir for to couer hym self / he<sup>he is 25,</sup>  
chaunged his name / & concludid to calle hym self "le despurueu" /<sup>and changes</sup>  
and passed so forth / & thought wele that whan his goyng was<sup>his name to</sup>  
knowen, that ouir all the marches men sholde seke hym, and in<sup>'Le Despur-</sup>  
especiaH vpone the marches of Sizile, for this that many folkes<sup>ueu.'</sup>  
had knowen his desire thiderward; & therefore he avised hym  
not to go that way, but rather drewe hym to the Reaume of  
Spayne; for he thought / yn-asmoche as the kyng of Sizile had  
maryed þe kyng of Spaynes doughtir, there he sholde here more  
certeyn tidynges þan in any othir Reaume / So rode he forth the  
streight way towarde Spayne / yn so grete haste that he rode more  
in one day / than any of the best ryders the kyng his ffadir had /  
did in two / and rode so forth, aH-wey vnknoweñ, so long tyme til  
he came to Spayne / so sore chaunged & amegred that vnnethe any  
man myght him knowe / for he had not the lif / he had ben  
accostomed to / where-thorough, yif god of his grace had not <sup>1</sup>the<sup>[1 leaf 13]</sup>  
better comforted & holpen him / he had neuer departed out of  
Spayne alyue / alweis, what payne and trauaile so euer he had, he

He collects  
money,

leaves Paris  
on Monday,  
Feb. 22, when  
he is 25,

and changes  
his name to  
'Le Despur-  
ueu.'

He rides fast  
to Spain,

and reaches  
Toledo,  
where K. Al-  
bors is.

He lodges  
with a bur-  
gess,

and calls  
himself 'Le  
Despurueu.'

He falls very  
ill,

and is in bed  
for 6 months.

The Tuesday  
morning after  
Prince Phillip  
leaves Paris,

toke it in pacience, for the loue of god. So fortun'd hym to come  
to a Cite was named Towlette / where-as the kynge was / And  
for-asmoche as he thought there were folkes a-boute the kynge of  
alle nacions, as wele of ffraunce as of othir / and perauenture suche 4  
as might lyghtly knowe hym / it thought hym good to fynde some  
secrete loggyng where-as he shold not be often seyn / and so, by  
the meane of a gentilman that he mette by the way / he was loggid  
in the hous of a noble Burgeis, one of the moost riche of the 8  
Towne / whiche had weddid the Aunt of that same gentilman / at  
whos request they loggid hym right wele, and made hym right good  
chere / which felle wele for le Despurueu; for thei were good and  
notable folkes, & had a sone & a doughter of right grete and 12  
notable recommendacion, faire persones of good condicions, & wele  
and honorably norissed / & withyn litle while that the Despurueu  
had ben there, the loued hym as their owne sone / & the sone &  
the doughter loued hym as their brother. And to the sone of the 16  
hous taught he such thynges of honour, that folkes meruailed to se  
hym so wele ensured / And the doughter taught he to syng / to  
harpe, & to play at the chesse, and all such goodly th[y]nges as  
bilonge to a gentilwoman of honour. ¶ Now felle it so / that 20  
while he was in this reste aftir his grete trauaile, whiche he was  
not accustomed to / bifelle hym a grete sikenesse, that alle tho that  
sawe him inged in hym no thyng but dethe / and durid in hym  
more than half a yere / so that he might neuer rise of his bedde, 24  
whereby he was so moche empeired / that, & he had ben in the  
presence of his ffadir / he coude not know hym / and moche more  
greued hym his sekenesse / for it taried hym fro the seruice of god /  
than for any payne that he endured / but our lorde, in whos 28  
kepyng he had put hym, whiche wold not refuse his seruice / made  
hym to haue that sikeness / for othir wise might he neuer accom-  
plissh his desire vnknown / there was so grete serche for hym yn  
eueri cristen Reaume / for so grete sorowe was neuer seyn in no 32  
contre as was for his departyng, thoroughout alle ffraunce. [Illum. 13, bk.]

**T**He tuysday in the mornyng, aftir the departyng of the  
kynges sone, came lordes, knyghtes and squyers, as they  
were accustomed to be at the risyng of their maister, & 36  
founde not yit opyn þe chamber dore; for on the nyght  
afore had he made alle the folkes to avoide, as wele his chambrelayn  
as othir, seyng that he wold be that nyght alone / whereby they  
supposed that he had som lady or Ientilwoman there / that he wolde 40

- not haue knowen. Thus they alle retourned ageyn in the mornynge  
to his Chambre dore, and there awated right longe, & durst make  
no noyse, for displeasir, till it was the houre of noone / meruailynge  
4 grettly that he was not stiryng, for he was not accustomed to be in  
his bedde at that tyme. So concluded they that the Chambrelayn  
sholdt knocke at the dore / whiche he did all ferefully / but noon  
answerd hym, wherof they meruailed gretly / and bode ther so  
8 long / that it passed two of the klokke / then worde came to the  
kyng therof, whiche meruailed gretly, and forthwith went in-to the  
grete chambre of his sones / and founde there many lordes, knyghtes  
and Squyers, that awaited on hym / of whom he axed " what may  
12 this be " / and they tolde hym the trouthe / wherof he was gretly  
abasshed, for neuer bfore had he founde his sone of suche demean-  
yng. So he went to the dore, and knocked so loude as tough he  
sholde haue brokyn vp <sup>1</sup>the dore / but no body answerd hym / so does King Charles.  
[1 leaf 14]  
16 wherof he toke grete displeasir, and made the dore to be broken  
vp / and fonde the Chambre al redy, and the bedde made / and no  
body theryn; wherof the kyng was sore ameruailed / & made to  
seeche hym ouir all / but noon coude here of hym; than sent he to  
20 the stabells, & fond that the best smaff hors that he had was goon / but the best  
nag is out of  
the stable.  
And wele knewe he that his sone was not departed in this maner  
to come sone ageyn / wherfore he toke suche sorowe that he felle in  
24 a sowne / and at last, whan he was releued ageyn / he made the  
moost pitous regrettes that any man might make / " Alas," quoth  
he, " my dere sone / what haue I forfeite vnto you? / ye haue put me  
to dethe without desert / for y haue loued you more than my self /  
28 ye were my ioie, my recomfort, and myn esperauunce / Alas / aH this  
haue ye taken fro me / þat am your ffadir, & by this meane shal  
abregge my lif / I was he þat more gladly wolde haue died to  
haue lengthid youre lif, than to haue lyued by youre dethe; my  
32 trust was, that god had geue you vnto me for my grete ioie / but y  
se wele ye are come in-to this world for to abregge my daies / wold  
god y had agreed to youre request / touchinge the viage of Sizile / K. Charles  
regrets that  
he refused to  
let Philip go  
to Sicily.  
36 puruaide / that y thinke ye shal neuer perfourme half way,  
seyng your softe & tendre norisshyng / Alas, my frendes! helpe to  
comfort a discomfortid / that calleth hym self at this day the  
moost wrecchid kyng- that leuyth. Alas, my wiff! whan ye shal  
40 knowe thies tidyngis, .I. haue grete drede hou ye shal bere the

grete paynes that youre hert shaH suffre / Now y requyre you,  
my frendes, enquire ouir aH, yif any lyuyng creature be gon  
with hym / for than shold my soroufuH hert be in the lesse  
dispeire" /

The Queen  
of France  
grieues for  
the loss of  
her son.

**Y**E may thinke that whan the tidinges came to the Quene, she  
had as moche sorowe / as the hert of any modre sholde haue  
that had lost suche a sone / for there was no lyuyng body  
that might recomfort hir / Hir sorow & hir compleint was more  
than y can deuise you. The kinge, and she, that gladly and by  
naturah reson shold comforte echie one othir / they might vnnethes  
opyn their mowthes, but as folkes ded & transitory. In like wise  
was the sorow so grete of alle suche as were there / for they entendid

[1 lf. 14, bk.]

neither the kyng, neither the Quene, but rente their here, &  
made vnnmesurable sorow, as folkes vtterly dispeired / The tidinges  
spred ouir aH the Cite of Parys: there might ye here brayng &  
cryng in al þe cite of aH maner of folkes, grete & smale / there is  
no man that can recorde the sorow that the Cite made / for they  
might no more make, though thei had lost on o day alle the frendes  
thei had / In like wise felle it thorough aH the Reaume of ffrance /  
for ther was neuer noon erthly man more biloued than was this  
yonge Phelip, the kynges sone / not only in the Reaume of  
ffrance, but in alle othir Reaumes that marched ther-to / whiche,  
whan thei herd the losse of this childe, thei made meruailous sorow /  
And wite for trouthe, that in the Reaume of ffrance was lost at  
that houre aH ioie, whiche dured as longe as his sorowfuH ffadir  
lyued / for neuer aftir sawe he the thinge in the worlde that he  
moost loued / that was, his right dere sone, whiche was grete cause  
of shortnyng of his lif / ffor aftir his sones departyng, coude he  
neuer here tidynges of hym / for no serche he coude make.

The King is  
never after  
glad.

While Prince  
Philip is sick  
in Toledo,  
his host's  
children,  
Florentine  
and John,  
tell him how  
he is lost  
from France.

¶ Now  
seith the tale / that while Phelip lay thus seke in his bed at Tow-  
lette / ffaire florentyne, the daughter of his hoste, & hir brothir  
Iohū, oftentymes wolde visite hym, and telle him the tidynges of  
the Reaume of ffrance, how the kynges sone was lost / the renome  
that was of hym / the sorow that was for his loue. but, fynally, he  
nener made semblaunt / that it touched him in any thyng. ¶ So  
long contynued this terme, that it was passed half a yere sith he  
departed out of ffrance, in somoch that the speche was alle lefte /  
and put yn forgetyng, of the losse of the kynges sone / at whiche  
tyme he was in recoueryng, by the helpe of his good hoste and  
hostesse and their childe / and by that tyme was he al-most oute

He recovers.

of the drede of knowlage, by length of tyme and his grete sikenes. ¶ Now aȝ this tyme contynued the warres of Sizile; for the grete Turke and his brother fferabras, kynge of Peerce, contynuelly

The Great Turk and K. Ferabras of Persia subdue half Sicily.

4 enforced them to conquere the Reaume, whiche was by that tyme more than half conquered / whereby the kynge of Sizile was constrained to sende to alle cristen princes for socours, takyng god to witnesse that, and that Reaume were tourned to the mysbeleue / it 8 was for lak of pite & helpe of theym, for without socours it was not yn his power to kepe it lenger / than such a day as he apointed by his writyng. ¶ Thus sent he notable knyghtes, bothe to the Pope [leaf 15]

K. Alfons sends Ferant to ask help from K. Al-bors of Spain.

12 of Spayne one of the moost notable knyghtes of his Reaume / whiche was named fferant / and was his Seneschall. and he had a Brother, right a valiaunt man / whiche had in gouernaunce part of the frontiers ayenst the ennemyes of the feith / and right honourably 16 demeaned hym there. ¶ Now fferant departed out of Sizile yn-to Spayn, and spede so wele his iourneis that he came to Towlette, where-as he founde the kynge, whiche reseeyued hym with right grete honour, & loggid there as the Despurueu was, that by than 20 was wele recouerd. & whan he knewe the cause of fferantes comyng / it reioised hym more than aȝ the goold in Spayne coude haue done / trustyng to become his seruaut / and to go with hym in-to Sizile / than felle he in acqueytaunce with his folkes / whiche had so grete

Prince Philip gets to know Ferant,

24 loue vnto hym, for the grete weles that they sawe in hym / that they brought hym in acqueyntance with their maister, whiche was right glad of his company. ffor so wele demeaned hym, le Despurueu, to fferant / and alle his men / that he was gretly desired of them alle to go 28 in-to Sizile with them / But our alle othir, fferant desired hym moost / wherof le Despurueu was as glad as any man might be / for it was the thyng yn the erthe that he moost desired. Thus is the Despurueu be-lefte with fferant / thinkyng verrily to vse part of his youth yn

and leaves Toledo with him, as his seruaut.

32 the warres for the loue of god. ¶ Now seith the tale, that fferant bode at the Cite of Towlette til that he sawe wele his abidyng there might lital profit his maister / for he sped in substaunce nothing that he came for / wherefore he toke his leue of the kynge, & returned in- 36 to Sizile / and le Despurueu, his newe sernaunt, with hym / for whos departyng / his hoste & his hostesse toke asmoche sorow as, and he had be their sone / and cursed the houre that the knyght of Sizile came in-to that contre / thus departed fferant the Seneschall, right sorowfull 40 of that he hath no better spedde, & emploiede his iourney / til that

he approached the Reaume of Sizile, anisying alwey his newe ser-  
 uaunt / consideryng withyn hym self / his persone, his beaute / his  
 maner, his humbles / wherof he was moche amerailed / for he  
 wende not that yu the body of any one man might haue ben so 4  
 many vertues to-gedir / So thought he wele / that if he had as  
 moche worthynesse and prowes as he had persone & maner, he shold  
 be the moost perfit thinge that euer god made sith tyme of his  
 [1 lf. 15, bk.] passioñ. ¶ And yit aH <sup>1</sup>were it that he were not valiaunt yn 8  
 armes, yit were he worthy to serue any kynge, for it is litle seen  
 that alle vertues be complete in one man. Thus rode they forth so  
 longe til he entred in-to the Reaume of Sizile / and logged hym the  
 first night in a Towne called Taprey, of the whiche, Olyuer, brother 12  
 to fferant, was Captayne / and for the moost part was abidyng ther /  
 fferabrace, brother to the Soudan, was yn an other Towne but .iiij.  
 leeges thens / that was named / ffoundey, whiche he had conquered  
 vpon the kyng of Sizile / fferant was trauailed & wery, & purposed 16  
 to rest hym ther with his brother a seuenight or a fourtnight / And  
 sone after he was come / the tidynges were knowen to fferabrace,  
 kyng of Perce / whiche seide to his folkes, "It were il don of vs yif  
 we went not to se fferant that is retourned fro Spayn / and he is with 20  
 his brother, oure neighbore / & so, if we might take any prisoner, we  
 shold knowe of alle their tidynges / fferant is a valiant knyght, y  
 doute not / if he reste longe vnsought of vs, with-oute he haue the  
 gretter businesse he woH come bfore vs / wherfore it shalbe good for 24  
 vs to go thidir to-morow. To this counseile, accorde alle they that  
 were with hym / for the ceason was faire & plesaunt / It was than  
 yn the entre of Aprile / thus as they concluded, they did / for fuH  
 and marches, with 2000 men, to Ta- 28  
 prey.  
 erly in the morne they departed from that place with a ij. M. 32  
 feighters, holdyng their wey streight to the place where as fferant  
 and his brother were / and whan thei were nygh there / they  
 departed in two: yn the tain part / was kynge fferabrace / and the  
 tothir was a nigh kynnesman of his / when the warte espied the 36  
 fforeriders, he blewe a Trompet / and fferaunt rose vp / & went to  
 the yate, where as he founde his brother aH redi, to whom he seide /  
 "Brothir, this course is made for me / and for to take som of oure  
 folkes to kneve of my tidynges; but, y pray you, lete no man go 36  
 oute / for y knowe for trouthe that he hath moche people / and ye  
 haue not in this Towne passed v. or vj. hundred feightyngmen /  
 and therefore lete them be, for the entreprise of enemyes is euer  
 vnprofitable" / Olyuer, that was a fuH good man of warre, seide to 40

Ferant and  
 Prince Phillip  
 reach Taprey  
 in Sicily.

K. Ferabras,  
 the Sultan's  
 brother, is  
 at Fondé, 4  
 leagues off,

and marches,  
 with 2000  
 men, to Ta-  
 prey.

Ferant will  
 not attack  
 them.



his brother / "ye sey trouthe," and made to shitte the yates fast /  
 wherof many were right sory / and our alle othir Le Despurueu, Prince Phillip  
is sorry,  
 that hath herde the wordes a foresaide, and was redy armed, and

4 on horsbak, desiryng to haue seyn som dedes of Armes / wherof he  
 had neuer no thinge seyn / <sup>1</sup>whan he sawe this conclusion / he set [1 leaf 16]  
 vp his hors / and went vp to the walles and sawe the fforeriders, but goes up  
on the walls,  
 whiche was but right a fewe people / wherof he had grete meruaile

8 that so litle compaignie durst come so nere where so many a good  
 man was / Aftir this, that so long tyme currowrs had be bfore  
 the place, & sawe that ther wold no man come oute / they sente  
 the kynge worde therof, desiryng to knowe his pleasir / The kynge,  
 12 heryng thies tidinges, concluded to come bfore the place to shewe  
 his puissaunce / than brake he oute with bothe thembusshementes,

and came yn ordenaunce bfore the place / Le Despurueu, seeng and sees the  
full force of  
Turks and  
Persians.  
 this compaignie, thought wele that he was with a notable & a wise

16 maister / & that he had grete fore-sight yn suche case / ffor he sawe  
 where thembusshmentes departed yn dyners compaignies / and  
 envoiroind the towne as they wolde haue bisieged it / fferant and  
 his brother, seeng the Turques thus dissecuerd in diuerse com-

20 paignies, purposed to gyue them a scarmyssh at one of the yates /  
 where-as the leest compaignie was, thinkynge wele that the moost  
 parte of the kynges people wolde drawe thiderward / and whan it  
 were so, he wold issue out and set vpon the kynge, there his baner

24 was / thus as y haue deuised was doñ. they began to scarmyssh / With them  
the Christians  
skirmish,  
and K. Fera-  
bras is left  
with few  
troops.  
 and the crie aroos, & eueri man drewe thiderward, so that the kynge  
 was but with fewe accompaigned. And than fferant & his Brothir  
 made open the yate / and came alle on a frusshe out of the Towne

28 so egrely and with suche force that, wold the kynge or not / he  
 was fayne to lese his place & to withdrawe hym shamefully / and He is driven  
back,  
 had at the same encountre of his men slayn moo then vj.<sup>xx</sup>, at  
 whiche iourney auanced hym self le Despurueu a fore alle othir / and

32 did so wele in armes that alle that euer sy hym & knewe him of and Prince  
Phillip fights  
gallantly,  
 his parte, were gretly encoraged therby / and blessed them for the  
 meruailes that thei sy him do yn his armes ; and his enemyes were  
 as moche abasshed & confused by his prowessse. the mooste parte of

36 the folkes knewe hym not / but only they that he was come in  
 compaignie with, out of the Reaume of Spayne / many went to  
 fferant to telle him the grete meruailes that his seruaunt Le Des-  
 purueu did / wherof he was ioifull, and praied alle theym that tolde

40 thies tidynges / that they wold drawe toward hym / and do him to Ferant's  
joy.

[<sup>1</sup> ff. 16, bk.]  
The Turks  
rally,

and the Chris-  
tian trumpets  
sound a re-  
treat.

But Prince  
Philip fights  
on.

Ferant, in  
helping him,  
is taken  
prisoner by  
the Turks.

Prince Philip  
rescues Fe-  
rant,

captures K.  
Ferabras,

and they  
all re-enter  
Tabrey.

helpe & socours, yf nede were. The crie & the noise aroos on alle parties so moche / that the Turques withdrew<sup>1</sup> theym alle to the kyng to socoure hym / and whan they were assembled to-gedre / thei were a right grete puissaunce / as yn regarde of theym of the 4 Towne / the tuo Brethre sawe welle it was tyme to withdrawe / and made a trompet to blowe retreat on alle parties, & made their people to withdrawe. But le Despurueu, that neuer had be yn cure with suche thinges, made no semblaunt to withdrawe hym / but 8 defendid hym & assailed his enemyes alwey stille so long, that fferant hym self was constreyned to fecche hym / and put hym forth a-ferre hym / and bade hym aH angrely / to withdrawe hym / and fferant had taried so longe for the seching of his seruau<sup>t</sup>, that 12 his enemyes presed so fast / that almoost they had enterd the barers, and had closed yn fferant aH a-boute. Le Despurueu, seyng this / knowing wele that this auenture was falle to his maister by hym, had leuer haue diede than faile his maister, & retourned his 16 hors, and smote in-to the thikke<sup>st</sup> of the prees with suche ire and force / that he that mette with his full stroke ouirtirewe / & did so wele that he came to theym that had taken his maister / and smote yn amonges them / and by his grete worthynesse deliuerd the place 20 saue of the kyng to whom men had deliuerd his maister / whiche in no wise wold lete him go / yit at the last he might not chese / for Olyuer, that sawe his brother taken, & the grete armes that le Despurueu did, assembled his folkes ageyn, and retourned aH at ones 24 in suche wise & with suche vigour, that, wolde the Turques or not / thei lost grounde / Le Despurueu, seyng that the cristen men wan place and approched nere / and that he rescowed his maister / knewe wele the kyng that was nere, and toke his hors by the bridle / & 28 gate his hede vnder his arme / and by might drewe the kyng forth, whedir he wolde or no / and delyuerd hym to his maister / that forthwith sent hym yn-to the Towne / and commaunded that eueri man sholde withdrawe / And toke his seruau<sup>t</sup> by the bridle, & 32 ledde hym forth with hym. The kynges folkes, seyng the losse of their maister, & the grete vigour of the cristen men / were so abused that they made but litle prese / And thus retourned the cristen in-to the Towne aH at their ease. It is to thinke,<sup>2</sup> that Le Despurueu was 36 not the first that entird / for it annoied hym moche that it dured no lenger / for it semed hym the moost grete pleasir that euir he was at yn aH hys <sup>3</sup>lif / hou-be-it / that by his harnais and hys body it

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 17]

<sup>2</sup> bear in mind.

shewed wele that he had not ben idle / nor also right amyably  
 delte *with*, for in many places the blode ranne out of such hurtes as  
 he had / Anon as they were entird in to the Towne, the brigge was  
 4 drawn / and folkes ordeigned on the walles to kepe theym / Le  
 Despurueu, when he had conveid his maister to his loggyng / he went  
 to his Inne / and vnarmed him / and leide hym downe on a bedde. Prince Phillip  
 vnarms and  
 goes to bed.  
 ¶ The Turques seeng their kynge prisoner, & many of their folkes  
 8 ded and taken / it semed them that bifore that Towne thei might  
 litle profit / But many thought it was better to abide til they knewe  
 the pleasir of the Soudan / to whom they sent the trouthe of thies  
 tidynges, & thought it was nede for them to take good kepe aboute The Turks  
 wait for the  
 Sultan's  
 order before  
 raising the  
 siege.  
 12 the Towne / that the kynge were not had a-way ; for yf the Soudan  
 wolde hastily come & set a sege ther / he might lyghtly haue ageyn  
 his brother / thus as they concluded, they did / and loggid them bi-  
 fore the Towne / abidyng an answere of þe Soudan. ¶ Now  
 16 retourne we to fferant þat was at his logging vnarmed / right ioifult  
 of the good auenture that was bifallen hym / and than went he to  
 the kynge / that be than was also vnarmed / & made as good chere  
 as he coude after the auenture that was fallen, for wele trusted he  
 20 sone to be socoured / Ouir aH the Towne was ther no knyght,  
 Squyer, lady, nor Ientilwoman, riche ne pore / but that spake of le All the  
 townsfolk  
 praise Prince  
 Phillip's  
 Despurueu ; of his grete noblesse, of his persone, and of his maner ;  
 & aH gaue hym the preise & loos aboute aH othir / seyng that it  
 24 came hym of grete corage / whan he sawe his maister taken / that  
 he allone so mightily a-mong so moche people rescowed his maister /  
 and ar any man came at hym / so valiauntly toke the kynge  
 prisoner / there was neuer noon sawe yn one man more worthy-  
 28 nesse shewed in a day / his enemyes fled his strokes, & they on his  
 part had ioie and recomfort / and the leest hardy became valiaunt /  
 & were encoraged by his prowess. ¶ Suche wordes and semblable  
 were spoken of hym thourgh aH the Towne, of grete / meane & litil.  
 32 ¶ Now is fferant with his prisoner, and welcomed hym, and did Ferant treats  
 Ferabras  
 well.  
 hym aH the honour and pleasir that any man coude do his prisoner,  
 comfortyng hym, seyng that by hym / and by his good meanes, a  
 pees sholde be made bitwene his brother and the kynge of Sizile, &  
 36 he trusted that for that cause god had ordeyned hym to haue hym  
 prisoner / for *without* grace of god ne might it haue ben / for this  
 he knewe for trouthe / that he that had taken hym / had neuer  
 sene swerde drawn bifore in bataile / and yit was ther no leuyng  
 40 man / that moost had vsed the warres coude more haue done / wher-

Ferant asks  
Ferabras to  
make peace  
between the  
Sultan and  
the King of  
Sicily.

Ferabras  
asks to see  
Prince  
Philip.

[1 leaf 18]  
Ferant begs  
him to wait  
till next day.

by aH men might knowe / that it was verily goddes werke.  
wherfore he praide the kyng, his prisoner, that he wolde put hym  
in deuoir to make the pees betwene his brothir and the kyng of  
Sizile his maister / and in so doyng / he shold wyne grete loos 4  
and renome, & gete hym self out of the daunger he was yn now.  
fferabrace, kyng of Perce, seeng hym prisoner / heryng the wordes  
of his maister, answerd hym in this maner / "yif it pleasid Mahun  
that y myght do any thyng touchyng the pees of this tuo kynges, y 8  
wolde right gladly emploie me, though y were not prisoner / for y  
was neuer of contrary wille / But the debate is betwene them  
for sustenance of the feith that he holdeth ayenst oure bileue /  
whiche, by the feith y owe to that god that y honoure, y had leuer dy 12  
than be a treter in any mater contrary to oure bileue / yif youre  
kyng were content to holde oure lawe, the peas were sone made /  
but othirwise y se no remedy" / "Be my feith," seid fferant, "than  
shaH we neuer haue pees" / than lefte they of thies wordes, and the 16  
kyng required fferant that he might se hym that had taken him /  
for ouer all thing he desired it / fferant knewe wele that he was  
right wery of the payne & trauail that he had pat day, wherfore  
he had no wille to sende for hym / hou be it / that he had more 20  
desire to se hym than kyng fferabrace had / for he loued hym as  
moche as any man myght loue his lady / and grete cause had he /  
for that day had he rescowed hym from the dethe / for, and he had  
be brought to the Soudan, aH the golde on erthe ne might haue 24  
bought his lif / and so Answerd he to kyng fferabrace, "sir, y  
suppose that he be at reste, but to-morowe, and god be pleased, y  
shalt sende hym vnto you" / the kyng answerd, "at your pleasir 28  
be it / but y shalt neuer be at hertes ease til y se hym / for I desire  
as moche to se him, as seke man doth his hele" / fferant sawe the  
kynges desire moche; and to accomplishe it, wist not what to do /  
for he dred that his seruauant were sore hurt, wherfore he durst not  
sende for hym / so wist not he what to answer, but praide the 32  
kyng to haue pacience til on the morowe, whiche answerd hym /  
"so most y / for my wille may not be accomplisht. I am a prisoner;  
but y sey you for trouthe, and y were at my liberte, y wolde se  
hym or y slepte, what trauail so euer y toke on me / wherfor, and 36  
he be any thyng hurt, and ye wold do me that grace to brynge me  
ther he is, ye shold do me grete comfort and pleasir" / fferant,  
heryng thies wordes, toke conclusion in hym self / that he wold go  
se Le Despurueu his seruauant, and seide to the kyng, that yif his 40

- seruaunt might come to hym, he wolde brynge hym to hym that  
 night / and yif he might not go / he wolde biseche hym of his  
 goodnesse to come se hym / thus departed he from the kyng,  
 4 whiche praide him right specially that he might se him assone as it  
 coude be / for he coude not bileue that it were any mortal man / but  
 som spirituel thinge sent from heuen to punyssh hym for his  
 trespasses; for he thought "it was not possible to be in one man that  
 8 y haue seyn hym do this day" / fferant began to laugh, and seide /  
 "sir, whan ye se hym ye shall not fynde him dispuruaide of moche  
 more" / thus departed fferant fro the kynge / and came to the place  
 where Le Despurueu was loggid / and was leide on a bedde fuH eucl  
 12 ordeyned for / and litle remembred of any man. and so he entird  
 in-to the chambre of le Despurueu, whiche, whan he sawe hym, was  
 aH abasshid / & wolde haue risen ayenst hym / but he might  
 vnnethe remewe. whan his maister sawe him in that plite, he  
 16 ranne to hym, and caught hym in his armes, wepyng for pite that  
 he had of hym, and in his mynde leide grete blame vnto him self /  
 that he had noon erste visited hym / seyug, "alas, my frende, ye  
 are porely awaited on after the high dedes that ye haue doñ to day.  
 20 I pray you foryeue it me / y knowe wele that hym that gaue me  
 ioie & honour, y haue put yn foryetyng, take the honour to me,  
 whiche cometh of your bounte, that y haue so symply remembred  
 it; but pardon me, my frende / for the remenaunt of my lif y shall  
 24 better remembre you / ye aught nomore to thanke me than of  
 your dethe for lakke of helpe, yef ye had hadde any mortaH wounde,  
 and aH othir wise haue ye deserued vnto me / seing the grete payne  
 & trauaile that ye haue endured this day to saue my lif & myn  
 28 honoure; and y, as a wreech fuH of vnkyndenes, haue put you aH in  
 foryeting, whiche reschewed me this day from dethe / and .I. not  
 comforte you with one onely visitación." Le Despurueu, heryng  
 his maisters wordes, was so ashamed that he coude vnnethe loke vp /  
 32 doing him all the honour that he might after the hurtis þat he  
 had on him, reputyng him-self ful vnworthy to haue any suche  
 honour. "seing / my lorde, I neuer deserued such honour as ye put  
 me to / god yeue me grace to do you seruice that may please you / &  
 36 therwith aH wold haue drawen him bak as aH shamefast / but his  
 maister wold not suffre hym / & fourthwith sende for the best  
 Suricouñ withyn the Towne / and meñ to serche his woundes a-fore  
 hym; & though he were right sore hurt / ther was no peril of dethe  
 40 yn hym / so that he were wele looked to / then was he ordeigned for

Ferant goes  
to Prince  
Philip's  
lodging,

and is  
ashamed to  
find it so  
poor.

He apologizes  
for his neg-  
lect of Philip,

[1 lf. 18, bk.]

who saved  
his life.

He sends for  
the best  
Surgeon to  
attend  
Philip.

Ferant has  
Prince  
Philip's  
room done  
up,

and lets K.  
Ferabras  
come to see  
him.

Ferabras  
praises  
Prince Philip  
very highly.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 19]

Philip asks  
him to make  
peace be-  
tween his  
brother, the  
Sultan, and  
the King of  
Sicily.

in the best maner. Than sent kyng fferabrace to fferant, prayng him that he might se his maister. fferant made the chambre right wele to be apointed, and made torches to be brought yn / and sent priuelie to the kyng, that yif it pleasid him he might come / whiche came with right a ioifuH herte / and for the grete desire pat he had to se Le Despurueu, he felt noon of alt the peyne & trauail that he had endured that day. So came he in to the Chambre, and ffounde fferant talkyng with le Despurueu, whiche was leide on a couche / 8 and whan fferant espied the kyng, he kneled downe & toke hym by the hande, and shewed hym hym that hadde taken hym / whiche knewe nothinge of his comyng / but assone as he perceyued hym / he knelid vp as wele as he myght / the kyng toke hym yn his armes, 12 & made hym to arise, seyng / "my right swete frende, yif ye had be somtyme to-day as humble vnto me / and lowly as ye be now / y had not ben here / Although your maner were ffeers & vigours yn the felde / it is here humble & amyable, wherby your dedes be the 16 more to be preised. and now y se yowe / Notwithstondyng the grete peyne & trauail that ye haue endured to-day, me thinketh your persone resembleth your werkes, for yn worthynesse non may compare with you. In like wise, in persone, beaute & maner, y knowe 20 noon comparable / & it pleased god, y wolde y might contynue the remenaunt of my lif / youre felawe / with that / that we were parteners in all that y haue or euer shall haue, so that y might observe & 24 kepe myn owne feith." / Le Despurueu, <sup>1</sup>that seeth hym self thus 24 honoured and preised at the first dede of Armes that euer he was at in his lif, was so abasshid that he wist not what to Answer, saue only that he seid / "sir, ye do your honoure to praise so moche, so pore a Ientilman as y am / the recommendacion is more youre than 28 myn / for to theym that sey wele, the honoure aught to tourne. I wote not what to sey you / for forsothe it was the first auenture that euer y was at / But it semed me, yif alle youre folkes had resembled you, my lord / My maister that here is had not hadde 32 you now in his handes / albe it pat he put grete peyne ther-to / And yif it were thus, that god by his grace wold consent / that by youre goode meane the pees might be made bitwene your brother & the kyng of Sizile / ynne good houre for youre self were ye prisoner / 36 for your grete renome sholde multiplie & double / and y bileue verily that my lorde, my maister that here is, wold in that case haue of you noo fynaunce, but holde for your raunsoun your peyne and labour right wele employed. and as for me, y wolde right 40

humbly biseche you theryn / if so simple a persone might make a request in so hy a matier" / The kynge answerd hym, "my right dere frende and felawe, if it were in my power & at my wilt, y  
4 certifie you, þat to youre request y wolde emploie me / albe-it þat .I. bileue neuer shalt y haue that power / seeng the matier as it is /" with suche wordes they droue forth the tyme tilt fferant thought it tyme for the kynge to departe / seyng vnto hym, "sir, ye be  
8 trauailed / & so is your maister that toke you / if it pleased you, it were tyme to go to reste, and for hym also" / After thies wordes departed the kynge from le Despurneu. And fferant conueide him to his loggyng / and came ageyn to le Despurneu / and puruaide  
12 that no thing failed him / & folkes to waite aboute him / charging theym to gif hym as grete attendaunce as they wold to hym self / than toke he leue of hym, & went to his loggyng / where as he made a letter vnto the kynge of Sizile, in such fourme, aftir the commen-  
16 dacion & maner of writyng : "Sir, I am aryued in this your Towne / at my retourne out of the Reaume of Spayne / the xxviiij day of marche / and for this, that I and my horses & all my folkes were so trauailed and wery, y most of necessite tary with my brother a  
20 while ; and the <sup>1</sup>meane ceason of myn abidyng, Kynge fferabrace, [ 1 ff. 19, bk.] brother and lieftenaunt to the Soudan, was at ffounde, but iiij. or v. litle myle hens, & knewe of my comyng / and for that he desired, as y haue vndirstande, to haue some of my folkes to enquire the  
24 tidynges of Spayne, & howe y haue spedde / concludid to ren before this youre Towne, & had in his company .ij. thousand feighters and moo, & made .ij. embussumentes, and sent his currours a-fore this touñ / but for that my brother and I supposed somewhat their  
28 entent / we wolde no body to issu out / & whan the kynge vndirstode by his folkes that ther wolde noon of vs come out / he came before the Towne him-self with all his puissaunce, & parted theym in diuerse parties, environyng the Towne rounde aboute / then  
32 ordeyned we a right grete scarmyssh to be made ouer the yate that was ferthist fro the kynge / by the whiche crye & scarmyssh the moost part of the kynges folkes drew to that side / & than we, seeng the kyng but with litle company, issued out on hym / at the  
36 whiche tyme were many grete armes done on bothe parties / and the kynge taken, and brought by strength to this your Towne /  
where-as he is stille / and whan his folkes sawgh the takyng of  
their lorde, they made, and make yet, a maner of abidyng before this  
40 towne / & trust, as we ymagyne, to haue hasty remedie by the

On a hint from Ferant, K. Ferabras leaves Prince Philip.

Ferant writes to the King of Sicily,

and tells him

how they took K. Ferabras prisoner.

Ferant  
praises  
Prince Philip  
to the King  
of Sicily ;

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 20]

and so does  
his mes-  
senger,

who reports  
how Philip  
rescued  
Ferant, and  
captured  
Ferabras.

Soudan. wherefore y dar not departe hens / nor sende vnto you the  
kyng / whos taking was by miracle doon / by a very yong man of  
my house / that is suche in alle thynges as the berer herof shal  
enforme you / & I beleue when ye se hym, ye shaH like him bettir 4  
than y write vnto you / if it please god, it shaH not be the last  
seruice that he shal do you / and y beseche oure lorde, of his grace  
to graunte you thacomplissment of youre high and noble desires :  
Writen at your Towne of Talpoir, the .viij. day of Aprile." Thus 8  
thies letters writen, he called a messangere right wise and discrete /  
and delyuered them vnto hym / & bitwene mydnyght and the poynt  
of the day he made him to departe / and so passed he forth, as god  
wold, aH peasebly / so that he came sauflly vnto the kyng of Sizile / 12  
whom he founde right sorowfull. But whan he had seyne his  
lettres, he was right ioiful, and made them to be radde in the pre-  
sence of alle the noble men of his Court / whiche deuoutly to-gedirs  
thankid & preised god / trustyng, that by this takyng, some frute 16  
shold folowe. The kyng <sup>1</sup>commaundeth the Messangere alle  
openly to telle his credence / whiche seide vnto hym, "sir, we  
repute yn your towne to be a miracle / and I shal telle you the  
reason / In the Towne of Towlete was ther a yong man, a-boute 20  
the age of .xx. yere / that lay seke of half a yere / which was newly  
recoured at the comyng of my lord, my maister / This yong man is  
so wele visaged / so faire made of body & of alle fetures, that it  
semeth verily that nature haue made him with hir propre handes / 24  
and with this excessif beaute / he hath so moche of humblesse and  
bounte, that no man can bileue it / without seyng / & of maner he  
passeth alle othir. This saide gentilman is of good nacion, but not  
riche / So it fortuneth my lord, my maister, to be logged ther as he 28  
had leyne so longe seke ; and so wele demeaned him this yong man  
to hym & to his folkes / that eueri man him preised / & so moche  
that my lorde withhelde him for his seruauant / & brought hym with  
hym, often deuysyng with his othir folkes the maner of this man / 32  
and hym thought / that he might not faile to be valiaunt ; & so hath  
he founde hym ; ffor at the besynesse he sawe him do so wondir-  
fully yn armes, that it is to grete a meruaile / for my lorde was  
taken / and he alone reskewed hym by his grete strength and 36  
hardynes, and toke the kyng prisoner, & brought hym in-to your  
Towne / and euery man that sawe the hardynes of this yong man,  
toke suche corage & boldnes, that they abandoned theym to the  
vtterest / & so they lefte mo than .V. C. of the kynges men ded in the 40



place / & as the sonne passith the sterres, so passid this yong man  
 othir folkes. he is borne of the Reaume of ffraunce / and for con-  
 clusion / alle that se hym loue hym / honoure him / and cherisshe  
 4 hym / and he that aught moost to hate hym, the kyng his  
 prisoner, swerith by his goddes þat he wolde haue hym in his  
 company the remenaunt of his lif, to departe euenly with hym alle  
 the lande & goode he hath / This yong man, yif any man reherce  
 8 his honour or hardies / is as basshfuH as a mayden / he woH not  
 haue the kyng reputed as his prisoner, but for his maisters  
 prisoner" / the kyng was of thies tidynges fult ioifull, & thought  
 wele that god had sent this yong man to do hym yit a grettir aide /  
 12 anon he made to ryng the bellis in alle the ch[i]rches of the Towne /  
 and he and the Quene & his doughter, and alle othir in the Towne,  
 went on processoun / thankynge god of the good auenture that he  
 had gyuen them. Thus bode he 'stilt, herkenyng what the Turke [1 lf. 20, bk.]  
 16 wolde do vpon the takyng of his brother.

**Y**E may wele wite that yn the Chambres of the ladies was  
 spred a-non the tidynges that fferauntes messangere had  
 brought / and rehersed alle the vertues of this yong Squyer,  
 20 Le Desparueu, wele asmoche or more than the messangere had  
 seide ; for ye knowe wele the reporters put to somewhat more alway /  
 The Quene, her daughter, and alle the ladies & gentilwomen, heryng  
 recorded the right parfite bounte, beaute, and worthynesse of this  
 24 yong man, desired meruailously to se hym. So ther was no day  
 but they had hym in speche, in so moche that some of the gentil-  
 men of the court had grete displeasir therof, thynkyng that by hym  
 aH their loos & grace sholde be the lesse / Thus bigan the enuye  
 28 bitwene the yong men of the Court & le Desparueu, that aftir was  
 goode & profitable for the kyng / for that they wolde be as worthy  
 in armes as he, their corage & hardies doubled, whiche did so moch  
 good to the Reaume of Sizile / that it was ayen reuived in honour /  
 32 as ye shaH here-aftir here. ¶ ye haue wele herd here-bifore, what  
 messangers the kyng of Sizile had sent in to alle reaumes / & that  
 the messangers had in charge to telle prynces hon it was with him /  
 for the disarge of hym, without he were shortly socoured / taking  
 36 god to his recorde, & aH the worlde / that the charge was theires /  
 and not his / Thus thies messangers, goyng to many kynges &  
 prynces / in especiaH to the kyng off ffraunce / of Englund & of  
 Scotlond, The kyng of ffraunce hauyng remembraunce of his  
 40 sone, that but litle a-fore he had lost, thynkyng yn hym self, that

Ferant's  
 messenger  
 continues his  
 praise of  
 Prince  
 Philip.

The Queen of  
 Sicily, the  
 Princess  
 Iolante, and  
 all the Court  
 Ladies are  
 eager to see  
 Philip.

The other  
 Courtiers  
 envy him ;  
 but they fight  
 hard to equal  
 him.

24 *The Kings of France and England will help the King of Sicily.*

The King of  
France says

he'll send  
40,000 men  
to help the  
King of  
Sicily;

[1 leaf 21]

and the King  
of England  
promises aid  
too,

If the King of  
Scotland'll  
let one of his  
3 Sons head  
the Expedi-  
tion.

god had soffered it for that he hadde done noon helpe nor comfort  
to this cause / wherfore he had taken fro hym the thinge in the  
worlde that he best loued, then renewed a grete part of his sorowe,  
and thought / that of hym selue he was so olde & feble that he might 4  
not go. But, & any of the kynges of England or of Scottes wolde  
go, or any of their sones / he wolde aide theym with xl<sup>th</sup> thousand men  
wagid for a yere / The messenger of Sizile heryng the answere of the  
kyng of ffraunce, was right glad and ioifull therof, hauyng grete pite 8  
& compassion of the kynges sorowe, which semed <sup>1</sup>more ded than  
a-lyue. Thus departed he from hym, & went to the Reaume of  
Englond / where he fonde the kyng / to whom he shewed his  
credence / and told him also the Answere of the kyng of ffraunce, 12  
whiche he had founde in full grete annoy & trouble, seyng that  
it semed hym / if his sone had be still ther / with right good wille  
he wold a sent hym on that viage. The kyng of England, whan  
he had herd the messenger that spake full wele & wisely, he 16  
thought moche on that werke / and had many counsells at dyuerse  
tymes / And so, aftir sad deliberacion, he answerd the messangere  
yu this maner / "I knowe wele / that among other kynges & cristen  
prynces y am gretely bounden to god / for he hath gyuen me more 20  
of weles than y haue or can deserue, wherfore y wolde ful gladly  
do hym seruice, though y may not so moche as y am biholden to  
do. I haue but one only sone for to holde my Reaume aftir my deth,  
which y may yn no wise departe with; how be it / if ye can fynde 24  
any kyng or prynce that wold entreprise this viage / y shall helpe  
hym forth with a good puissance / & if my brother & neighbore,  
the kyng of Scottes, that hath .iiij. sones, wold entreprise it / y shalt  
put to yit more gretir helpe and payne than y wold do yn the 28  
company of som othir / and me semyth he might lightlyer do it than  
the kyng of ffraunce or I, for he hath .iiij. sones; and if it pleased  
him to sende forth one of theym, whiche shold only be gouernour  
and hede of this werke, it sholde be to him grete glorie & honour 32  
with the seruice that he shold do to god." The knyght of Sizile,  
heryng the answere of the kyng of England / wist not what to  
answere, the kynges seiying was so resonable / but so departid fro  
hym / and toke the streight wey toward Scotlond. And withyn 36  
short while he came there the kyng was / & presented his lettres,  
& tolde his credence / and aft that he hadde founde with the kynges  
of ffraunce and of Englond. The kyng of Scottes remembred him  
self gretly in this werke / and thought that cuerich of the kynges 40

- aforesaid had delyuerd to hym the Chapelet / knowyng wele he had moo sones to sende forth than any of that othir / and for that the matier appered to hym full grete / he answerd no-thing lightly  
4 ther-to, but full long tyme thought ther-vpon / and for that cause sent to assemble alle the estates of his Reaume / and at <sup>1</sup>their comyng [1 f. 21, bk.]  
to hym, opened & declared to hem, as wele by lettre as by mouthe, aH that the knyght of Sizile had brought hym. & for that he sawe  
8 this mater peisaunt, & gretely touchid hym, he wold make ther-to noon answeere withoute their aduise & agrement, and gaue them leue to take aduise ther-on ij. or iij daies, and commaunded theym at that tyme to be ther present ageyn, eueri man to sey his aduise.  
12 Thus departed they, & counseiled to-gedre fro day to day / and were wele instructe, & remembred what thei shold answeere. the day came that they were assigned to be a-fore the kyng, where-as they ordeyned a full honourable knight to make the Answer for alle  
16 the iij. estates in generall, which knight, aftir the honoures & reuerences don to the kyng as to him bi-longed, for alle thestates of his lond seide / "Oure souerayn lord / we haue, my lordes that here be, who advise him  
prynces, prelates, & Barons / knightes / Squyers, & Burgeis of thes  
20 Reaume, thought on that it pleased your grace to open vnto us toching the aduertisment that ye had of the kyng of Sizile, the whiche to help the King of Sicily,  
aduertisment touchid gretely to youre holy cristen feith / the sauacion of your soule / and to the honour of you & of your Reaume. & for  
24 to geue you counsell we haue had deliberacion to take aduise to-gedre, suche as y shaH declare vnto you / offryng to you toward this conclusion / that we shaH put in auenture oure bodies & part and they will back him with their bodies and goods,  
of oure goodes. we knowe wele that ye be created kyng / ye and  
28 alle othir, for the defence of the comon wele / & specially for to kepe & mayntene the feith / and to this cause be ye ioyned & sacred / and if ye faile to the defence of the feithe whiche is the thinge that moost serueth to the comon wele, than go ye oute of the termes  
32 wherfore ye were create / we knowe also the sorowe of the kyng of ffrance, that hath no children but one pat he loste of late tyme / the dispuraunce also of the kyng of Englund, that hath but one sone / and ye haue iij., wherfore ye be lesse excusable than any of  
36 them, with the grete aide that they offre you, which semyth vs, seeng your grete worthynesse / the children that ye haue / & the offris that be made vnto you, by reason with your honour ye may take noon excuse, but ye may conclude to sende one of my lordes your  
40 sones, which that pleasith you / and for to knowe oure aduise, we

his eldest  
son taking  
command.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 22]

The King of  
Scotland

thinks of the  
difficulties of  
this Sicilian  
Expedition

all night,

and next day

answers his  
Estates;

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 22, bk.]

conclude alle / that the eldest shold be moost propre, for he is more  
redy to harneys than any of that othir, & more sad <sup>1</sup>to conduyte a  
grete entrepryse / and if it please you this to do, my lordes alle that  
here be / haue made you suche offres as y haue seide here-bifore / 4  
vndir whos correccioun y was ordeyned & commaunded to declare  
this vnto you / and nowe alf lieth in your good grace, for, as it  
pleasith you to commaunde, we are alle redy to accomplishe.”  
¶ The kyng of Scottes, heryng the wordes of this forsaide knight 8  
yn the byhalue of the .iiij. estates of his land, thought fuH moche on  
this matier, for it touchid him right nere, and therefore differred he  
it / til on the morowe, ij. aftir none / and commaundid at that tyme /  
eueri man to be ther ayen / thus eueri man departed / and the 12  
kyng, that neur coude put this matier out of his mynde, thynkyng  
yn hym self that it was in maner leide vnto hym by the kyng of  
ffraunce & of Englund / & sith auised hym by the .iiij. estates of his  
land / & so restid it but at him self; wherfore hym thought, as a 16  
man constreyned by honour, he might not refuse in this viage to  
sende forth his sone. And then ayen aftir thies consideracions he  
wolde argue yn hym self to the contrary / thinkyng, “this armee  
may not be put on me without grete charge / I am the leest of the .iiij. 20  
kynges, & the despenses ar like to tourne on me / it behoueth me  
to take grete hede that I haue a notable aide of eche of them / it  
behoueth alway that my sone be acompaynyed with people of this  
land, & that the grettist company come with hym, whiche may not 24  
be without grete enpouerisshment vnto this land, wherof y am nowe  
fuH sorowfuH / And if y shold sende forth myn eldest sone / whiche  
is the thinge yn this worlde that y best loue / yif he diede, y shold  
be so sorowfuH / that y sholde neur aftir haue ioie nor rest in my 28  
herte / wherfore y wote not wele what y may sey / But y pray the,  
my creatore, to counseH me aftir thy pleasir, & to myn honoure /”  
thus aH nyght stroue he & argued in his mynde / & wist not what  
wey he might holde / be aroos in the mornyng, & herd his massis 32  
with grete deuocioun, recommendyng him and his werkes to god /  
aftir his massis and dyner dōn / as fully affermed of that he wolde  
do / wente in-to the chambre wher alle thestates were redy at his  
comyn. so entred he yn with visage and maner fuH trist and sorow- 36  
full / & at his comyng, and silence commaundid, he spake to his  
men and suggettes / right hertly thankyng theym of the good wille  
he founde them of towardes hym, <sup>2</sup>and preisyng god with good  
herte, that thestates of his Reaume were of suche & so high prud- 40

ence, dredying & louyng god, as he sawe by experience ; for euerichon  
of hem yn his parte offred seruice to oure lorde / wherof he was as  
ioifult as he might be. And in like wise he sawe, & verely knewe,  
4 the grete & naturall loue that alle they of his blode, with the  
remenaunt of the .iiij. for-saide estates bare vnto hym / yn-as-moche  
as eche of theym wold, & desired grete honoure of hym & of the  
Reaume, prayng theym also not to to be abasshed nor ameruailed,  
8 though that his manere were perauenture more sobre than it hath  
ben be-fore tyme, “for this matier goth full nere me / for many  
reasons / one is / that some folkes not wele seiying, perauenture wo<sup>ld</sup>  
sey, ‘ beholde this presumptuous kyng, the leest of the .iiij., that is to  
12 wite, of ffrance & Englund / that of him selue wo<sup>ld</sup> enterprise this  
viage / that the tothir haue full grete doute to take on hande, whiche  
haue so many noble lordes of their lynage / wherof they might full  
lightly fynde a suffisaunt hede’ / thus the thyng may turne more to  
16 charge than to preise. I conside, on that othir side / pat by the  
two forsaid kynges is ny all the charge leide on me / echon of them  
with helpe me / and ye my Cousyns, frendes, & suggettes, counseile  
me to entreprise this viage / & to sende forth my eldest sone,  
20 whiche y loue moost / wherto ye offre youre bodies and goodes to  
myne aide in this hy matier. and for asmoche, if y had not corage  
to do it, seeng your grete offers / I might be reputed with alle  
straungers, & amonge your selue, a man but of litle feith & of  
24 slakke corage / and therefore, what-som-euer befall vnto me therof /  
either sorowe or pouert, y ought more to put my trust yn you than  
any othir ; wherfore y am determynd & thoroughly concluded, bliss-  
yng me with the syne of the crosse, recommaundyng my dede to  
28 my blissed creatore / to make my sone Dauid to entreprise this  
viage / for y haue no sone but hym / but that were to yonge ther-to,  
& y pray god yeue hym grace to do him suche seruice as may be to  
his pleasir / and y pray you alle my cousyns, frendes and suggettes,  
32 to strecch forth your good willis acordyng to your promyses.” Alle  
the .iiij. estates, heryng the Answere of the kyng, had grete ioie,  
vudirstandyng his good wilt, and alle to-gedirs, & eche of them,  
helde vp his hand, promysyng <sup>1</sup>the kyng seruice with body &  
36 goodes. and thus was the matier perfytly concludid / and day taken  
of the departir at feuyrer / and it was the feuyrer aftir the depart-  
yng of Le Despurueu. The conclusion thus taken / the messanger  
of the kyng of Sizile was deliuered, to whom was shewed all then-  
40 tent of the kyng of Scottes, with that the kynges of ffrance & of

he may be  
blamed for  
presumption  
in startyng  
the Expe-  
dition ;

but as the  
Kings of  
France and  
England, and  
his own sub-  
jects, have all  
promist their  
help,

he will let his  
eldest son  
David under-  
take the  
enterprise.

[1 leaf 23]

The Sicilian  
Messenger  
reports that  
the Expedi-  
tion is de-  
cided on.

The Sultan  
hears of it,

and recalls  
Ferabras's  
troops.

Feraunt is  
orderd to  
send Fera-  
bras, and  
Prince Philip,  
to Sicily.

[17, 23, bk.]

Prince Philip  
grieves at  
this, and

wants to  
serve on the  
frontier.

Englond wold do him any aide / Thus the knyght of Sizile departid  
fult ioiful out of Scotland, & toke his wey by Englond & be  
ffraunce, & shewed the ij. kynges all the conclusion that hath be  
taken in Scotlond / humbly biseehyng them this holy viage shold 4  
not be letted / so hath he promys of both kynges, for no thyng they  
wolde faile, but trewly performe all that thei had seid bifore. The  
messangers deuoir doon as is here rehersed / he toke the way  
streight to Sizile, & came vnto the kynge / sone aftir the comyng 8  
of fferauntes messangere / & tolde the kynge of all his spede in the  
forseide matier / ye may wele wite that the Soudan was not with-  
out his espies in eueri cristen Reaume / wherthorugh he knewe of  
the conclusion that was taken in Scotland assone or souner than 12  
did the kynge of Sizile / and therfore sent he anone a messangere to  
his brothers folkes that lay bifore fferaunt / commaundyng them to  
departe thens & to retourne to their garison / for he had herd suche  
tidynges that he was determyned to haue no sege laide there as yet. 16  
and as for the takynge of his brothir / he wolde remedie it when he  
might, but yit he coulde not / thus alle his brother folkes retourned  
in-to their garison / and fferaunt in alle haste sente the kynge  
worde therof / whan the kynge knewe thies tidynges, he sent 20  
fferaunt worde that he shold puruey for the comynge of kynge  
fferabras vnto hym, and by suche a day as he apointed him / he  
wolde sende him a feliship to helpe conuey the kynge the more  
surely. fferthirmore he commaunded him not to leue behinde him 24  
his newe esquier / of whom he had herde so moche wele reported /  
& alle the ladies & gentilwomen of the court praied the messangere  
that he might not be forgotten. Thus went the messangere forth to  
fferaunt, & shewed him all his message from the kynge, & from 28  
the Quene & hir doughter, & from alle the ladies & gentilwomen of  
the Court / And withyn litle while aftir, this came to the knowlage  
of Le Despurueu, whiche desired ouir alle thinges to dwelle<sup>1</sup> in some  
place of the ffronteres / to proue his body in his youthe / and to do 32  
that wherfore he was departed fro the kynge his ffadir / feling him  
self all hole of his hurtes / and so made a request to his maister /  
if it pleasid him, that he might abide with his brothir / for he neuir  
entendid but to abide vpon the ffronteres / ffor / for to be a man of 36  
Court now / wold he neuir a departed fro the place fro whens he  
came. when fferaunt vndirstode his newe esquier, that thus wolde  
take his leue of hym / whom he knewe such that noon other might  
compare with / yif he were sorowfuH, it was no meruaile / & vnnethe 40

- might he holde manere, seying vnto hym, "A! Le Despurueu! haue  
y brought you from so fer contre, so sone to forsake me? haue ye  
drede / that ye shaH not fynde fightyng y-now yn this contre / or  
4 elles that y be a man of so pore condicion / that y dar not holde my  
fote nere the fire / truly I truste verily to be founde more often  
vpon the ennemyes than they shal be that abide in this place / &  
that more often, if ye be with me, ye shaH se strokes gyuen than yf  
8 ye abode stille here / neuirtheles, if ye be not pleased to abide in  
my seruice, telle it me at ones, & y shaH do as me thinke good."  
The yong gentilman, right shamefast and sorowfuH that he sawe his  
maister wroth with hym, wenyng not to haue displeased hym for  
12 abidyng with his brothir, answerd hym fuH lumbly / "My lord! y  
neuir thought but that ther was more worthynes in you than y  
durst thynke to se / but for that cause spake y not to you of myn  
abidyng, but for the drede that y had that ye shold not be so often  
16 at skarmysshes as your brother / for, as men sey, the kynge lounes you  
wele / therefore y thought that ye wolde kepe you nere aboute hym /  
and ye knowe wele / it is not accostomed, ne reason, that kynges &  
prynces, chefteynes of the warre, be allwey on the ffronters / and  
20 for this drede y that y shold se but litle war, nor haue the lernyng  
yn armes, whiche was the cause of my desire now to abide / but,  
sir, and y haue displeased you / y beseche you to pardone me, for y  
knowe neither kynge nor prynee levyng, as longe as ye haunte the  
24 warres, for whom y wolde leue you. y haue so moche sene of  
noblesse yn you / that y am assured y may lerne more in your  
seruise / than y dar enterprise or may here" / fferaunt answerd hym,  
"A, my frende! for lakke of warre <sup>1</sup>ye shaH not leue me as long as [1 leaf 21]  
28 y leue / for there is y-nough in this reaume for you & me, & many  
moo" / thus fferaunt & his newe seruaunt be accorded. Then came  
the day / that the kynge sent his folkes to fferaunt / whom they  
founde alle redy in the felde / & kyng ffirabrace with him / than  
32 departed he from his brother Olyuer, prayng hym to take good  
hede to the place & the ffronters that he had in kepyng / So rode  
he forth aH a day withoute any interrupcion. ¶ It is to thynke,  
ffirabrace folkes dred them of the goyng of their maister, and that  
36 he shold be brought to the kyng of Sizile / wherfore they did their  
diligence to vndirstonde his departyng / & did so muche that they  
knewe it for certayn that he was departed right wele accompanied /  
than toke they counseill & aduise to-gedir; & it semyd theym that  
40 puissaunce was not so bygge, but that they shold take a shame to

Ferant re-  
proaches  
Prince Philip  
for wishing  
to leave him.

He'll get him  
his fill of  
fighting.

Prince Philip  
apologizes,

and agrees to  
stop with  
Ferant.

Ferabras's  
men plan

to rescue  
him.

They form  
an ambush,  
and set spies  
in trees.

Ferant warns  
his men that  
they may be  
attacked, and  
advises them  
to arm.

[1 lf. 24, bk.]

Some of them  
come on the  
enemy's  
tracks.

The Turks at-  
tack Ferant's  
host.

suffre their maister thus to be gon. wherfore they vttrily concluded  
to put them yn deuoir to the rescue of hym / the mone shone faire  
& clere that night that they departed fro the garison / & they did  
so moche by the next mornyng / that they passed fferaunt, and 4  
embusshed theym yn a wode that was ny the same wey that  
fferaunt sholde passe / they kepte theym cloos, & made their  
wacchis to go vp in-to trees to se aferre whiche wey fferaunt sholde  
come; and thei were in nombre xvj.C feightyng men / And with 8  
fferaunt a vj.C or mo of the best men that longed to the kynge of  
Sizile, whiche were that nyght wele loggid with fferaunt & kynge  
ffirabrace, & made right mery & gretly auised le Despurueu, whiche  
thought them of visage, persone, & maner, moche more to be preised 12  
than the messangere had seide, & moche desired they to se hym yn  
armes / & so did they souner than they wende. they auised him in  
alle his wordes and his demeanyng, & founde him so assured & wise /  
that they were ameruailed / this nyght passid forth, & the morn 16  
came / and fferaunt, that was an ynly wise knyght of warre, saide  
to his folkes, "my lordes, if the kynge oure soueray[n] lorde were  
prisoner, as he is that we lede / and ye wold do by my counseil, &  
we had the puissaunce that oure enemyes haue, ther is no place y 20  
wolde souner put me in deuoir to reskewe hym, than here by / and  
yistirday we rode armed & helmed / and as this day y se no man  
charge hym with harneys; but y sey for me, y shall arme me as y did  
yisterday." some helde <sup>1</sup>opinion he seide wele, & did by his counseil, 24  
& some toke litle hede therto / but le Despurueu was all-wey armed /  
for he had no valet to bere his harneys. fferaunt departed fro his  
loggyng, the moost part of his folkes armed / & som not, whiche dere  
a-bought it / thus rode they forth til they came ny to the wey there 28  
as the embusshementes were leide / many of the yong folkes of the  
Court whiche had Grehoundes, trauerst the felde to fynde the hare  
or some othir disporte, so longe, that they came on the trakkys of  
there enemyes / and anoon tolde fferaunt therof / but he was so ny 32  
that he coude set no remedy to take none othir wey / but taried  
stilt, & put kynge ffirabrace in sure garde / thus put he yn ordyn-  
aunce all that he might. on the tothir part / the wacchis of the  
enmys that were yn the trees tolde to the embusshementes what 36  
they sawe / & sodeynly they shewed them-selue, & brake their  
embusshmentes, and alle at ones ranne on fferaunt & his ffelisship.  
and aftir the puissaunce that fferaunt had, he encountrid theym  
right mightly / but fynally they might not wele haue endured, ne 40



had be the grete worthynesse & vertu of Le Despurueu, that did  
 so wondrefully in Armes at that day, that eueri man meruailed /  
 he ouirthrewe men & hors; noon myght withh-sonde his strokes /  
 4 so wele was he knowen of his ennemyes that eueri man fledde hym /  
 and as he was feightyng thus amonge his enemyes, they that were  
 behynde hym, by strength of Armes / they reskewed kyng fira-  
 brace, and delyuerd hym to xx<sup>ti</sup> men / that in all haste toke the  
 8 wey toward his place / and fortunod that Le Despurueu, that so  
 valiauntly fought, herde the crye & noise / howe men seide kyng  
 firabrace was reskewed: "se where he goth!" he tourned sodeynly  
 on that part, & sawe hym ferre on his way / then toke he his hors  
 12 with the spores, & folowed the kyng yn all that he might, without  
 espiyng of any of fferauntes folkes, saue of .vj. that folowed hym.  
 Le Despurueu hastid him in suche wise, that in a valey he ouirtoke  
 the kyng, & smote yn amonges them, & did so, that he slewe v. or  
 16 vj. of them or the tothir vj. coude ouirtake him, whiche, at their  
 comyng, with the helpe of Le Despurueu, discomfited the Remenaunt.  
 Le Despurueu toke ageyn his prisoner / & be that tyme bothe their  
 horses were so wery & fortrauailed that they might no farther / but  
 20 bothe were fayne to alight a fote, to lete their horses take brethe /  
 In this meane tyme fferaunt espied that his prisoner was gon / &  
 1 that he had lost his newe seruaunt / if he were sorowfult, it is no  
 question, not only for losse of the kyng / but specially for his  
 24 seruaunt, by whom god had sent him so faire auentures. thus sorow-  
 fult, he cursed the houre that he came ther / and wisshed that day  
 he had be slayne. Alle tho that were yn his company, as litle as they  
 had knowen le Despurueu, yet for the dedes in armes they had sene  
 28 hym doñ that day, thought the losse of hym was as grete a sorowe /  
 as if the Reaume of Sizile had ben vtirly lost / and yn this sorow,  
 as they were to-gedre biholdyng the wey where-as kyng firabrace  
 wente / they sawe vj. or viij. horsis comyng / than drewe they them  
 32 to-gedir, wenyng to haue hadde newe to do, & that they had ben  
 of a newe feliship to a set on them / than sent they som of their  
 forriders thiderward / & anone as they came ny them, they knewe  
 verrily they were of their folkes. than went they to them, and  
 36 knewe Le Despurueu / that brought ageyn the kyng. than seide  
 they to hym, "A, right noble Squyer, flour of honour, ye be wel-  
 come / for ye haue recomfited this day the moost discomfortable  
 company that euer was / for by your dedis they haue recouerd such  
 40 honour and surete that they ar out of all perile. Blissid be the

Prince  
Philip's val-  
our alone  
saves Fer-  
ant's men.

K. Ferabras  
is rescued,

but Prince  
Philip spurs  
after him,

and retakes  
him.

[1 leaf 25]

Ferant  
mourns  
Prince  
Philip's sup-  
posed loss,

but he soon  
turns up,  
with his  
Prisoner  
again.

wey that ye came on hiderwarde, and the place fro whens ye came ! ”  
 Than anon one of them rode ageyn in aH haste to fferaunt / and  
 whan he sawe him, he seide / “ My lord, be mery, for yondre is Le  
 Despurueu aH hole & sauf, that by his grete myght & hardynes hath 4  
 brought ageyn kynges ffrabrace.” ye may wele thynke the ioie was  
 grete thorough aH the company / whan that worde was herd / and  
 eueri man presid who might be first with hym. whan fferaunt came  
 to hym / he toke him in his armes & kist him / and did him suche 8  
 honour that the pore yong gentilman was gretly abasshet of / than  
 seide fferaunt vnto him / “ that day y firste sawe you, was the moost  
 happy day that euer y had / And beholde ye nowe whethir y haue  
 gabbid vnto you / haue ye failed nowe at the begynnyng, of the 12  
 fyndyng of som auenture *with* me? had it nedid you now for this  
 cause to haue biden with my brothir / yif ye so had doñ / there  
 had bifallen this day the moost pitous auenture that euer was in  
 Sizile / that only by your persone is come to good conclusion / ” 16  
 eueri man seide to Le Despurueu so many goodly wordes of honour /  
 that he wist not what to Answere / but as a man shame-fast, smote  
 yn amonge the tothir feliship, for to eschewe such wordes as moche  
 [1 lf. 25, bk.] as he might; so he yeldid kynges ffrabrace his prisoner to <sup>1</sup>the 20  
 handes of his maister / After the auenture thus befallne, they with  
 grete ioie departed alle to gedir / and toke their way in right good  
 ordenaunce; and eueri man seide that fferaunt was right a wise  
 knyght, for he had tolde them full wele in the morning as was 24  
 sith befallen. ffro that day forth, fonde they no recoutre that dis-  
 tourbed theym yn their viage / & *with*-yn litle season they came  
 thider as the kyng was. bifore their comyng, many were gon bifore  
 to take vp their loggyng; & also som officers of armes & pur- 28  
 ceuantes that had be at this iourney, wente in aH haste to the  
 kyng / & tolde hym aH the maner & trouthe therof / And wite  
 wele the kyng was as ioifuH as he might be / and gretely meruailed  
 of the grete prowesse that he herd euery day of this yong man, Le 32  
 Despurueu; & moche he desired to see him, for he thought wele it  
 was some tokne that god wold recouer him; for the armes that he  
 herd reported of hym, semyd to hym not to be possible to noon  
 erthly man / If the kyng were yn this opynyoun / so were alle the 36  
 knyghtes, squyers, ladies, & gentilwomen / and the faire & good  
 Iolante, the kynges doughter, that in alle hir werkes was wise,  
 womanly, & vertuous: whan she herde at any tyme of the honour  
 of this yong man, she toke meruailous grete pleasir ther-yn / & she 40

Prince Philip  
 is greeted  
 and kist by  
 Ferant's  
 men.

He is so  
 prouid that  
 he feels  
 ashamed.

Henceforth  
 they march  
 in safety.

The King of  
 Sicily,

and all his  
 Court, and  
 the Princess  
 Iolante, long  
 to see Prince  
 Philip.

thought verily that such honour might not be yn a man of smale  
 birth / and also she wist wele that without grete nuture, & beyng  
 in high places, he might not knowe the weelis and honoures that  
 4 he coude / and in hir mynde she wissed that he had ben of such  
 corage that he wold haue entreprised alle his armes for hir sake /  
 hou-be-it she had neuir, daies of hir lif, ben amorous / not as moche  
 as she enioied the company more of one than of an othir, but as  
 8 honoure & maner requyred / thus euery man thorough the towne, as  
 wel as in þ<sup>e</sup> courte, spake of the worthynesse of Le Despurueu. And  
 in this meane season fferaunt & his company came vnto the Towne ;  
 & at the comyng, the stretes were so fult of folkes that vnnethe he  
 12 might passe, for eueri man desired to se hym that had so honorably  
 aquytte hym twies sith he retourned fro Spayne / also euery man  
 desired to se his frendes that had be at this last iournay / In like  
 wise desired they to se kynge ffrabrace / and the tothir prisoners /  
 16 so did thei Le Despurueu, of whom they had herde so moche wele  
 reported / thus the houses were alle fornyssht with folkes. And yet  
 ther was an othir cause / for a grete while they had not sene no  
 good auenture for the kynge of Sizile, but alle of losis & damages,  
 20 wherfore this was <sup>1</sup>to them the grettir ioie / thus fferaunt passid  
 thorough the prees with grete payne, and came to his loggyng / where  
 as kynge ffrabrace alight, and alle his folkes / and yn alle hast  
 aredied hym to go to the kynge his maister / and to delyuere hym  
 24 his prisoner. so wente he forth vnto the kynge, that abode hym in  
 the grete halle of his paleis / that was so fult of people that euery  
 wyndowe and borde was charged / and so were alle the stretes of the  
 Towne / so that he was a large half houre or he coude passe the  
 28 prees to come yn to the halle where the kynge was / and at the  
 laste he came vnto the kynge / and put the kynge his prisoner afore  
 hym / whom he shewed to the kynge of Sizile / and whan he per-  
 ceuyed Kynge ffrabrace, albe-it he was his prisoner / yit did he him  
 32 such honour that he went toward hym a grete way bareheded, and  
 toke hym by the hande / kynge ffrabrace seeng him self prisoner,  
 & at the wille of the kynge of Sizile, did hym grete reuerence, for  
 at that tyme was he as his sugget / than wente they two hand yn  
 36 hand vudir the clothe of estate / & than talked the two kynges to-  
 gedre, and callid fferaunt vnto them / but ouir alle thing / the kynge  
 of Sizile desired to se Le Despurueu, & behelde ouir alle to knowe  
 him / but this yong gentilman, that of his condicioun was shamefast  
 40 & humble, had drawn him in-to the prees behynde moche people /

Ferant and  
 Prince Phillip  
 have a grand  
 reception  
 from the  
 townsfolk.

[1 leaf 26]

Ferant takes  
 his prisoner  
 King Fera-  
 bras to the  
 King of  
 Sicily,

who does  
 him honour,

but asks  
 for Prince  
 Phillip.

King Ferrara  
praises  
Prince Philip,

who captured  
him twice.

The King  
of Sicily is  
much struck  
with Prince  
Phillip,

whose beauty  
and prowess  
are praised by  
all.

the kynge that yn no wise coude espie hym, seide to fferauut,  
 “ where is your newe seruant / why put ye him to no more honour /  
 be that y haue herde sey / he hath deserued as moche honour as  
 any *withyn* this halle, noon othir excepte / forsothe y desire gretely 4  
 to se him ” / kynge fferabrace, þat herd the kynge of Sizile thus  
 speke, coude him in his mynde right goode thanke / and saide, “ be  
 my feith, he is worthy to haue moche honour / & wold god that y  
 had suche a seruauant, that helde the lawe y holde, and y wolde 8  
 take hym for my felaw, daies of my lyf / and partener yn alle that  
 y am worth / & shold be as grete maister of my Reaume as my self,  
 seeng that y haue sene him do / whiche is not credible / y am his  
 prisoner by .ij. tymes / and notwithstanding, all the daunger that y 12  
 am yn, cometh by hym / yet is he the leuyng man that y moost  
 loue / and moost desire the compayny of.” The kynge of Sizile  
 commaundid fferauut to calle him / and so he did / and when he  
 herde him called for / he came forth fro behinde moche of the 16  
 people / his visage aH rede for shame that so <sup>1</sup>many folkes called  
 him / He came before the kynge, & kneld douñ, and salewed him  
 as he coude fult wele for aH honour was yn hym / the kynge toke  
 hym by the hande / & made him to rise vp / and bihelde him right 20  
 ententifly / & the more he behelde him, the more was he ameruailed  
 of hym that excedid alle othir in euery thinge to be preised / then  
 talked the kynge *with* him / and so did kynge fferabrace also. and  
 yn alle his wordes they founde him suche, & so wele assured / that 24  
 they were ameruailed. The kyng of Sizile, & alle they that sawe  
 him, thought / there were moo laudable thinges yn hym than any  
 might reporte / he was gretely lokid on of alle them that were  
 there / and euery man praiede for him that god of his grace sholde 28  
 longe contynue hym yn honour. *withyn* litle while, kynge fferabrace  
 departed from the kynge of Sizile to his loggyng, to his dyner.  
 The kynge of Sizile commaundid fferauut to “ brynge ageyn kynge  
 fferabrace aftir dyner, & le Despurueu also. and then shaH they se the 32  
 quene, the ladies & gentilwoman.” & thus departed they to their  
 loggyng / AH that day in euery place was moche speche of the beaute,  
 persone & manere of Le Despurueu. But they that had sene hym in  
 armes seide, that his beaute was not to compare with his worthy- 36  
 nesse / and some answerde that than passed he aH the world. The  
 kynge, aftir his grete assemble was departed, went to his dyner /  
 and *with* hym dynyd the Quene and his doughter. and ye may wele  
 thynke that this dyner tyme, through aH the halle they hadde grete 40

speche of Le Despurueu. The quene, & faire and good Iolante hir  
doughtir, & alle the ladies & gentilwomen, desired so moche to se  
hym, that they thought the dyner right longe, and seide amonge  
4 them / "full eurous is fferaunt the SeneshaH, to whom god hath sent  
this man / by hym is he at this day moche honoured / & the moost  
renomed knyght yn this Reaume / If y were kynge, y sholde haue  
Le Despurueu of myn house, for he hath noon suche" / On the  
8 tothre part, fferaunt dred right sore leste the kynge wold desire his  
newe seruaunt from hym, whiche was the thing that moost sholde  
sorowe hym / and therfore aftir dyner / er he wente to the courte, he  
toke Le Despurueu alone yn-to his chambre / and seide vnto hym,  
12 "my dere frende & my childe, the kynge hath doñ you to-day grete  
honour, wherof y am right glad / for he may not do you to moche,  
neuirtheles y drede that by som enuy that reigneth 'ouir alle, the  
kynge sholde be exorted to take you from me yn-to his hous; and  
16 if ye were yn with now to leue me / it sholde be þ<sup>e</sup> grettist displeasir  
and sorowe that myght befall me / but y knowe wele it happeneth  
alday that men leue company for a higher seruice; hou be it / seeng  
that y haue sene in you / y can not Iuge þat ye with so do / for ther  
20 is so grete bounte in you. I knewe weel þat ye haue not ben  
acompayned here as bilongeth vnto you, and therfore y graunt you  
fro this day forth to haue v. or vj. men waityng on you / & to take  
part of my goodes as longe as it pleasith you to be with me, as my  
24 owne sone sholde, if y had any / and if god send me neuir noon, y  
shaH make you myn heir, yeldyng thanke to god to haue suche a  
successour." Le Despurueu fult humbly thankid his maister, &  
promysed hym trouthe & seruice to his power, without hauyng  
28 thought or wille to seche any othir maister, as longe as he wold  
serue / and that his maister shold lyue / and of this, at the request  
of fferaunt, promysed him his feith / wherof he was more sure than  
of any obligacion in the worlde / sone aftir departed fferaunt from  
32 his loggyng toward the kynge / & had Le Despurueu with him, that  
aboue alle thinges desired to se the kynges doughter, whom of beaute,  
bounte, & alle good manere was renomed thorough the worlde. Wher-  
fore he apoynted hym, as goodly as he coude, to go with his maister /  
36 & they came euen as the kyng was arisen. and yit were alle the  
ladies & gentilwomen there / the prees was not so grete as it was in  
the mornyng / and therfore men might more easily se fferaunt & his  
company / Le Despurueu, for his grete humbles, was noon of the  
40 first, wherwith his maister was no thinge pleased / for to his power

Ferant fears  
that the King  
of Sicily will  
take Prince  
Philip from  
him;

[leaf 27]

so he gives  
Philip five or  
six waiting-  
men, and a  
share of his  
goods.

Prince Philip  
promises  
Ferant his  
faith.

Ferant intro-  
duces Prince  
Philip to the  
Queen,

[1 ff. 27, bk.]

who says he's  
to amuse  
himself with  
her daughter  
and the  
Court-ladies.

Philip is  
taken to the  
fair Princess  
Iolante,

who christens  
him *Le Sur-*  
*nome.*

he wolde fayn haue auauunced hym. The kyngge reseceyued fferaunt  
fult gladly / and aftir that he had salewed the kyng he toke forth Le  
Despurueu by the hande / and brought hym to se the quene, scyng  
vnto hir, "Madame, here is a gentilman of ffraunce that y brynge  
you / if his beaute be not resonable, his worthines recompenseth,  
for by hym and his dedis hath the kyng, the Soudans brother, yn  
his prisoun / for to me ought not the honour to turne therof, but  
to god & to this gentilman / and therefore, madame, y brynge hym to  
you / that it might please your grace to haue knowlache of hym" /  
The quene answerd to fferaunt / "for sothe, Seneshalt, a grete  
while sawe not y so faire a presente / & y wilt be aqueynted with  
hym with right goode <sup>1</sup>wilt / and he is right welcome to me, & y  
shalt se hym & welcome him more at leiser / if it please god / and  
y pray you, brynge hym or sende hym often to disporte hym with  
my doughter & the yonge ladies and gentilwomen of the courte /  
for it behoueth that we assay him in alle poyntes, if he be suche  
amonge ladies & gentilwomen as he is amonge you men / And if  
he can not wele the manere / y beleue he shall sone haue lerned / for  
it is a comon seyyng / that men of warre be not good companyers  
with ladies & gentilwomen" / Le Despurueu Aunswerd / "Madame, 20  
y thanke your grace right humbly / and verily sheweth the same /  
that of the warres y can no thyng / but that my lord, my maister,  
hath taught me / for neuir yn my lyue was y yn warre but in his  
company, wheryn men may lerne bothe wele and honour / for y 24  
haue herde hym ymagyne & sey yn the euenyng, that hath befall  
yn the morow" / fferaunt answerd & saide / "by my feith, sir, if  
ye be as light to lerne your contenance amonges ladies & gentil-  
women as ye haue ben to lerne the crafte of armes, ye shalt yn 28  
shorte tyme be a bettir mayster / than they that shalt lerne you ;  
for so farith it by you & me in the warres" / the quene lough, &  
seide, "y beleue / from hensforth, yn like wise he shalbe bettir wel-  
come than ye" / Aftir thies wordes, fferaunt made him to rise vp / 32  
& brought him to faire Iolante, that Le Despurueu desired so moche  
to se / he went not with a nay / but with a right good wille / and  
whan he sawe the grete beaute that was yn hir, he thought that alt  
that euir he herde speke of hir was no-thing in comparison to that 36  
he sawe yn hir / he salewed hir fult humbly, & the faire lady toke  
hym by the hande & seide, "my right dere frende, ye ar right  
welcome, & by that / that y se / your name is 'Le surnome' ; for ye  
ar not Le Despurueu of beaute, ne of alle othir condiciouns as y here 40

sey. Wherefore me thinketh your name is gyuen you with wronge /  
 and also me semeth that my lord my fadirs warres be a grete dele  
 bettir puruaide sith your comyng, than bifore / I trowe that god of  
 4 his grace hath sent you hider" / this yonge gentilman was so  
 ashamed & so supprised with the beaute of this faire lady, that he  
 wist not what to Aunswere, saue that he seide, "Madame, god  
 yelde your grace / but trewly y am wers puruaide than my name  
 8 can shewe / but what name that pleasith you, y am content to  
 bere" / the quene & fferaunt lough wele at the wordes <sup>1</sup>of hir  
 doughtir / & fro that day forth was he named Le Surnome; whiche  
 enery day multiplied, for the more men asaide him at alle pointes,  
 12 the more they were assured of hym, & founde him puruaide of alle  
 thinge / that to a noble man belonged.

Prince Philip  
 is abasht at  
 Iolante's  
 beauty.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 28]

**T**his meane tyme, abidyng the comyng of the kyng of Scottes  
 sone / fferaunt & his felawe abode stille with the kynge, yn  
 16 grete ioie, for the tidinges of socours that they abode / and  
 yn this season of fferauntes abidyng, Le Desparueu, that now is  
 named Surnome, by the kynges doughter / euery day wold go se  
 the ladies, & in especia<sup>l</sup> the Quene & hir doughter, on whom all  
 20 his mynde restid / and ther was he right ioifully reseceyued / and  
 euery day was preuyd in dauncyng / in songes that the ladies coude  
 thinke were couenable for a noble man to conne; but in euery  
 thinge he passed alle them that were there / The kynge, for to assaie  
 24 him, made Iustis & turneis / & noman did so wele as he yn  
 rennyng, pleyng at the pame; in shotyng, & castyng of the barre  
 ne founde he not his maister ne his felawe / for yn euery thinge he  
 passid all othir. Thus past forth the tyme / but it annoyed gretly  
 28 Surnome, that ther were no warres ne dedes of armes / for the cause  
 of his departyng from his fadir was only to do god seruice yn the  
 warres ayenst the hethen men: thus had he litle ioie, saue only of  
 the faire and good Iolante, to whom his hert was bounden for euer  
 32 without departyng. ¶ Now leue we of a litle, to speke of the  
 kyng of Sizile and alle his courte, & we shalle speke of the armee  
 of Scottes, hou they did afir the departyng of þe messangere of  
 Sizile.

He visits her  
 daily,

and dances  
 with her.

He jousts and  
 tourneys,  
 plays at  
 tennis, &c.,  
 and beats  
 everybody,

but loses his  
 heart to Io-  
 laute.

**T**He conclusioun thus taken, as ye haue herde, with the kynge  
 of Scottes, that knewe thies tidynges, sent to the kynges of  
 ffraunce and of Englonde, how, vpon trust of them / & that  
 they had aunswerde the knyght of Sizile / that he had coneluded  
 40 to sende, yn the seruice of god, to the socour of Sizile, Dauid his

The King of  
 Scotland

asks England  
and France  
what help  
they'll give  
to Sicily.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 28, bk.]

The Scotch  
youth are  
eager to fol-  
low Prince  
David,

and a large  
Expedition is  
prepared.

The King of  
France pro-  
mises 10,000  
men.

eldest sone / albe-it they knewe full wele it was not yn his power to  
fynde ther-to a suffisaunt nombre of folkes / wherfore he praide  
eche of theym to assertyne hym what aide & socours they wold do  
to god / to the kyng of Sizile / & to his seide sone / bicause that  
vpon this he might take anise / & shewed theym vtirly that  
without their aide he helde his conclusion noon / ¶ Notable  
knyghtes & <sup>1</sup>messangers went to the two kynges. ¶ Now was this  
Viage of Dauid spradde & publisshed thorough all Scotland /  
wherof Dauid & alle the yonge lordes & knyghtes of the land were  
gladder than euer they were yn their lyue / seying amonges them  
that they were moche bounden to god / that in the floure of their  
youth had yeuen them this auenture. Dauid was a goodly yonge  
man, of like age to Surnome, wele condicioned, as to a kynges sone  
bilonged / and wele shewed it / as hereaftir ye may here / there  
was no thyng so noious vnto him as his long abidyng / and to the  
kyng his fader was no thyng so sorowfult as his sones goyng / for  
it was the day of the worlde þat he drad moost / and so he had  
cause, for it was full longe or he sawe hym ageyn / In this ceason  
of abidyng worde fro the kynges of ffrance & Englonde / he made  
alle his prouisions & ordenaunces for his sone / so wele and so honour-  
ably / that ther was neuer non suche seyn bifore in Scotland / In  
like wise alle the princes & Barons abielde them, & made to abile  
their sones, to go in this armee / whiche they desired to do sone /  
seying the conclusion taken / many auntyente knyghtes there were  
also, affermed & concluded to auenture their lyues in this Viage, &  
thought them wele eurous to make their last viage in so high a  
seruice bothe for body & soule. ¶ The messangers spedde them so  
that euery man came there his charge was / he that came to the  
kyng of ffrance, did his message right wele, & foryate no thyng  
what Aunswere he had yeuen to the knyght of Sizile / In trust  
wherof his maister was determyned to sende his sone, and ellis not /  
The kyng of ffrance, remembryng for trouthe what wordes he  
had to the knyght of Sizile, wolde yn no wise for his honour  
contrary them ; and therefore, by good deliberacion of counsell, or-  
deyned to sende his Constable with the nombre of .x. M<sup>1</sup> men,  
certifyng him that at such day as the kyng of Scottes had taken /  
ther shold be yn his parte no faile / Thus departed the messanger  
of Scotland, that was honorably resceyued, & had grete yiftes.  
And now returne we to hym that went yn-to England / that  
semblably in substaunce declared his charge, as the tothir had done



- in ffrancee. the kynge of Englonde, heryng the wordes of the  
 messenger, sawe wele that, and he sente not socours as he promysed,  
 vpon him sholde reste the charge, and so concluded to sende his  
 4 Admyrall of Englonde / and with him the nombre of <sup>1vj.</sup> M<sup>i</sup> men /  
 promysyng on his feith / that such day as þe kyng of Scottes had  
 taken, shold not be failed by hym / thus delyuerd he the messenger,  
 and honorably rewarded hym. and thus .ij. Messangers sped them  
 8 so wele, yn shorte tyme they came ageyn vnto the kyng their  
 maister, to whom they shewed hou they had spedde / Whan he  
 herd thies tidinges, he perceyued wele ther was no lettyng for his  
 eldist sone / than ordeyned he with all diligence his apparaile, & so  
 12 did euery man yn his parte / & so wele quitte them that at the day  
 they had set / there was noon vnredy / and eche of the kynges  
 kepte his promys. Then was it a meruailous thinge to se, & a  
 faire / the .ijj. companyes to-gedir / that for the honour of the  
 16 kyng of Scottes helde them only vnder the obeisaunce of his sone  
 Dauid. ¶ Wele knewe Le Surnome, that the kyng his ffader sent  
 som folkes to thies socours; wherfore he was in grete sorowe lest  
 any of them shold knowe him, for be his wille he wolde not be  
 20 knowen. ¶ Now cometh the day of assemble of the puissaunce of  
 thies .ijj. kynges / and alle were at the porte Deon, yn Scotland.  
 the kyng of Scottes conueied his sone thider / and aftir that euery  
 mannes harneis was shipped / they toke their leue of the kyng,  
 24 whiche vnnethe might speke to them, and in especiaff to his sone /  
 but whan he toke his leue, felle yn a swone / so that men were fayn  
 to bere hym yn-to a chambre, so araied / that he semed rather ded  
 than alyue. Alle they that abode & sawe their frendes go, had  
 28 suche sorowe that they coude not comfort the kyng / for they were  
 alle comfortles / they that wente made litle sorowe, but only to se  
 the hevynesse that their frendes toke for theym. The kyng hath  
 committed his sone to the aduise of therle douglas & of the Erle  
 32 Busshaunt, that were wise knyghtes, & connyng yn the warres, &  
 had seide to them bfore their departyng / “my frendes and cousyns,  
 y put yn your handes the thinge in the worlde y loue moost / &  
 commaunde him to the kepyng of almyghti god, & sende hym forth  
 36 with you” / and more might he not sey vnto theym. whan euery  
 man was to shippe / and the Sailes & ankers wounde vp, they had  
 good wynde / that brought hem sone from the port / and alle the  
 people that were a lond commaundid them to the kepyng of oure  
 40 lord / and there was euery day a seuenyght aftir their departir

The King of  
 England  
 guarantees  
 6000.

[1 leaf 29]

The three  
 Hosts are  
 under Prince  
 David of  
 Scotland,

and embark  
 from Port  
 Deon in Scot-  
 land.

David's ad-  
 visers are  
 Lords Dou-  
 glas and  
 Busshaunt.

generall processione thorough all the Reaume. Alas! this grete & notable armee did litle profit to cristendome / wherof was grete pite and damage / but it is to thinke that god doth all for the best / for [1 ff. 29, bk.] peraventure they <sup>1</sup>that went yn his seruice went not as they ought; 4 but I remitte all that to the knowlage of god. [Illumin.: siege by ships.]

**O**ff the departyng of this grete & high armee was the Soudan The Sultan hears of the Christian navy  
playnly enformed / & yn like wise the kynge of Sizile / but of all the reaume of Sizile was not one with the armee. The 8 Soudan, in eueri parte of the land that was yn his handes, had folkes to here tidynges / and helde him and his power on the feldes nygh the portes, where as he thought they might aryue; so withyn litle while came certayne worde to hym, that men sy the cristen 12 navee comyng to take lond at the port of Gayette / the Soudan, heryng thies tidynges, drewe thider with alle his puissaunce, & brought his ordenaunce with hym, & ranged hym & his people vpon the ryuage, and leide his gonnes & his coluerynes to diffende 16 & distourbe the cristen mennys landyng / vpon the tothirside, Dauid of Scotlond, with all his company, approched the port, & perceyued the enmys redy to deffende their landyng; and yn as moche as it was late, & that they knewe not the port, they toke 20 counsell to ly at ancre til on the morowe, that they might se bettir what they had to do: So did they as ye haue herde / and at that tyme was the wedir faire and <sup>2</sup>calme, & thorough alle the cristen [2 leaf 30] navee they made to blowe trompettes, claryons & taberynes, & alle 24 maner of mynstraHcie, so that it semed wele a place of ioie / their baners & penouns set out fleyng with the wynde, so that they that were on land might se them by the bright sonne / & thought it was a riche & a wele ffournyssht navee. Oure good cristen men 28 thought longe, that they might not set vpon the Sarasynes that night. In the hoste of the Turkes souned they all night grete taberynes / that it semid bettir Helle than any othir thinge. Aftir all this done, Dauid of Scotland sent for the Constable of ffrance 32 & the AdmyraH of Englund / & the moost part of notable knyghtes & Squyers, prayng them to take aduise & counceH what were best to be done / aftir many wordes & demaundes, the conclusion of the councill was this / that men shold take .xx.<sup>ti</sup> or xxx.<sup>ti</sup> Galiottes, of 36 the lightest that were in the Navee, & that they shold be wele & strongly garnysht with artrye & serpentynes, and alle other abilementes that were behoffult / & that they shold go costyng the lond / to se where were best londyng; and in this wise might they se 40

nearing Gacta,

and prepares to oppose their landing.

The Christian fleet looks a joyful scene:

the Turkish host like Hell,

somwhat the maner of their enemyes / And also that in euery  
galliette sholde be some notable knyghtes and squyers wele accom-  
payned, suche as were connyng & expert yn armes / this counceylt  
4 was admytted / and euery captayne that had yn charge to ordeyne  
his folkes, did it with all diligence / So euery man was redy at the  
houre that he was apointed / & the Galliettes wele puruaide for / &  
full of folkes / But ye may wele thinke that euery man went not  
8 that wold, for euery man had desire to auenture him in that high  
seruice / whan they were assembled, they departed & sprad in many  
plais / approchyng the aryual. The Soudan, seyng this company, reconnoitre,  
drew towardes them, wenyng veryly that they had come to take  
12 londe / wherfore he ranged his folkes vpon the aryual as ny the  
water as they myght, for to defende the cristen mennys londyng;  
where he did foly, for the Galliettes approched them so nye / that  
they drewe all at ones withyn the shotte of their ordenaunce, &  
16 were withyn ij. stones caste to theym / for the Galliettes & bargettes  
drew but litle depnesse / & at this first encountre were many  
turkes slayn, & many grete lordes of theym; for the moost noble  
alwey desired to be foremost / that day bare the turkes grete damage /  
20 & with litle losse the cristen folkes retourned ageyn to their grete  
vessels, that lay at ancre without the port / <sup>1</sup>whiche had seyne all [1 lf. 30, bk.]  
that they had done on lond / and whan they came, they had grete  
laude and thanke, for they had so honorably aquitte them pat day.  
24 Dauyd of Scotland / the Constable of ffrance, the Amyrall of  
England, sende for their folkes to come to the shippe that Dauid  
was yn / for to telle what they had seyne on lond, and hou they  
did for the grete shotte that came among hem, and hou they sup-  
28 posed that they alle might londe / and thus they answerd alle  
generally, that yif the grete vesselles might haue come as nere as  
the litle / it sholde haue be a light thinge to take lond / but they  
sawe wele it was not possible for theym to come so nere / wherfore  
32 it was nedefull to take good aduise, ffor the company of the thre  
kynges that ther was / was not lightly to be auentured, for the  
losse of them might turne to our grete hurte to all cristendome /  
Dauid and alle the tothir lordes, heryng this reporte, concluded that  
36 euery man shold take aduise of this matier / & on the morowe, in  
the point of the day, that euery man shold here masse / and forwith  
after meete ther ageyn / & sey ther advise, such as they shal haue  
remembred that night / this was done, & euery man wente to soper  
40 and to reste. ¶ Nowe shall we retourne to pe Soudan & his

The galliettes  
of the Chris-  
tians

and shoot  
many Turks.

They report  
to Prince  
David and  
his Council,

who resolve  
on a consulta-  
tion next day.

The Sultan  
calls his  
Captains to  
Council.

Baltasar

advises the  
Sultan

[1 leaf 31]

to have pits  
dug on the  
shore,

and great  
trenches,  
all filld with  
Turks,  
and then re-  
tire his army  
behind them.

folkes, that gretely meruailed of the maner of oure cristen folkes /  
for moche people had they lost by them / and aftir the departyng of  
the Galiottes, the Soudan sent for alle his Capteynes, to take aulse  
what was best to do / either to lete the cristen men to take lond / 4  
or to resiste theym / they sawe clerely that yif the cristen men  
contynued yn that they had done the day before / he might no  
thyng wyne, but alwey lose / so he praied eche of them trewly to  
counseile him, & say what was to be done / and aftir thies wordes 8  
he asked aulse at one that him thought most sad to counseile in  
suche cas / & this knyght was named Baltasar / whiche alt his  
tyme had vsed his lif in warres / as wele on cristen as on hethen /  
the whiche Baltasar, aftir many excuses made, leyng the charge on 12  
them þat were wiser than he / seyng that it was full vnsittyng for  
hym to speke bifore suche as there were / & whan he sawe he  
might not be excused, he seid in this manere / "sir, sauynge your  
pleasir and correccion, ye haue a feble choyse of me / but sith it 16  
pleasith you that y shalt speke, & may not be excused, y shalt sey  
vn<sup>1</sup>dir correccion as me thinketh / ye haue sene the maner of the  
cristen to-day / what Damage they haue done to you & youre folkes /  
whiche is more than folkes put you yn knowlage of / ye se wele 20  
that alt their desir is to take lond ther as we be; wherof y mervaille,  
for it were more profitable ellis where for them / and therfore y  
suppose that they haue non of Sizile with them / and so they wote  
not where to seche their port but here / wherfore me thinketh it 24  
were good this night to make pittes ther as they sholde londe,  
whiche sholde be wele garnyssed with ordenaunce, and that they  
shold be made yn suche wise that eche of them might defende  
othir / And also that ther might be made grete trenches, that ther 28  
might be grete nombre of people hid theryn / and that your grete  
armee drewe them a-bakke the draught of an arowblast, and there  
shewed them. I suppose verily whan the cristen shall se that / they  
wold come in many placis to take lond / perauenture alle the puis- 32  
saunce of them / and if they come ones *withyn* gonne shotte, y  
suppose that fewe of their vessels, or noon, shal escape vndrowned /  
and for this that y haue seide of my opinion, alwey *with* correccion,  
me thinketh ther shold be apointed moche people, wele puruaide of 36  
vitaile til to-morowe yn the mornynge, to go yn hande al night  
with this werke / and yif eueri man do his deuoir, y trow it wol  
not dure half the night; and as for my part, y wol begyn, if ye be  
plesed. and if myn advise be simple, y beseche your grace / & alle 40

that here be, of pardon, for if y coude bettir / bettir y wold sey, and  
 offre me to the best counseil" / Aftir thies wordes / the Soudan  
 asketh forth alle othir folowyng / hou they thought. and he that  
 4 spake nexte, seide / "sir, ye haue herde thaduisse of Baltasar / that  
 all his tyme hath haunted the warres / and for the speede of this  
 matier, to myn aduise ye may no bettir be adressed / wherfore,  
 without holdyng of longe speche fro pointe to pointe, y can no  
 8 bettir say / than y haue herd him say ; wherfore y offre my self &  
 all my folkes with all diligence toward the perfourmyng ther-of /  
 if it so please you." whan thies two had endid their reasons /  
 the Soudan asked ferther / and euery man was of thopinion of  
 12 Balthasar / offryng them self and alle their folkes to all that  
 pleased the Soudan to commaunde / this counseil was sone  
 taken & concluded / and they that shold do the diligence [1 lf. 31, bk.]  
 were ordeyned, and to euery man deliuerd their charge, whiche  
 16 was done before day / and so wele accomplished that no man  
 coude amende it / for it was not so wele deuised / but it was  
 performed.

All the other  
 Captains  
 agree.

The pits and  
 trenches are  
 dug and  
 mand.

YE haue herde wele hou the cristen men had apoynted the  
 20 moost noble men to be yn Dauyd shipe yn the mornynge  
 be tymes / to take aduise what was to be done. at the houre  
 apointed they came, & went to a counseil / and than spake Erle  
 Douglas for his maister / seyng, "faire lordes, ye knowe at oure  
 24 departyng yister euen, howe euery man sholde take remembraunce  
 of this grete matier. Wherfore, my lorde that here is, wolde fult  
 fayne knowe your auises / what is to be done, for he knoweth wele  
 amonges you alle, prynces & Barons, ye haue this night fult ofte  
 28 awaked to stodie aduise yn this high werke, where-yn we be / In  
 whiche we may wyne the glory of heuen / the honour and renome  
 of the worlde / and aquyte vs of the charge pat is youen vnto vs.  
 So praieth you, my lorde that here is / that it plese you to counseile  
 32 hym / and he is redy to execute it to his power. The kynge his  
 fadir hath ordeyned hym ther-to / and for that cause sent him  
 hider" / aftir tho wordes, Dauyd hym self praide them the same /  
 and than he bisought the Constable of ffrance to speke first / for  
 36 he was moost noble man of the company, and not werst puruaide of  
 good aduise / it was no meruaile, for he was one of the chief of the  
 Reaume of ffrance. Then spake he, & seide / "y meruaile moche,  
 my lorde, of so wise a kynge as is the kynge your fadir, that he  
 40 hath sent you hider yn this grete & noble company, without

At Prince  
 David's  
 Council,

the Constable  
 of France  
 advises

that, as they  
don't know  
where to  
land,

they shall  
wait for the  
King of  
Sicily.

[1 leaf 32]

The Admiral  
of England  
agrees.

The look-out  
men report  
that the  
Sultan has  
withdrawn  
his army  
from the  
shore.

hauyng one only man of that same reaume that ye shold aryue yn.  
vndir correccion / me semeth it a grete defaute / for as longe as  
oure enemyes wille / we shalle take no londe here / seying the Soudan  
& alle his puissaunce bifore vs, and we not knowyng the londyng, 4  
whereby we haue neither Wisdam nor poliece to helpe vs / also the  
kyng of Sizile is not aduertised of oure comyng / wherfore y wote  
not what to counseile you / but best, me thinketh, it were to sende  
vnto the kyng of Sizile, and byde stille here til theire comyng 8  
ageyn / But ther is o sore point / they that shalle go, knowe not the  
way / ne where they shalle fynde hym / but y make no doute, if  
they may haue grace to come to hym / the kyng shall purvey for  
them to be conduyted surely y-nough / I can se noon other wey but 12  
this / for the more y thinke on it / the more straunge me semys  
the matier / wherfore y can not wele geue you counseill, <sup>1</sup>but  
biseche youre Lordship to axe ferther of them that haue sene more  
than I. ffor often tyme they that haue grettist charges be not moost 16  
wise / & so farith it by me / but as for my parte, y am redy to  
obeie you / and do you seruise as is commaundid me / and to  
bileue the counseile of wise & noble men, bettir knowing suche  
matiers than y, wherof many may lightly be founde in this notable 20  
company." Dauid vndirstode wele that the Constable was yn dis-  
pleasir, by cause they had noon ther of the Reaume of Sizile that  
might conduyte them / and so he askid forth the Amiral of Ing-  
londes auisse, whiche in alle poyntes folowed the Constable of 24  
ffraunce / & shewed more sad matier to be troubled than did the  
Constable / and spake as he that was not pleased, leyyng grete  
charge to them that had the conduyte of the armee<sup>2</sup> / and Dauid of  
Scotland askid ferther, but he fonde noon that coude take a ferme 28  
purpose. Thus as they were yn argumentes, without any conclu-  
sione takyng, they that were in the somer Castells & toppis of the  
shippis / that might easely se alle them that were a londe, per-  
ceyued verrily that the Soudan and alle his armee was withdrawen 32  
more than the draught of an arowe; & anon they tolde thies  
tidynges to dauid / & to alle theym that were with hime, whiche  
forthwith went vp on the shippes / an sawe it was trewe that they  
had seide / Som of them seide the Soudan did this for to haue 36  
bataile, & to haue the cristen men at lesse defence / & som seide  
that he withdrew him for the grete losse he had ysterday with the  
gonnes & shotte of cristen men / whiche he wolde no more abide.

<sup>2</sup> ? MS. arinee.

alle they that were there, seide that they withdrewe them for they  
 might not wele feight so ny the water, seyng the smalle vessells so  
 wele furnysht / Than they concluded to go thider ageyn / and it  
 4 was ordeyned that they shold go, that went the day a-fore, with  
 many moo yn their company / so than was the houre apointed / &  
 to euery man deliuerd the charge of such feliship as shold go at  
 their conduyte / whan the houre came, alle men went to their ves-  
 8 sells / and in especialt, grete nombre of yong knyghtes & Squyers,  
 moo than had done the day a-fore / & whan they were assembled /  
 they spredde their vessells as they had done the day bifore. Of  
 the tothir parte / grete nombre of Turkes came out of their paulyions  
 12 toward them, makyng semblaunt to defende the londe; they that  
 were *withyn* the barges & Galiettes, in all haste nyhed the <sup>1</sup>Londe, [1 lf. 32, bk.]  
 & then feyned the turkes to withdraw them, for the grete shote of  
 oure cristen men / this seyng, they of the Galiettes approched so  
 16 nye that they might a lepte to þe londe if they had wolde; & so  
 they had done, if it had not be defendid fro them / the turkes that  
 were yn the trenches & in the pittes, that were so wel made that  
 their shot was alt a longe the see side fro place to place, & was so  
 20 wele garnysht that no thinge failed; and whan they sawe the  
 barges & Galiettes so ny, that they might no nerre without  
 londyng, then lepe they out of their trenches / with so horrible a  
 noise & cry, as though it had ben alle the ennemys of helle; & all  
 24 at ones shotte with gones, serpentynes & culuerynes, arblastes,  
 crosbowes; & alle suche ordenaunce as they had / they lete go at  
 ones; and whan the turke herde this noise, he made to caste vp a  
 cry & a noise amonge his folkes, & drewe thiderward in suche  
 28 maner that alle our folkes were a-ferde; & not without cause / for  
 many of their barges were a londe, & had fewe gones or serpen-  
 tynes to defende them self *with* / and they were araied in suche  
 wise / that they were almost destroyed / for the moost part of them  
 32 *withyn* / were so hurte that they might not helpe them self / the  
 remenaunt durst not shewe them, for the grete shot that came on  
 them / moreour, ther were at this first encontryng .iij. or .iiij.  
 galiettes & barges drowned / wheryn many a notable knight &  
 36 squier endid their lyues / It is not to questioune / þat our folkes  
 þat were in þe grete Naaee, & might se þis grete infortune / but  
 they had asmoche sorowe as þey might bere / for yn þis litle  
 Naaee was þe flour & þe choise of alle þeir yong chiualtry / fuH  
 40 feyne wold þey at þat tyme a bene a londe to a uentured their lyues

The Chris-  
tians man  
their small  
vessels, and  
advance.

The Turks  
make a feignd  
retreat;

their men in  
the trenches  
leap out and  
fire.

Three or four  
Christian  
gallies and  
barges are  
sunk, and  
many men  
kild.

The Christians retreat, having lost eight boats,

and many men kild and wounded.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 33]

I drop this, because it annoys me.

Prince David holds a second Council.

It decides to send two Scotch knights to land by night,

and capture a Turk to show them the way to Sicily.

yn the helpe and rescuse of their frendes / but for alle their discomfort / it might now be noon other. The turkes did their deuoir to destroye the cristen / and the cristen put payne to saue them self / without makyng any othir warres, the moost part of them 4 came ageyn to the grete Navee, Wherof were hurt without nombre / & many of them dyde that were hurt with the gonnes & serpentyntes / whan aH this was endid / they tolde of their losse / hou viij. of their smallest vessells were drowned, wherof neuir a man 8 escape, beside all the remenaunt that were hurte / this day hath done asmoche harme to þe cristen men as sholde a done a grete bataile, for suche as were of hy & grete corage, that wolde auenture them / the moost part was dede. <sup>1</sup>There was the sorowe & com- 12 plaint that eueri man made for his frende / aswele for the hurte as for the dede / whiche were to longe to reherce. ¶ I shall leue of this sorowe, for the writyng therof annoieth me / and I retourne to the Soudan & his company / that make grete ioie this night / thinkyng 16 that for a bigynnynge this was a faire auenture / and knewe wele by them self of the night a-fore / ynne what discomfort the cristen men were / and gretely honoure they The knyght that hadde yeuen them this conseile. that nyght concludid they to tary there stille, 20 til the cristen Navee was withdrawen, for the grete losse & sorow that they had / this nyght was yn the cristen Navee no counseill nor conclusion taken, for euery man had y-nough to do, to visite his frende / there is no sorow nor mysfortune but it most passe. 24 So on the morowe Dauid assembled his counseill; and aftir that he had made the compleyntes & lamentyng of them he had loste, to their nyest frendes / he praied them euerichon to take this auenture yn pacience, & to shewe their best counseill in this matier / & for 28 to reherce the opinions of eueri man, it shold be to longe, I shall go to the conclusion, that was this / they apointed two notable yonge knyghtes, hardy and wise of their age, and wele aduised, & ordeyned them to take that night a Galee / and more than ij. leegis 32 from the Soudans puissaunce thei sholde londe / & put them in deuoir to take som maner of persone walkyng yn the felde, whiche sholde teche them the way to the kynge of Sizile. whan this was apointed / they leide the charge of the message on thies two 36 knyghtes, whiche were bothe of Scotland, whiche charge was no thinge elles but that they shold telle by mouthe, what auenture was befall to the cristen Navee / and aH for lakke that they had no man of that countre that coude conduyte them / and that they wolde 40



abide ther / the messangers / xiiij. daies / and if thei retourne not  
 withyn that time / they wolde departe / for they had no lenger  
 vitaille. Thus departed the two knyghtes / and euery man praide  
 4 them to do wele their deuoir; so they went to their vessells, &  
 slepte there til it was night / than toke they their course toward a  
 grete wode / that semed a two leegis from the Soudans hoste / then  
 they toke vnto them vitaille for ij. or iij. dayes, & armed hem  
 8 lightly, & toke theire sheldes and their swerdes / and eche sware to  
 abide by other yn alle auen<sup>1</sup>tures; & wele might eche of them trust [1 lf. 33, bk.]  
 othir, for they were cosyn *germys*, comen of the best lynage yn  
 Scotland, as of Barons / and of their age of them self moost renomel.  
 12 So moche did they that, vnperceyued or knowen of any persone,  
 they came to the forseide wode. this forest was ful longe, and but  
 litle wey fro thens was the place fro whens kynge ffrabrace de- and get to a  
 partid whan he was taken / and that forest endured to the playne of wood.  
 16 Tapyr / that Olyner, fferauntes brother, had yn gouernaunce. Now  
 ar thies ij. knyghtes londid, and made their praiers to almyghti god  
 to be their guyde, and conduyte hem from alle them that wold hurte  
 them / then they wilke forth thorough the forest til it was day / &  
 20 when it was day, they perceyued a grete hy wey, that was moche  
 vsyd & betyn with horsis / it was a wey that went to a Toure of  
 kyng ffrabrace / & assone as they might / they leste<sup>2</sup> this hy wey /  
 and toke a more wilde wey in-to the foreste / alwey costeyng by  
 24 the same wey, to the entent to mete with some laborer that might  
 auertise them where they were / so long they went til they came  
 out of the forest / and were almost at the Towne of ffounde / where  
 a grete garison was of the Turkes / and they dred to come yn any  
 28 toune til they knewe more / and withdrewe them ayen in-to the  
 forest / they had gone but a while, but they mette an olde woman / and meet an  
 that bare a fagot on hir hede of stikkas, that she hadde gedird yn old woman,  
 the wode / and whan she perceyued thies knyghtes, she knewe  
 32 anoon be their abilment that they were not of the turkes, & she  
 dred hir moche, & seide vnto them in such langage as they might  
 wele vndirstonde / “my lordes, preised be ihesu criste / that y  
 haue founde you here, for y se wele ye be cristen / & forsothe so am  
 36 I / and for that y wote not that ye knowe this contre / y wol aduise  
 you to be ware / for on that honde is a grete garison of the Turkys  
 folkes.” and this seide she, for she thought they had sene the  
 place, by cause they sholde haue the more affiaunce yn hir / when

<sup>2</sup> ? for *left*.

The two  
Scotch  
knights land,

and get to a  
wood.

They come  
near Fondé,

and meet an  
old woman,

who pretends  
to be a Chris-  
tian.

the knyghtes herde her speke / they wende wele she seide trouthe,  
 and came the more out of the wode to speke more to hir / and  
 askid whiche was the nexte place that hilde of the kynge of Sizile /  
 she seide it was but .iiij. myle thens / and that a knyght had it in 4  
 goneruance, that was called Olyuer, whiche was Brother vnto the  
 Seneshall of Sizile; & she seide that but a litil while syne / the  
 Soudans brothir, kynge firabrace, was taken prisoner bfore the  
 same place / the ij. knyghtes were ioifull of thies <sup>1</sup>tidynges, & 8  
 praiede the woman that she wold bringe hem thider / she made  
 semblaunt of haltyng, as she might not wele go / for there was no  
 thinge she drede more than to come yn to that place / for she was  
 knownen ther for the worste & the moost vntrewe that yn hir tyme 12  
 lyued / then asked they hir, what wey they myght holde / and she  
 tolde hem the trouthe, & shewed hem whiche wey they sholde  
 take / and that shold not faile them til they came withyn a bow-  
 shot of the place / than bitoke they hir vnto god / and helde forth 16  
 that wey aswele as they might. & whan they were out of hir  
 sight / she leide doune hir fagot / and ranne yn suche wise toward  
 the garison of the turkes, that she semed not lame / for vnnethe an  
 horse might ouirtake hir; so fast she ranne / that by than she 20  
 came to the place, she might vnnethe speke / and whan she was  
 brethed, she called the Captayne & tolde him alt that she had  
 founde, & hou she thought they were not of the Reaume of Sizile;  
 & hou she had counseiled them / for she dempte they were of the 24  
 cristen armee / that is now come, "and if ye wille, they may not  
 escape you, for y shall brynge you where y lefte hem" / whan the  
 Captayne herde this olde woman / he callid his folkes, & made hir  
 to reherce the tale ayen bfore them; & so she did, & seide verily 28  
 they had no horses, but wente a fote, & drewe toward Olyuers  
 place / wherto they might not come but by ij. passages / thenne  
 apointed he xx<sup>ti</sup> of the garisone to go forth in ij. partes to the two  
 passages that they thought thies ij. knyghtes sholde passe by / and 32  
 sent forth othir .x. with this olde woman, to wite if they might  
 fynde them nere ther she lefte them / Thies ij. cristen knyghtes,  
 that sawe this olde woman renne thus whan she was departed fro  
 them / and that she was not lame as she had seide / knewe fult wele 36  
 what hir entent was / & wherfore she ranne so fast toward the  
 Sarasyns / wherfore, as wise knyghtes of warre, they drewe them  
 farther yn-to the wode / yn-to the thikkest therof / costeyng alwey as  
 the woman had taught them / so that they came neither yn hy wey 40

The old woman tells the spies that a Sicilian town is but 4 miles off.

[1 leaf 34]

As soon as they leave her, she runs to the garrison,

and tells the Turkish Captain about the Scotch spies.

He sends two parties of his men to catch them.

The Scotch spies get farther into the wood.

nor path / but costeyde forth as streight as they coude, towardes the  
 place / And for the turkes, that y haue tolde you rode to the ij.  
 passagis / they toke no grete hede to the reporte of this olde  
 4 woman / but seide amonges them, <sup>1</sup>“oure Captayne is wele occupied [1 lf. 34, bk.]  
 to geue any credence to the seyng of this olde woman / that is wors  
 than the blak deuelt of helle; it may as wele be that she doth this  
 for the harme of vs, as for the hurte of othir / it is not good to  
 8 trust to moche yn hir sorowe / haue he that hastith hym ouir faste  
 for her wordes / it is goode we auise vs wele a-fore / for Olyuers  
 folkes be men of grete vertu and worthynesse / and if we approche  
 their place, y suppose we shall not retourne without debate” / with  
 12 suche wordes rode they forth al easely, so longe til one of the x.  
 that were to-gedir, perceyued the ij. knyghtes comyng out of the  
 wode, & toke the wey to Olyuers place / whiche was not fer fro  
 them. & when the turkes perceyued hem, they spored aftir them  
 16 in aH that they myght / the two knyghtes vndirstode wele that they  
 were enemys, & fled toward the ffortresse / but they were so nere  
 them / that they ouirtoke them withyn lesse than a bow-shotte to the  
 toun & ffortresse / & whan they sawe they might no ferther, they  
 20 put on their helmys / and aredied hem to their defence, & made a  
 syne to them of the place for helpe, & set them self ayenst a tre,  
 & defendid them ayenst aH .x. The wacche of the place, that sawe  
 wele aH this, sende worde to Olyuer herof in aH haste, whiche  
 24 came vp anone on the wallis, & sawe wele alle the feeldes aboute /  
 that there was no moo but they, & that they were so nere his place /  
 wherfore he had no drede to make his folkes issu out on them / &  
 anone they came to the socours of thies ij. knyghtes, that wele and  
 28 manfully faught / & be than had slayne ij. or iij. turkes / & made  
 suche way aboute them / that their enemyes durst not wele approche  
 them. the turkes perceyued þe comyng-out of þem of the place,  
 and durst not abide them / but anon fled streight toward the wode,  
 32 but ther was noon that folowed hem / for assone as Olyuers folkes  
 came to the ij. knyghtes, they taryed stille with them / and brought  
 them yn-to the toun to their maister, that resceyued them with  
 grete ioie whan he knewe what folkes they were / and askid  
 36 them of their tidynges / whan the knyghtes sawe Olyuere, they  
 thankid god of his grace / that had brought them yn-to his handes;  
 and than they tolde him aH the pitous & sorowfult auenture that  
 was falle vnto the cristen the day bfore their departyng / the dis-  
 40 comfort of Dauid, the kynge of Scottes sone / & of alle the Prynces

The old  
 woman's  
 report is  
 pooli-poolid.

The 2 Scotch  
 Knights are  
 attack by  
 Turks.

Oliver sends  
 his men to  
 succour the  
 2 Scotch  
 Knights,

who are then  
 brought safe  
 to the fort-  
 ress.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 35] of ffraunce, Englund and Scotland, that were there / & <sup>1</sup>hou they wist not where they were / nor herde no worde fro the kynge of Sizile, wherof they thought grete meruaile / seying that he was assertayned of their comyng / of tyme & houre of their departyng / 4 and neuir had sente one only man vnto them / wherfore they toke grete displeasir / and were gretly annoied towardes him, & had sente them / vpon their retourne *withyn* xv. Dayes / or ellis to go their wey / and tary no lenger / Olyuer excused the kynge as moche 8 as he might / for he sawe wele it was nede / & that the cristen had cause of displeasir / So made he the knyghtes ~~att~~ the chere that he coude, & promysed to conduyte them to the kyng of Sizile, that was but ij. dayes iournay thens, of whiche kynge we wol speke 12 now, for we haue lefte of hym a grete while.

The Scotch, &c., are angry at the King of Sicily's not sending to them.

The King of Sicily

**T**he kynge of Sizile, knowyng verily the Armee made by the iij. kynges, assembled the thre estates of his lond, and helde a grete counseilt, to take aduise hou he might con- 16 duyte & gouerne him, the ceason he abode the comyng of the cristen armee / eueri man counseiled hym to reise alle the power of his lond, a litle bfore suche tyme as the cristen armee shold arryue / accordyng to this aulse he did / and sent for alle maner abile men 20 of warre / & anon *without* any delay they came vnto him / arraied and accompanied as wele as they might / thenne shewed he vnto them / the hope & comfort that he had, to haue socour of the cristen men / and the kyng was then wele accompanied afir the 24 pouerte of his Reaume / and the grete losse that had fallyn ther-to / & for they of the reaume had moche leuer dye / than to contynue yn suche case as they had bene a grete while / for this cause came alle maner of folkes / eueri man for his parte aswele abiled and 28

and the King of Hungary and his,

assemble to meet the Expedition from Scotland, &c.

accompanied as they might / In like wise the kynge of Hungry, that ioyned to the reaume of Sizile, hadde arredied him & alle his power, to mete with the cristen men at their londyng / accompanied with the kynge of Sizile, trustyng at that day to se the warres 32 endid / Thus the kynge of Hungry, wele acompanyed, abode eueri day to here tidynges of the cristen / but noon he herd / whiche was a grete defaute yn alle partyes / For lakke of sendyng eche of them to othir, grete harme befille, wherof was grete pite. The kyng of 36 Sizile, abidyng tidynges, was asserteyned by his Capteynes that the

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 35, bk.] Soudan had assembled alle his people, <sup>2</sup>as they vndirstode by suche of his folkes as were taken prisoners / and that he purposed to encountre the cristen armee, whiche was ny the costes, as he vndir- 40

stode. The kynge, knowyng for certayn thies tidynges from many  
places, toke the felde with alle his folkes, a thre leegis from the  
Soudan on that on side of hym / but his puissaunce was not to  
4 dele with the Soudan and his hoste / & than toke he counseilt  
what was to be done yn this matier; and they auised him to ley  
seege to a place that was named fosses, whiche was but iiij. myle  
fro the porte where-as the turke lay. This sholde be but for a  
8 maner to holde his peple to-gedir til the londyng of the cristen  
armee / & to thentent to cause the Soudan drawe thiderwarde til  
the cristen might londe / for he entendid to hoolde no seege ther / for  
and the Soudan came / he wolde withdrawe him / for he was not  
12 able to dele with him / thus was the conclusion taken / and as yn  
maner of a seege, loggid him and his folkes bifore the place, where  
he was the same tyme that the ij. knyghtes came to Olyuer, whan  
he promysed them to conduyte hem to the kynge in ij. dayes.  
16 ¶ On the morowe fult erly, whan the ij. knyghtes were wele restid  
at their ease, Olyuere puruaide for them .ij. good horsis / & conueid  
them so wele that he brought them to the kynge / and with the  
lesse payne he might do so, for alle the hethen men were with the  
20 Soudan / saue only they of the garisons, whiche were not right wele  
furnyssht with folke, as it shewed wele by the place that the kynge  
of Sizile lay bifore / thus as the ij. knyghtes and their guydes  
rode / they questioned of the kynge of Sizile & his puissaunce / and  
24 Olyuers folkes tolde hem the grete paynes, hardnesse, mysery, &  
pouerte, this pore Reaume had endured / and than they tolde hem /  
hou, bi-fore the comyng of the cristen armee / a man like an Aungel  
yn beaute, to seynt George in worthynesse, was come vnto them, &  
28 sith hys comyng, they had neuir but good auenture / and alle their  
dedes & emprises were come to good conclusion / and tolde them  
of the ij. first good auentures that felt sodeynly at his first comyng,  
and tolde alt the maner hou they fell / and that sith his comyng,  
32 one Sizilion was worth vj. turkes, and byfore, vj. of them were not  
worthe one turke / and that nowe the turkes might not endure  
ayenst them / of thies tidynges were the ij. knyghtes wele com-  
forted / and desired no more of god, <sup>1</sup>but that their company were  
36 ones assembled with the kynge of Sizile / And for to knowe more  
of this yong man that was newe come in-to Sizile / they asked his  
name / “for sothe,” seide their guyde, “whan he came hider, his  
name was Le Desperuen; but for that eueri man hath sene yn him  
40 so moche wele & noblesse / the ladies of the courte haue named him

While wait-  
ing, the  
Sicilians and  
Hungarians  
besiege  
Fosses.

Oliver brings  
the 2 Scotch  
Knights to  
the King of  
Sicily.

and they are  
told of the  
wonderful  
acts of Prince  
Philip.

[ leaf 36 ]

The 2 Scotch  
Knights

join in the  
assault on  
Fosses.

They see  
Prince Philip  
fighting alone  
in a tower,

[<sup>1</sup> If. 36, bk.]

and go to his  
help.

Le Surnome ; for they sawe him yn no thinge dispurneid that longid  
to honour / thus now his name is Surnome. And if ye wil knowe  
him, it nedith not to desire any man to shewe him you, but  
beholde the moost faire and amiable, and the moost likly of the 4  
kynges armee / and that is he, and by this ye may lightly knowe  
hym" / The ij. knyghtes of Scotland rode forth aH ioifully, hering  
thies tidynges, & had grete meruaile that yn the persone of one  
man might be so grete cause of preise, desiryng moche to se him / 8  
so longe they rode, that they approached the kynge of Siziles hoste /  
and at their welcomyng, there was right a grete assaute at the place /  
and they alight as folke of right high corage, and went streight to  
the saute / & fonde ther many pavis throwen to the erthe / and eche 12  
of them toke one, & went to the wallis, beholdyng who did best /  
& they sawe, by force of defense, that the saute began to waxe lesse /  
& many folkes to withdrawe them / for there were many of the  
cristen woundid & sore hurte / but at the laste, they sawe at o toure 16  
one of the kynge of Siziles parte that valiauntly fought, and for no  
thing wolde descende, but rather was maister of that toure / but he  
had noon erthly helpe / wherfore he made a syne to his company  
that they sholde retourne / hou-be-it ther were fult fewe pat drewe 20  
thiderward / for euery man helde hym vtirly destroyed with-oute  
remedy. men might se wele a-fer that he was sore assailed / but  
meruailously he defendid him / so that noon durst abide a stroke  
of his hande. he was so by a-lofte that nedid to drede, neither gonne 24  
shot, ne stone cast / nor no hurt they might do him, saue only with  
strokes / and the turkes dred his strokes so moche, that they durst  
not abide him ; thus, as half taken, was he vpon this toure, & sy hym  
self at a mischief / wherfore he made synes to the people, geuyng 28  
them corage to come ageyn / thies ij. forsaide knyghtes of Scotland  
had be their but a while, when they herd cry, " Le Surnome is lost /  
but if he haue socour / whiche sholde be the grettist hurt that euir  
befell to the reaume of Sizile ;" & anoon they knewe <sup>1</sup>wele that it 32  
was the same valiaunt squyer of whom they haue herde speke,  
whiche stode yn auenture for lakke of socour. than toke they ij. a  
laddir, and drew them toward the toure / anoon aftir them came 36  
many moo folkes, but they were the first, be a good while, that went  
vpon the laddir / the saute began on alle parties more huger and  
more sore than it had ben bifore / thies ij. knyghtes of Scotland  
did aH their payne to come vp / & to make them to be knowen of  
Surnome, as wele as of them of the hoste. wherto they did aH the 40

- diligence that any noble men might do / & many tymes were put  
doun of the ladders / & many tymes remounted ayen. Surnome, Prince Philip  
seyng the good wille of them, thought, with the helpe of god, to  
4 make them better wey / & so betoke him-self to god & blessid him /  
& auaunced hym-self amonge the turkes that were on the walles  
a-boute the toure, delyng them suche lyuerey, that many he slewe /  
and the remenaunt fled bifore hym / and so made he the two and the two  
Scotch  
Knights  
drive the  
Turks from  
the walls;  
8 knyghtes of Scotland, and many othir, to come vp on the walles /  
the turkes drewe them to the market place, sore discomfit. the  
kyng & his folkes entred yn-to the tounne by the gates that were  
opynd vnto them by them that had wonne the wallis. the defence  
12 that the turkes made yn the market place ayenst the kynges folkes  
auailed not; for, with the helpe of Le Surnome, alle were slayne /  
thus was the towne wonne *without* any grete losse or damage to the and Fosses  
is won.  
cristen men / and it was bothe faire & stronge. Thies tidinges came  
16 anon to knowlage of the Soudan / wherof he was right sorowfuH,  
& knewe wele ther was to hym a right grete losse / & impossible to  
him to recouer so many good men as he had slayn there. And  
thies ij. knyghtes of Scotland were gretly ameruailed of *pat* they The 2 Scotch  
Knights  
wonder at  
Prince  
Philip's  
prowess.  
20 had sene that day, yn the persone of Surnome, more than they had  
herd sey / then desired they moche to accomplissh their charge  
that they had to the kyng / and also to se Le Surnome vnarmed,  
and that *pey* might be aqueynted *with* hym / assone as they myght,  
24 they founde vp them that had conduyte them, whiche they sente  
to the kyng / to certifie him that ij. of the *seruauntes* of Dauyd of  
Scotland were come to him / fro the saide Dauyd, desiryng moche to  
speke with the kyng / seyng that hir message was hasty. The  
28 kyng, hou-be-it that his folkes were yet alle out of aray, & that he  
wist not where noon of his coun<sup>l</sup>seil were logged, yn asmoche as [1 leaf 37]  
the towne was newly *wonne* / wherfore euery man was loggid *with*-  
out an herbeiour, he sent them worde that withyn ij. houres he wold  
32 sende for them / and commaunded them that had conduyte them, to  
holde hem company vnto that tyme / and that they shold put them  
yn deuoir to do them aH the chere and ease they coude / The  
kyng of Sizile, aftir that he was wele loggid, & his folkes, and  
36 made gret slaughter, & wanne grete good, he made to seche where  
they of his counseil were logged, & sent for them to come to hym;  
and than sent he for the knyghtes of Scotland / that, as ye may wele  
thinke, had not chaungid their *abilementes* / for their somers were  
40 not ther / they came to the kyng, their visages grete and swolne of

They are  
sent for by  
the King of  
Sicily.

The 2 Scotch  
Knights tell  
the King of  
Sicily

that the Ex-  
pedition of  
his Allies  
have waited  
at Gaeta,

and not had  
one message  
from him,

so that the  
flower of  
their army  
has perisht.  
[1 ff. 37, bk.]

He must  
therefore  
send to them  
soon.

the strokes that they had resceyued, & salued him right honorably,  
as knyghtes of honour that had be right wele acostomed to do suche  
thinges / yeldyng thankes to god of the grete and good fortune / that  
he had that day / geuyng hym a grete commendacion and preise / 4  
seyng that the place that he had wonne at this tyme, was not con-  
querable without the grete grace of god, and worthinesse of his  
persone & of his noble chyualrie / aftir this, fro Dauyd of Scotland,  
the prynces & lordes of the cristen Armee pat at that tyme were 8  
yn the see bfore the port of Galette / made they semblable recom-  
mendacion, seyyng to the kyng / that for to do seruyse to Ihesu  
criste / to hym, & also to his Reaume, this grete and mighti armee  
was sent fro the iij. kynges, of ffraunce, of Englund & Scotlande, of 12  
the whiche Armee, Dauyd, the kyng of Scottes eldest sone, is chief /  
and he and alle the prynces and Barons of his company meruaile,  
yn-asmoche as ye were assertayned of the Armee by their propre  
messangers / and of the day of their departyng / and yit haue they 16  
not one only messenger fro you / nor your auertisement hou they  
shold be demeaned, nor haue not yn their company one man of  
this Reaume; whiche thinge gretly abasshith them / that so mighti  
a kyng, so porely hath condite so grete an acte / wherethorugh hath 20  
folowed moche harme & shame to the cristen men / And there they  
tolde of the grete ynfortune that felle to the Armee the day bfore  
their departyng / and enformed the kyng that the flour of chualre  
of the cristen armee was full ny lost that day, <sup>1</sup>and so many of them 24  
were slayne / that it was grete pite to reherce: this sore annoied  
them, and so ought it to the kyng yn whos seruice they came /  
seyyng ferther, that if they had not right sone tidynges from the  
kyng, that it was not possible for them to abide there / for this 28  
infortunat day caused grete displeasir amonges them / so pat  
Dauid had right grete payne to kepe them stille / for whiche cause  
they full humbly requyred the kyng to be hastily spedde, for such  
was their charge. The kyng of Sizile, heryng thies wordes & 32  
tidynges that the ij. knyghtes had tolde him, hou-be-it this day had  
be right ioifult to hym of the takyng of this stronge towne / yit  
was he sore troubled yn his corage, & seide / “they shold be answerd  
& delyuerd the nexte morowe,” for he desired moche to se this hy 36  
and noble company / to the whiche he was as moche beholden as he  
might be / “and y beleue verily that ther is the flour & choice of  
chualrie / for yn you, faire lordes, hath be shewed this day grete  
noblesse / and if alle your company be such / it may be called the 40



- flour of chiularie of the worlde / for ye haue made you more to be  
 knowen this day in this company, bothe of the worthy men and of  
 cowardes / than they that haue ben moche lenger here / y leue full  
 4 wele your visages be vnknewen to cowardes, but the abilementes of  
 your bakkes might wele y-nough be knowen of alle them that were  
 behinde you. *with* them y was / & therfore y knowe your abilement  
 wele / y leue / he that was yn the toure knowe your visages bettir  
 8 than y do / for ye shewed them vnto him / that at that tyme had  
 ful grete nede of socours." The knyghtes thanked the kynge fult  
 humbly, that for so litle deserte yaued them so grete honour, &  
 seide / "that he allone that was yn the toure, to their conceite was  
 12 cause of the good auenture that day; & it semed them / that he  
 allone suffised y-nough for half them that were *with*-yn, for ther  
 was noon that durste abide his strokes." As they were yn this  
 talkyng, fieraunt the Seneshall, & Surnome his seruauant came yn  
 16 to þe kynge / & assone as þe ij. Scottyshe knyghtes sawe Le Sur-  
 nome comē yn / by the report þat they had of them þat had con-  
 duyte them / þey wist for trouthe it was þe same / for, so goodly a  
 man ne saw þey neuir. & þan thought þey þat it was he þat  
 20 was on þe toure, & for the vois that þey had herde amonges the  
 people that cried "helpe Surnome þat is on þe toure" / þey  
 thought certeynly þat the name that the <sup>1</sup>Ladies had geuyn hym, [1 leaf 38]  
 was more propre for hym than the first name / for god and nature  
 24 had highly puruaiede for him. Assone as the kynge sawe hym yn  
 the Chambre, he came to hym / & embraced hym / & seide to the  
 knyghtes of Scotland, "knowe ye this man?" / that one answered  
 anone & seide / "for sothe, *sir*, yea; and y sey for trouthe that he  
 28 is Le nounpareil that cuir y sawe or herde speke of. and god of his  
 grace long contynue hym, for by the name that renneth on hym  
 now he is vnarmed, we knowe hym; and by his dedes and prowesse  
 whan he was armed to-day, we iuged it shold be he also / and I wote  
 32 wele, whan our maister, Dauid of Scotland, shalt here that we haue  
 sene yn hym, he shall put hym yn grete payne to haue his  
 acqueyntaunce / for we knowe certaynly that the gretest desire that  
 he hath, is / to haue acqueyntaunce *with* Valiaunt folkes / and knowe  
 36 wele that his body, his power, and his goodes shalbe as redy this  
 gentilmanys, as his oune." Le Surnome thanked them alle shame-  
 fastly of the honour that they gaue hym / prayng god that the  
 hundreth part of this that they seide, might be yn hym / for he  
 40 knowe fult wele that this preise came of their goodnesse / for an ill

The King of  
Sicily praises  
the 2 Scotch  
Knights.

They praise  
Prince Philip,

who is intro-  
duced to  
them by the  
King.

They call  
him the  
Nonpareil.

He thanks  
them.

Prince Phillip  
lauds the 2  
Scotch  
Knights.

hert deyneth not to preyse anothir. "I sey this, for that this day, ye  
that were vnknownen, haue made to be knowyn yn eche of you, yn  
one houre / more than this is yn any. of this company; and for  
sothe y haue to day knowen you more be sight than any man yn 4  
this hoste / and the kynge that here is / ought to thanke god & you  
of his good auenture." Yf y shold reherce the wordes of honoure  
that were bitwene Le Surnome & them, y sholde haue to moche to  
do / but e[ue]richon to his power honoured his party. ¶ Afir this 8  
talkyng, the kynge made to condnyte the scottissh knyghtes to their  
loggyng, & commaundid them to be honourably serued, and wente  
him self to his counseilt to wite hou he shold do to the cristen  
Armee / & there were they longe debatyng this matier / And at last 12  
they were of acorde to sende notable folkes to Dauyd of Scotland,  
to the prynces & Barons of his company / desiryng them that they  
shold departe fro thens, & drawe to a-nothir porte, that was, Le  
toure de gretuz / and there esily & without any perile they might 16  
londe. albe-it that the port was som what more daungerous, yit were  
it not so grete auenture for them the londyng ther / and they  
thought, if the cristen Armee were 1 onys Londid, sone afir the  
turkes sholde haue more than y-nough to do. The knyghtes that 20  
sholde do this message, were ordeyned that night, whiche on the  
morowe by tymes entreprised the viage with right good will. The  
Scottissh knyghtes were sent for / and the kynge of Sizile seide  
vnto theym yn this wise / "my frendes, and right wise Valiaunt 24  
knyghtes! y haue herde the credence that by you was sent me fro  
my good cosyn, Dauyd of Scotland / and my good frendes, alle othir  
princes and lordes ther / yn the whiche ye haue right notably  
declared the mysery that they haue suffred for the honour of oure 28  
blissed creatore / and for the socours of this pore and desolat  
Reaume / whiche is to me right soroufult to here rehersid. and for  
to make myn excuse, y knewe verily by my folkes that y had sent  
to the iij. kynges, ther answee / and what tyme the Armee shold 32  
departe / but neuir sith, by them nor noon of them, had y neuir  
tidynges, by letteres nor othirwise / and for that ye knowe wele / the  
thynges chaunge often yn so hy matiers / y wist not what to thinke,  
for y supposed verily to be asseyntayned fro them of their comyng / 36  
which, and y had knowen it, had not be conduyte as it is now / but  
tho thinges that god wolt haue suffred, may not now be amendid /  
therefore remytte we alle thinge to the wylt of god / And to go to the  
conclusion of the surplus of this matier, to puruey the best that 40

The King of  
Sicily's  
Council ad-  
vise their  
Allies to land  
at Le toure  
de Gretuz.

[1 If. 38, bk.]

The King  
explains to  
the 2 Scotch  
Knights

that their  
Generals  
never told  
him that  
their Expe-  
dition had  
started.

may be doñ, y haue ordeyned iiij. knyghtes of my folkes, that  
knowe best the conduyte of thies marches / and they shal put them  
in deuoir to brynge you ayen to your maister / & declare vnto hym  
4 suche conelusions as y haue taken with my counsell / whiche to  
their power they shal helpe to execute / and shall not departe fro  
hym til he and y be to-gedre ; & so ye may puruay to departe whan  
it pleasith you / and they shaß be redy to accompanye you " / whan  
8 the scottish knyghtes had herd the kynge, they were right wele  
content of his Answere, and toke their leue of the kynge / whiche  
gaue eche of them a courser, and othir grete giftes ; and thus they  
departed / and iiij. knyghtes of Sizile with them, whiche conduyte  
12 them so wele, that they brought them to their maister ij. dayes  
bifore the terme that he had set to his seruantes. and at their  
comyng, it is no question if ther were ioie thorough all the company,  
for they wende neuir to haue sene the houre of their retourne. And  
16 after their comyng was knowen, <sup>1</sup>and that they had brought iiij. [1 leaf 39]  
knyghtes of Sizile with theym, the prees was grete a-boute theym /  
as wele of the frendes of thies ij. knyghtes, as othir that helde them  
half lost / & were right ioifull that they had accomplisshed their  
20 charge, to their grete honour. & eueri man desired to knowe of their  
tidynges ; but, as good & right wise knyghtes, they tolde nothings til  
they had spoken with their maister / and assone as they might,  
they went vnto hym, & lefte the knyghtes of Sizile accompanied  
24 with many a noble man / til tyme they knewe the pleasir of their  
maister / what tyme they shold bring the knyghtes of Sizile  
vnto hym.

And aftir their comyng vnto hym / there had they a lawde,  
28 honour & thanke that they so valiauntly had accomplisshd the charge  
he had geuyn them. than tolde they hym hou they had spedde, and  
that .iiij. knyghtes of Sizile were come with them to enforme hym  
of all the kynges entent / and to abide stille with hym til their  
32 londyng. Of thies tidynges was Dauid right glad, and alle they in  
his company / and anoon sende forth ayen thies .ij. knyghtes, with  
many othir notable men in their company, to fecche them of Sizile.  
And anoon they came ayen / and brought thies iiij. knyghtes with  
36 them, whiche fult humbly salued Dauid & alle the lordes of his  
company / yn recommendyng the kynge, their maister, to them, &  
to alle the noble chyualrie & company that was yn this armee / they  
were reseeyued right ioiffully of Dauyd, and of all the lordes that  
40 were present / they performed their charge, so as ye haue herde

4 Sicilian  
Knights  
guide the 2  
Scotch ones  
back

They are  
joyfully  
welcomd,

The Sicilian  
Knights  
are intro-  
duced to  
Prince David.

The Allies  
resolve to  
get ready  
next day,

[1 ff. 39, bk.]

and start for  
Sicily the  
day after.

The 2 Scotch  
Knights tell  
the French  
Constable  
and English  
Admiral  
all their  
adventures  
in Sicily,

and the  
nobleness  
of Prince  
Philip.

before, that the kynge gaue them at their departyng / & offred them  
self to the accomplishment therof / and to helpe to conduyte them  
without departyng fro them / til the kynge & they were mette with  
the grace of god / Aftir their credence herd / they were ledde to an 4  
othir faire vesseht, wele accompanied with knyghtes & squiers. and  
the counsell abode stille to-gedir, to take aduise vpon this message,  
what was to be done / and so they concludded. In-asmoche as the  
kynge of Sizile had sente thies knyghtes to conduyte them / that 8  
on the morowe alle the maisters shold be warnyde to aredye them  
forward, and on the next <sup>1</sup>day be-tymes to put them yn the garde  
& conduyte of thies knyghtes of Sizile that the kynge had sente  
them / Alas, fortune! whan a man weneth to be moost sure, than 12  
is he nere his daungere; for sone aftir this apointment and this  
grete ioie, there befelle suche infortune that it was grete Damage to  
aht cristendome, as ye shalt anoon here / this counseht, takyn, the  
knyghtes of Sizile were sent for / and tolde them the conclusion 16  
that was taken amonge the lordes / wherof they were wele content,  
and thought the conclusion good. than euery man departed, and  
brought the knyghtes of Sizile to their loggyng, and did them aht  
the honour and chere that men myght do yn suche cas. Daudid made 20  
his knyghtes that he had sente yn-to Sizile, to suppe with hym that  
nyght, to telle hym and the Constable of ffrance, & the Admyrah  
of Englonde of their tidynge, bothe of their departyng & of their  
demeanyng, and of aht the manere of the contre / than the two 24  
knyghtes tolde hem suche tidynge as they knewe, and of the olde  
woman / yn what wise she wolde a betraide theym / and hou they  
escope, and were reskowd by ffrerauntes brother / and hou he made  
them to be conduyte then in alle haste to the kynge of Sizile, 28  
whom they founde assantyng right a faire towne / & wanne it. than  
they tolde the noblesse of Surnome, and aht the honour they hadde  
herde of hym, and aht that they had sene hym do / & what honour  
he put them to bifore the kynge / and hou he was the moost 32  
amyable persone that euir they sawe, daies of their lif / and they  
wende that nature coude not, nor neur sholde, make no suche / And  
so moche they seide of hym, that alle the lordes that were there / and  
alle othir, had grete mervaille; and if the knyghtes that tolde it had 36  
not ben of their age the moost renommed of sadnesse & trouthe yn  
the cristen Armee / they coude not haue bileued them / for suche  
worthynes, bounte, & beaute, semyd them ympossible to be yn one  
persone. Also the knyghtes seide of the kynge of Sizile moche 40

honour / and tolde yn what maner he excused hym, wherof alle the  
lordes that were there thought them self coulpable, seyyng, "verily  
that they did ille, *pat* they had not sente one to hym bfore the  
4 departyng of the armee fro Scotland, for to haue had som of his  
folkes to be conduyte by. Nowe was alle thinge yn suche cas that  
it was past remedy" / wherfore they praied god that the remenaunt  
of their viage might be <sup>1</sup>bettir conduyte, and more to their honour  
8 and profite / Than tolde they hem that, "by the noblesse of Le  
Surname / the hardynesse of alle them of Sizile was redoubled / for  
where .vj. of the Turkes haue put to discomfiture .xx<sup>ti</sup>. Sezillions &  
moo / at this day it is the contrarie; for it faileth not, but vj.  
12 Sizillions are worth xx<sup>ti</sup> turkes / and they thynke verily / that, and  
they myght ones ioyn with the turkes, they sholde lightly wyne  
the our hand of them." The iiij. knyghtes of Sizile supp'd yn a  
nother vessell, rehersyng ther aft the wynnyng of the towne, and  
16 the manere of the ij. knyghtes / and howe they were knowen for  
their prowes; & reported grete honour of them / and seide vnto hem  
that accompanied them / "if alle ye be such as they .ij. are / I wote  
wele the turkes shalle not longe abide you." Of this tidynge were  
20 alle they ioifulle that herde hem, and coude the ij. knyghtes right  
grete thanke, that so wele aquytte them / and so did they to the  
knyghtes of Sizile / that so honorably reported them. Aftir soper,  
eueri man drew hym to his loggyng / for to be vp on the morow  
24 betymes, for to redye hem to departe the next day / thus eueri man  
went to his vessell. Nowe I pray god conduyte them / for this  
nyght toward the point of day befelt them a meruailous harde  
fortune, as ye shalle here folowynge.

28 **B**Etweue midnyght and the point of the day, grete wynde &  
tempest aros vpone the see, yn such wise that the shippes  
tombled as they shold alle to-breke; and at the point of the day the  
tempest was grettir than bfore / and the wawes came with such  
32 violence, that eueri wawe came in-to the shippes, and our them  
an C. galons of water at ones / oure goode cristen men, seyng  
this huge tempest, felt on their knees with their handes ioyned  
toward the heuen / bisechyng god of mercy, reheryng vnto hym /  
36 that they were departed out of their contre & possessions to do  
hym <sup>2</sup>seruice, & had also forsaken fadir & modir, wif & childe,  
only for his seruice, bisechyng hym to geue hem that grace / that  
they might wele retourne ayen yn-to their contrees. At that tyme  
40 was the noise so grete a-monge the Nauuee, that the Soudan & alle his

The Allies  
confess that  
they ought  
to have  
warded the  
King of  
Sicily of  
their coming.

[1 leaf 40]

The 4 Sicilian  
Knights  
praise the  
2 Scotch  
Knights.

A tremend-  
ous tempest  
rises.

The Allied  
fleet pray  
God for  
mercy.

[2 lf. 40, bk.]

The hideous  
tempest  
makes the  
Allied Fleet  
cut their  
cables.

Some ships  
dash to-  
gether.

Earl Douglas  
laments the  
danger.

The Prince's  
ship runs  
ashore, and  
breaks up.

[2 leaf 41]

Prince David  
gets to land,  
and is attackt  
by Turks.

company were full ioifult / for they might wele here them / and a  
myle beyonde that he was. It is to thinke, that of this grete and  
hidious tempest they were gretely reioised / trustyng it sholde do  
grete hurt to the cristen armee / and so it did / for this tempest 4  
contynued til the sonne risyng / and brought them to suche necessite  
that they cutte their cables & drew vp their sailes, and put them  
alle in the auenture of god / many shippes were dryuen forth with  
the wynde / some caste hider and thider with the wa[w]es / that had 8  
neither saile ne maste / nor noman so hardy that durst conduyte  
the steerne; som of the shippes russet to-gedir, that they alle to-  
brake; & some drawe forth, waityng but dethe. The Erle douglas,  
that was in Dauid vesselt, made the moost pitous compleyntes that 12  
any man might make; for he sawe wele by the shippes that  
perissshed & drowned afore hym / and also by othir that he sawe  
dryue forth with the wynde, som without either saile or maste /  
that all was yn auenture to be drowned / than seide he thus / that 16  
alle might here that were aboute hym / "A! ffortune male-curus / I  
thought me highly honoured to haue in my conduyte the eldest  
sone of my souerayn lorde, yn so grete a seruice as the seruice of  
god / nowe se I wele, that to god pleasith neither his seruice nor 20  
myn / but rather we must dye / and ende oure lyues wrecchidly /  
and of þat dethe þat yn this world y moost dredde. A! my  
creatour! I pray the resceyue the sowles of my maister and of vs  
alle yn this company, yn-to thy glorie / and knowe wele, that for the<sup>1</sup> 24  
we are in this cas, and for doying vnto the, seruice / we are come to  
oure dethe" / Such wordes and compleintes made the Erle Douglas,  
that was a full wise and a worthy knyght / and yit was that vessel  
stille at ancre, and so was noon of the company but they / they 28  
thought with euery wawe the vesselt shold all to-breke / "& than,"  
seide the maryners, "it behoueth to put vs in the auenture of god."  
the yonge Dauyd, seyng this dolorous fortune, was agreable to cutte  
the cables / and anone as they were cutte, the vesselt smote a londe 32  
streight before the Soudan / and brake all on peces / and so ther  
escope noon, but alle were drowned saue Dauyd and Erle douglas,  
and vj. othir persones, that with helpe of boordes droof<sup>2</sup> to Londe,  
whiche was ther ny / then had the Turké of his cruelte com- 36  
maundid, that if any of fortune came a-lyue to londe / that they  
sholde sle them without raunsome / and whane his people sawe this  
yonge Dauyd, they came to sle hym / and that, sawe the Erle

<sup>1</sup> the = thi

- Douglas, and sterte bifore hym / to diffende hym / but his helpe  
auailed not / for anon he was slayne at his maisters fete / and so  
were alle they that came with hym / saue hym self / and he, seying  
4 hym in this daunger, withdrew he hym, and set his bakke ayenst a  
litle rokke was ther / trustyng to diffende his lif / and that it shold  
be dere boughte to som of them that wolde sle hym / & than he  
thought his dethe sholde be the more easy / and that eueri noble  
8 man of honour wolde haue the more pyte of his dethe / so put he  
hym vtirly yn the handes of god / and leyde so aboute hym that  
noman durst approche hym / for he slewe of them many. The  
Soudan, that saw the armes that he did / yn his hert had grete  
12 despite / and spake a-lowde / "what! shaft o. cristen man discom-  
fort this armee / if there were any noble man amonges you, he shold  
endure but litle while" / he had a sone of the age of xx<sup>ti</sup> or .xxiiiij<sup>ti</sup>  
yere, that behelde aft this, & had grete pite of this yonge lorde of  
16 Scotland, that so manly diffendid hym / and meued with suche  
pite / ayenst the wylt of his fadir, he went to hym, brekyng the  
prees / & made eueri man to withdrawe fro hym / and sithe seide  
vnto hym / "my frende, thou seest clerely that thy strength may  
20 not auaille the / & that thou stryuest and feightist without reason /  
but yelde the to me with thy fre wille / and I shalt brynge the to  
the Soudan, and pray hym for the." whan pore Dauid herd thies  
wordes, he was not of a grete while so glad as aftir the auenture  
24 that god had sent hym / for he knewe wele that he had spake to  
hym / was a lorde of grete estate / bothe by his aray / and by the  
obeisaunce that alle men did vnto hym / and thus he answerd hym,  
"My Lorde, ye se yn what cas y am / if I feight in diffendyng my  
28 lif, noman blame me, for I haue sene your folkes take litle pite oñ  
any of vs / alas! what may vj. pore persones do ayenst alle your  
company, whiche were fallen yn your mercy / & humbly asked  
your grace & mercy / and, sauf I. allone, they are alle slayne / many  
32 folkes shalle calle this rather rigour & tiranny than any honour /  
but of the offre that ye haue made me, right humbly, my lorde, I  
thanke you / and I. yelde me to you / here is my swerde" / whiche  
he delyuered hym / & seide, "In you is my lif and dethe, whiche,  
36 had not be the trust of youre assuraunce, y wolde a done my  
payne a litle lenger to diffende / so demeane ye me as it pleasith  
you." And this yonge sone of the Soudone, named Orcays, assured  
hym on his feith. and aftir that, was noon so hardy that durst  
40 approche hym / thus was yonge Dauyd takyn / & brought by

Prince David  
defends him-  
self,

and kills  
many Turks.

The Sultan's  
son, Prince  
Orcays, pities  
Prince David,

who gives up  
his sword to  
him.

[1 lf. 41, bk.]

The Sultan  
wants to  
kill Prince  
David;

but his son  
Orcays tells  
his Father

that he will  
die with  
David,

who yet says  
he is ready to  
die joyfully.

He prays God  
to receive his  
soul.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 42]

The Sultan  
orders Prince  
David to be  
kept prisoner.

Orcays bfore his fader / whiche made hym take of his helme / and sawe hym, of visage and body, of right excellent beaute / and saide to his sone, "ye wol nedely take this man prisoner / but it is bettir lete hym dye than lyue, without he wol bileue as we do / for he is 4 meruailously shapen to do armes, as ye haue sene hym proued by experience / and if ye be so content / me thinketh best / that men delyuer the worlde of hym lightly" / this yonge Orcays, heryng his fadir, was yn grete sorow and displeasir / & thought yn him self 8 that he shold sle hym also with his prisoner / and seide vnto his fader. "My Lord, the first prisoner that euer was taken with my handes y haue brought bfore you; the payne that y had yn takyng hym was not grete / without any stroke he put his trust yn me / 12 where nomañ durst come ny hym / & leue not / that yn one man be the power to destroie this company / wherfore ye nede not to haue no drede of hym / but ye may do with hym & me your pleasir / for y thinke not he shaß die without me / seyng the feith that I haue 16 promysed hym; and if any othir than ye lay hand on hym, he may be sure to repente it, for y shaß diffende hym to my power while y haue any lif" / and thies wordes seide Orcays so vigorously, that his visage wex al rede. All this vndirstode wele, this yonge Dauyd, 20 with visage assured / as he that abode the dethe / without haunyng any regarde to his lif, seide to the Soudan yn this wise / "Sir, y holde me wele ewred of the wordes I haue herde you sey of me / & be ye assured, yf y die, y shaß die with ioie to thynke for whos sake 24 it is / for of my lif y rekke fuß litle / if it please my creatour, y haue lyued y-nough / sith this day y haue sene so many a notable man die befor me / and y haue no wiß to leue their company / for y am wele assertayned that be this houre their dethe is to them right 28 ioifult / I am yolden to this lorde bfore you vpone his feith / y wote not who he is / but forthwith y aquyte hym therof, & pardone hym and you also my dethe / prayng to our lorde, at my dethe to resceyue my soule." The Soudan, heryng his sone speke, seyng 32 hym vtirly wroth, had pite of him / and aß-be-it he was <sup>1</sup>right hard / yn corage ayenst alle cristen / yet had he pite also of Dauyd / that so hardly spake, & with so stable manere, abidyng dethe with suche corage / that to beholde, he was aß recomforted / and so he 36 answerd his sone, not geuyng hym no surete of his prisoners lif / bade him lede his prisoner where he wolde, so he were kepte sure / "and y shaß take aduise here-on / and shaß speke with you / and y doute not, aftir ye haue herde me, ye shaß be content of that / that 40



I wold do" / Thus this Orcays sent forth his prisoner; but for drede  
 that men sholde do hym any hurte, he kepte hym all that nyght yn  
 his chambre, without departyng fro hym, for he knewe the cruelte  
 4 of his fadir such that, & he might gete him at large / he wolde  
 make hym to be slayne / and thenne wolde he laugh ther-ate / as  
 though a had made kyl a dog / or som othir vnthrifty beste / and  
 for thies doutes kepte he contynuelly his prisoner with hym / and  
 8 as a bridle is assottid on hir make / so was Orcays of Dauyd.  
 ¶ After this grete tempest was thus befallen vnto the cristen  
 Navee / ye may thinke welle / that the vessells helde not all one  
 way / for som arryued by infortune amonges the sarasynes / wherof  
 12 som were kepte as prisoners / and some were put to pore occupa-  
 cions, as to kepe shepe & bestes / for they solde the cristene men as  
 they wolde selle catelle / and they that had bought theym, bete  
 theym euery day like dogges, and they did not wele that / that they  
 16 had yn charge / the tothir vesselles to whiche god wold extende his  
 grace / aryued / som yn ffrance, som yn Englund / som in Scot-  
 land / many aryued yn othir cristen reaumes / wherby the sorow-  
 fulle tidynges were sone spredde thorough-out alle cristendome / and  
 20 sone came to the knowlage of the kynges of ffrance, of Englund  
 and of Scottes / that were hugely sorowfulle of that ynfortune / and  
 oche of theym made grete enquerre after their frendes & seruantes /  
 but noon ther was that coude assertayne theym what folkes were  
 24 saued or loste / euery man trusted his frende were sauf, their hertes  
 desired it so moche. The kynge of ffrance vndirstode verily that  
 the moost parte of his folkes shold retourne / so did the kynge of  
 Englund and the kynge of Scottes / that euery day herkened for  
 28 tidynges of his sone, pat he loued asmoche as any fadir might do  
 his childe / and trusted moche yn the wisdam and conduyte of the  
 goode Erle Douglas / that had the gouernaunce aboute hym / A  
 grete while thought he that he herde no tidynges of them .ij., for  
 32 there were come many othir / & of the reaume of Scotland were  
 not loste past .vj. shippes / the Erle Bussaunt was sauf, & many  
 othir notable men of Scotland / the grete losse was in Dauyd  
 vessell, for it is to thinke that yn his vessell was many a notable  
 36 man. Of Englund came ageyn many / bothe the Admyrall / and  
 the moost parte of the noble men that went forth, but som were  
 loste. Of the reaume of ffrance came ageyn many / but the goode  
 Constable abode / men wist not whedir he was drowned or takyne.  
 40 ffor final conclusioun, euery man of this thre reaumes trusted wele

The Turkish  
 Prince  
 Orcays is  
 captiued  
 with Prince  
 David the  
 Christian.

Some Chris-  
 tians are  
 sold like  
 chattels and  
 treated like  
 dogs by the  
 Turks.

The Kings  
 of France,  
 Englund, and  
 Scotland  
 grieve over  
 the losses of  
 their Expe-  
 dition.

[1 ff. 42, bk.]

that their frendes were sauf. Aftir the retourne of hem that were come ageyne, y can thinke the iiij<sup>th</sup> parte of this arme was myssed, of such as were takyn, & suche as were drowned / tho that the kynge of Sizile had sent to Dauyd were saued / as for the two 4 knyghtes that had been *with* the kyng in message / y wote ner whethir they were saued or not / for y fynde no more of theym.

The King of Sicily reproaches himself as partly the cause of his Allies' loss.

**Y**E shalle retourne to the kynge of Sizile, that fulle sone was assertayned of this ynfortune, wherof he was so sorowfull 8 that noman might recomfort hym / and iuged him self yn party the cause of this auenture; &, as a man enraged *with* sorowe, cursed the houre of his birthe / & wisshed hym ded / sith thorough his defeaute & negligence, so many notable prynces & lordes were 12 perissshed and dede of so lamentable a dethe / and seide / "y wote wele / and y had aquytte me to them as y shold / they had bene a londe / & noon of all this ynfortune had happed; but wele y wote, the turkes shold sone a be destroyed / and this londe set yn a perfit 16 reste / But now sheweth wele god / that y am not to hym agreable / and that I haue done some synne that displeasith hym" / ye may thinke that yif the kynge of Sizile had such wordes / that eche of the iij. kynges, [of] ffrance, Englund, & of Scotland were of 20 semblable condicioun, thynkynge yn hem self / that the seruise that they did to god was not to him agreable / for by their owne corage they knewe wele they had done this seruise more for veynglory, and to haue a renome, than for the loue of god / and therfore they 24 thought the iugement of god, and his stroke, resonable / thus their owne conscience iuged. The kyng of Scottes compleyned hym / "Alas! y haue sent my sone, for that the kynges of ffrance & of Englund put it on me / & for myn honoure y durst not refuse it / 28 and yf y had not dred shame, he had ben yit stille *with* <sup>1</sup>me / at his departyng y had suche sorowe that noman might comforte me / and for thies thinges, y wote wele y haue displeasid god / and haue not done as did Abraham by Isaac his sone / y offred not seruise to 32 god of my childe / but y offred to the worlde, & for drede to haue had shame / god that is iuste / and that knoweth the condicions of man and their thought, hath refused this seruise, as he did the sacrifice that Caym did / and he hath good right / but myn owne 36 sone, that with my trespas might no thyng do / wente *with* so grete corage & desire, that me semeth / god ought to haue pite on hym. As for my self, I crye god mercy / & besече hym to haue pite on my childe / where-som-euir he be" / and thus yn secrete 40

The Three Kings think this

judgment of God deserved.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 43]

The King of Scots says that God has refused the service of the Allies.

place the pore kynge of Scottes made his compleinte, wepyng alwey  
 & prayng to oure lord for his sone / The kyng of Englonde, on his  
 party, remembred also / how longe he had taried to sende socour to  
 4 the kynge of Sizile / and yit had noon sende hym, if he might by  
 any meanes a left of / and so he sende more for drede of shame  
 than for the loue of god / and yit he felte himself farther culpable,  
 for asmoche as he had leide the charge to the kynge of Scottes to  
 8 sende forth his sone / whiche was so goodly a yong man / and now  
 is lost thorough his counsell / and yit he did it to thentent but to  
 cause the armee to breke / and for this / he thought wele god was  
 displeased with hym / and of right hath refused his seruise. The  
 12 kynge of fraunce had sent his armee yn the company of Dauyd / and the King  
 alle to a nothir entente than the .ij. kynges did / for he dred, if he  
 sent hem not forth, that god wolde be displeased with hym / for at  
 such tymes as his sone had often meued hym with the same, & he  
 16 wold not enelyne to his request, god suffrid him to lese his sone /  
 whereof he toke suche sorowe that he neuir recouered to that he  
 was a-fore / and therfore lest god wolde take vengeaunce on hym,  
 & aftir his dethe vpon his reame, that was fulle like to be lefte  
 20 withoute heire / he did to god his seruise / wherfore he knewe wele  
 yn hym self / that he had done this seruise to god, more fore drede  
 than for loue / and therfore he thought that god was not pleased.  
 Thus thies .iiij. kynges that ye haue herde of, eche of theym leide  
 24 grete charge to them self of the sorowfuH auenture. But ouir alle  
 othir, the kynge of Scottes made grete sorowe, and alle his reame,  
 for yonge Dauyd; and so did alle the .iiij. reames / for the grete  
 vertues yn hym, eueri man perfily loued hym / and thought it was  
 28 to importable a losse. Thies <sup>1</sup>thre reames aforeseide / were yn <sup>[1 lf. 43, bk.]</sup>  
 compleyntes & wepyng, & in especiaH for their frendes, that were  
 not retourned ayen yn-to their contrees / neuirtheles, eueri man  
 trusted that they were aryued in some othir lande / or takyn  
 32 prisoners / and that they shold here tidynges of them / and many  
 contynued yn this hope duryng their lyues, & in especiaH women,  
 suche as myssed their husbondes, that neuir sawe theym aftir / and  
 some ther were / that in litle while were recomforted with the  
 36 retourne of their frendes / the fortune of this world is not like to  
 euery body / But nowe y shaH leue of this sorowe, that was made  
 thorough all thies reames / & retourne to the kyng of Sizile, that,  
 aftir the destruccion of the cristen armee, was discomforted out of  
 40 mesure / neuirles, he perceyued, as a wise Prynce, that no discomfort

The King of  
England

and the King  
of France  
reproach  
themselves  
as to the  
Sicilian Ex-  
pedition.

But the King  
of Scotland  
grieves most  
for the loss  
of his son.

The King of  
Sicily

tells his  
Council

that his  
father, the  
King of  
Spain, won't  
help them;

but they must  
take heart.

He will give  
his all for his  
folk.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 44]

They say the  
Sultan will  
attack them  
at once.

might remedy hym / wherupone he shewed his wisdom, and put aH  
his trust yn god / and assembled his grete counsell, seying vnto  
them in this wise. ¶ “My frendes, eche of you is assertayned  
of this pitous auenture that is befallen vnto oure socours / yn the 4  
which were so many princes and Lordes, that came to vs from iij.  
reaumes / <sup>but</sup> most might helpe vs / and it is to suppose that of  
them we gete no more helpe / and y holde this company, or the  
most part therof, loste, whiche kan not be without grete hurte, 8  
losse, & sorowe to the iij. kynges and reaumes / and therfore it  
behoueth vs to take hede to oure self / I haue often sent vnto my  
fadir, the kynge of Spayne, and we can haue no socour; thens this  
reaume is yn grete auenture, but god of his grete mercy helpe / and 12  
sith it is so / we haue the more nede diligently to beholde what is  
to do / than euir we had / for oure hope of othir nowe is failed vs /  
lete vs do oure self what we may / for othir comfort may we not  
abide / My frendes, I pray eche of you to take good corage / & be 16  
content to obeie and abide the wille of oure lorde / & to take suche  
part yn pacience, as he wol sende / and y sey for me, that haue  
more to lese than any of you / y shalt comfort me yn god, and yn  
the helpe of you, my trewe frendes / and yn your good counsell, 20  
whiche y wol vse, and be redy to auenture my body, my lif, & my  
good amonges you, requiryng you alle, & eche of you, to yeue me  
counsell, comfort and helpe / & to aise shortly what y haue to do.”  
Thus the kynge of Sizile spake to his folkes, with teres trikelýng 24  
downe on his visage, whiche caused alle them that herde hym to  
haue grete <sup>1</sup>pite and wille to helpe to diffende his reaume. And  
they Aunswerde hym: “sir, to holde longe counsell is not profit-  
able, for it behoueth you shortly to conclude; for ye may thinke 28  
wele that the Soudan is enhaunced yn suche pride by the destruc-  
cion of thies cristene folkes, that hym thinketh the sonne and  
the sterres shold honoure hym / and that no thinge sholde holde  
party ayenst hym / wherfore it is to suppose that he wol come yn 32 •  
aH haste vpone you / ye be not of might to abide hym, seying their  
corage is redoubled / & your folkes be amated and alle yn discomfort  
for this pitous auenture / wherfore y kan not thinke be no meanes  
how ye may abide hym / but me semeth it is best to take aise of 36  
suche as pleaseth you / & that the matier be shortly concluded, for  
the cas requireth it.” The kynge perceyued that the knightes seide  
trouthe, & asked ferther this knyght was the first that spake, &  
answerd without taryng, for him semed that it was tyme, and 40

seide yn this manere / "sir, the cause y presume to speke, is, for the  
 matier requireth such haste; neuirtheles, lete eueri man sey, in  
 discharging of his honour & trouthe / the best auisse that he can /  
 4 but me semeth / if the thurke knowe you here / he wol come to  
 besego you; and withoute any faile, if he haue good counsell, he  
 wol do so / & if he so do / & ye abide him, ye haue no vitaille for  
 your arnee, wherfore ye may not longe holde party ayenst hym /  
 8 & as for feightyng / y haue seide myn aduise / seyng his folkes so  
 moche yn comfort, & youres yn dispeire / But me thinketh that yn  
 this towne, that is right stronge & wele furnysshed with orden-  
 aunce, ye may leue a ij. M<sup>t</sup> of good men / and a good Captayne, or  
 12 ij. of the moost notable of your armee / And your self, to-night or to  
 morowe at the point of the day, to departe to Napolis, where-as the  
 quene is, with alle the remenaunt of your company / whiche hath at  
 this houre, y dare sey, right grete sorowe yn hir herte; and if the  
 16 turke came bifore hir, she is yit right feibly acompayned. and yf  
 ye go thider, ye may so wele p<sup>u</sup>ruay you, & so wele furnyss<sup>h</sup> the  
 towne with men, ordenaunce & vitaille, that if the turke come  
 bifore you he sha<sup>h</sup> more lose than wyne / for the lenger he lith  
 20 ther / the more shal he spende of his good and lese of his men, &  
 sha<sup>h</sup> haue asmoche of youres at his goyng / as he had the first day  
 he came. And nowe lete vs nomore trust on rescue / but put oure  
 only truste yn god / and y trust he sha<sup>h</sup> helpe <sup>1 vs bettir than we</sup> [1 ff. 44, bk.]  
 24 can thinke / a[n]d therefore lete not oure hertis faile vs for noon  
 y[n]-fortune that is fallen yit / for he may socour vs whan it pleasit  
 hym" / The knyght that spake thies wordes, was fferaunt the  
 Senessha<sup>h</sup>, that gladly was herkenyd of alle folkes / & gaue grete  
 28 corage to eche of theym / Aftir thies wordes, the kyng askid alle the  
 remenaunt of lordes, knyghtes and squyers, of their aduise; and yn  
 conclusioun they were of the opinion of fferaunt / & praised gretly  
 his wit & counsell / seiying that it was tyme nowe to leue of alle  
 32 sorowe & lamentacion for any fortune that was befaller / & to put  
 alle thyng yn foryetyng / sauf only to pray god for the soules of  
 suche as haue lost their lyues yn thies viage, and eueri man to calle  
 vnto hym a desirous corage & good wille to auisse to the defence &  
 36 kepyng of the reaume. And they in alle poyntes concluded &  
 folowed the opinion of fferaunt / The kyng, heryng thies wordes,  
 was right gretely recomforted & reioised of the corage that his  
 owne suggestes yaue hym / and ordeyned fferaunt to abide yn this  
 40 place accompanied with ij. M<sup>t</sup> men, suche as he wolde chese / and

Ferant ad-  
 vises the  
 King to leave  
 2000 men in  
 Size, and go  
 himself to  
 Naples.

The rest of  
 the Council  
 agree.

So Ferant  
is made Cap-  
tain,

chooses 2000  
men (with  
Prince Phi-  
lip),

and places his  
artillery.

The King  
starts for  
Naples.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 45]

The Sultan  
is fild with  
pride,

and boasts of  
the favour of  
his Gods.

made hym Capteyn of them alle. fferaunt refused not, but rathir /  
with good herte & noble corage, right gladly toke on hym the  
abidyng & garde of that place / and right lightly chase oute the  
nombre of ij. M<sup>t</sup>; and eeche of theym bode with hym with right 4  
good wilt / for the grete wisdam & noble pat was yn hym / whan  
Le Surnome knewe that his maister abode, ther was no thinge  
coude make hym so glad / for he thought wele to se this towne  
biseged / whiche he had neuir sene to-fore, trustyng euery day to 8  
do armes, whiche was the thyng he moost desired / and thought  
hym self wele fortuneted to be yn seruyse with suche a maister as  
fferaunt was. thus aH the nyght fferaunt leide & establisshed his  
ordenaunce yn the moost propre places / wher-of he was right wele 12  
puruaide / And at the pointe of day came to the kynge, that than  
was at masse, and redy to departe / & so he toke his leue of hym  
and of alle his company, certifying hym that he shold kepe that  
place to his power / and not departe therfro but acordyng to his 16  
trouthe & his pore honour / Aftir masse, the kynge toke his leue to  
departe, of fferaunt and alle his company, prayng them full hertly  
that eeche of them wold payne hym to do wele, and to obeie fferaunt  
their Capteyne / whiche he had lefte ther as his <sup>1</sup>lieutenaunt, pro- 20  
mysyng hem alle that, in obeyng fferaunt, he wolde con hem  
asmoche thanke, or more, than if it were to his owne persone. Thus  
departed he fro them / takyng the <sup>2</sup>wey streight to the place where  
as the quene was, & his doughter / and aH this while he was in 24  
grete thought & drede; neuirtheles he comforted hym in aHnighti  
god, in whom was aH his truste. fferaunt abode stille in the place /  
and be than the sonne was vp, he had delyuered euery man his  
charge, suche as he thought them moost meete vnto / ¶ Now shalle 28  
we retourne to the turke, that was on the see side, in suche pride  
that almoost noman durst approche hym, & wende wele to be  
kynge of aH the worlde / and that his renome sholde sprede ferthir  
than euir did Alisaundres. The night aftir the perdicion of the 32  
cristen Navee, he made him to be serued more rially than euir he  
was bifore / and aH that day abode yn his loggyng, for the fortune  
endured til it was nere noone / so aftir soper he sent for his folkes,  
to take a conclusion of his departyng, & seide vnto them: "Sires, 36  
ye se wele the grace and myracle that oure goddes haue shewed for  
vs this day / ye haue sene that, in turnyng of an hande / the grete  
pride of the cristen is ouirthrowen / and ye may wele thinke that

<sup>2</sup> MS. they.

- the kynge of Sizile and alle his folkes shalle now lese corage, know-  
 yng the myracles of oure goddes; and their hardynesse shall falle &  
 mynyssh / and contrary therto, I trust oures shall encrease / for we  
 4 may clerey se that oure goddes wolke helpe vs / & we may be called  
 of slak corage, & vnhappy / if we wyne not yn short tyme the  
 remanaunt of this reaume, that is full ny aH oures. And it be-  
 houeth vs to put payne to the rescuse of my brother, the kynge of  
 8 Peerce / that y suppose haue grete sorowe yn his herte, that he was  
 not here this day / to se the miracle that oure goddes haue shewed  
 for vs / wherfore lete vs put our deuoir to accomplishe the reme-  
 naunt that oure goddes haue so wele begonne" / and eueri man  
 12 concludid that it was tyme now to put hem in deuoir, and alle  
 accorded yn one, that the Turke, with aH his grete might, shold  
 ley sege to the towne of Siz / that was wonne but late by his  
 enemyss / and he sholde wyne it as lightly ayen / & they thought  
 16 wele that there was noon that durst abide the auenture ther,  
 without the kynge were there him self; and if he were there, they  
 wold trust sone to haue hym / to this conclusion helde they,  
 1 trustyng that yn that place, nor yn noon othir, shold they fynde [1 lf. 45, bk.]  
 20 noon that might endure ayenst hem / for they thought alle their  
 enemyss were discouraged / and they auised the turke to abide ther  
 ij. or iij. daies, to thentent that he & alle his folkes might departe  
 at their ease and leiser / whiche turned hem rather to hurte than  
 24 auantage / for their abidyng was to fferant & his folkes grete  
 available / for yn that tyme thei fortified their towne bigger than  
 euir it was / for there was neither knyght ne squier but labored  
 right diligently ther-yn / who had sene the labour that Surnome  
 28 toke / and knowyng what he was, wold a merueled / for like as he  
 past them alle yn armes / paste he them alle in labour / and that he  
 did it with so good wille that alle men had ioie to beholde hym /  
 Thus in litle while they were so wele fortified & assured, that they  
 32 thought right longe of the Turkes comyng. [Illumin.: knights, poor men.]
- N**OW came the day that the turke had apointed to departe.  
 ye knowe wele that it is a grete daies iourney to departe  
 with suche a company / he went that day but a leege and a  
 36 half fro thens as he lay / and sent some of his fore-riders to her-  
 kene tidynges of the kynge of Sizile & his company / and they toke  
 some of the pore folkes fulle ny the garison of fferant / by whom  
 they knewe for certayne that the kynge of Sizile was departed, and  
 40 had lefte a grete garisone yn the place that he had wonne; & they

The Sultan  
says they  
must rescue  
his brother,  
the King of  
Persia,

and besiege  
Siz.

The Turks  
dawdle for 2  
or 3 days,

while Ferant  
strengthens  
Siz.

The Turks  
hear that the  
King of Sicily  
has gone,

and that the  
Sicilians are  
confident.

[1 leaf 46]

Prince Or-  
cays asks  
Prince David  
who he is,  
and wants  
him to turn  
Mahomedan.

David re-  
fuses;

and says  
he's a poor  
gentleman  
named Athys.

purposed to kepe it, & defende it ayenst the Turke & his power /  
and they tolde hem also / that as for the mysfortune of the cristen  
men þat were drowned yn the see / the hardynes & wille of the  
Sizillions was no thyng mynysshed, but rather encreased, for they 4  
sawe wele they had noon othir comfort but god, and with his  
helpe they purposed to defende them self and their goodes to their  
power / his knyghtes retourned ayen þat night yn-to the turkes  
hoste, where they reported as they had herde & founde, & brought 8  
the pore folkes that they had takyn, by-fore the turke / that herde  
hem speke, and fonde yn them the same that his foreriders tolde  
hym; wherfore he purposed on the morowe to be loggid but a litle  
leege from the place that he purposed to ley sege to. That night 12  
Orcays felle in questionyng with his prisoner, & askid him his name,  
& of what blode he was descendid / and what he purposed to do /  
shewyng hym that by reason he ought to turne to their feithe,  
seyng the gre[te] miracles that their goddes had shewed / with many 16  
moo wordes / whiche were to longe to reheerce / but in conclusion he  
seide vnto hym / that pouerte shold not lette hym to be of their  
creaunce / for if it were his pleasir to be so / he shold be most yn  
fauour aboute hym of alle othir. Dauid answerd hym / and of his 20  
grete bounte right humbly thanked hym / and if his wille were to  
turne to othir creaunce than his predecessours had alwey holden,  
the grete loue & honour of hym that hath saued his lif / shold  
rather make hym to enclyne ther-to, than any othir thinge / but he 24  
was determyned yn his feithe to dye / for to suffre as grete martir-  
dome as was possible any man to endure / wherfore he bisought  
him to speke no more ther-of, for it sholde be in veyn / but humbly  
beseching him from thensforth to helpe hym / for yn his contre he 28  
was a gentilman / but at this houre he trowed there lyued not a  
porer nor a more redeles / and as for his name, it was Athys / and  
trustid that his fadir & moder were lyuyng, which were of full litle  
power to helpe hym, or to bryng hym oute of thies daungers. whan 32  
Orcays herd hym thus sey, he had grete pite of hym / & askid him  
if he had any maister / or whedir his maister were dede / Athys  
answerd hym / "the same to whom y obeied, was slayne euyn at  
my fete there as y landid / wherof grete sorowe befelle me, & me 36  
thought it grete cruelte / for he wold a yelde him to the Soudone /  
that, affir his takyng, might a done with him what he wolde / as ye  
may do with me whan it pleasith you / that of your grete bounte  
haue saued me vnto this tyme." Orcays was right sorowfull that 40



- he might not turne his prisonere to his beleue / and sawe wele that  
 their company might not longe contynue, whiche greued hym right  
 sore / for moche he loued hym, for that he <sup>1</sup>sawe hym bothe amy- [<sup>1</sup> If. 46, bk.]  
 4 able, wise, and worthi / and bithought hym self hou he might saue  
 hym / for he knewe wele / that with them might he not abide  
 without holdyng their lawe / or ellis dye / and he knewe wele that  
 his fader desired gretely his dethe / & so he remembred hym of a <sup>Prince Or-</sup>  
 8 good costom that was amonges them, whiche was alwey kepte <sup>cays recol-</sup>  
 amonges notable princes, and by that he was verily asseyntayned to <sup>lects the</sup>  
 saue his prisoners lif / The costom was this / than whan the sone <sup>custom that,</sup>  
 of a kynge or of a grete prynce had taken a prisoner, and the first <sup>when a prince</sup>  
 12 that euir he toke yn his lif, what-som-euir he were worth / if he <sup>takes his first</sup>  
 were not the chiefteyne of the warres / he shold horse hym & <sup>prisoner,</sup>  
 harneyse hym honorably, and geue hym a C. scutes / and make <sup>he may equip</sup>  
 him to be surely conduyte vnto his parties / & thus thought he to <sup>him and set</sup>  
 16 do by his prisoner / for he knewe wele his fadir might not lette hym <sup>him free.</sup>  
 ther-of / for, and he did it, shold be to hym an ouir grete reproche /  
 In this thought went he to his fadir, and seide vnto hym / "My <sup>So he asks</sup>  
 lorde, ye knowe wel that by the pite y had of a cristen gentilman <sup>his father,</sup>  
 20 the tothir day, at the fortune that befelle them, y toke hym with <sup>the Sultan,</sup>  
 my handes prisoner / and saued his lif / wherof ye wolde a done me  
 grete wronge / yf ye had put him to dethe, contrary to my promys &  
 assuraunce / whiche had be to grete a shame, if my first feith that  
 24 euir y yaue yn armes, sholde a be so shamefulli broke / wherfore if  
 y<sup>2</sup> were soroufuH & somewhat greued yn my mynde, ye ought to  
 take no displeasir / for y knowe wele what the costom ys of alle  
 reaumes here a-boute / & also of your self and of your predecessours /  
 28 that whan they haue ben in suche cas, they haue delyuered hir first  
 prisoners / & y am remembred for certayne that ye haue done the  
 same yn your tyme / and y trust verrily that ye wilt in no thing  
 amenysshe me / & that ye haue noon othir entent / but that y may  
 32 & shalt do / as they of the lyne fro whens y came haue done bifore  
 me / that is, to geue leue to my prisoner / and to araie hym as y <sup>to let him</sup>  
 ought / with this / to make hym to be surely conduyte vnto the <sup>free his</sup>  
 cristen folkes; and hereof humbly y beseche you /" The Turke, <sup>prisoner,</sup>  
 36 herynge his sone speke yn suche wise, coude hym yn his herte full <sup>Prince Da-</sup>  
 grete thanke / & knewe wele that, by reason & honour, his request <sup>vid.</sup>  
 might not be denyed / albe-it that of this delyueraunce his hert yaue  
 hym right ille, for-asmoche as he had sene hym do so moche yn

The Sultan  
agrees.  
[<sup>1</sup> leaf 47]

Prince Or-  
cays tells  
Prince Da-  
vid, and asks  
him where  
he'll go.

David says,  
to Siz,

and its com-  
mander,  
Ferant.

So Prince Or-  
cays equips  
David,

[<sup>2</sup> If. 47, bk.]

and tells the  
Sultan all  
about it.

armes. Neuir<sup>4</sup>theles he agreed to the request of his sone / and  
bade hym yet assay to conuerte the cristen man vnto their lawe.  
His sone saide / *pat* so he had done / but in no wise he wold be  
agreable therto. Thus departed he from his fadir / & wente to his 4  
prisoner, and tolde him alle howe he had downe *with* his fadir / and  
that a conclusion was takyn that he shold departe on the morowe,  
wherfore he wold wite whider he wolde go / either to the kynge of  
Sizile or elliswhere / for whider that euir he wolde / he wolde 8  
*puruay* him to be surely conduyte / and tolde hym that on the  
morowe they alle sholde departe to ley sege to a cristen place, that  
but litle bifore was conquered on his fadir / and tolde him hou it  
was not stronge, wherfore it might no while be kepte ayenst hem. 12  
when Athis herde thies tidynges, that ther was a cristen place so  
nygh, that sone sholde be biseged / yif he were glad, it is no de-  
maunde / and aftir the thankynges that he made vn-to Orcays his  
maister / as right wise & wele aduised, & as he that coude aH 16  
honour / he saide vnto hym / that for no thyng wolde he go  
fertilir than to the next place, not shewyng no semblaunt that it  
was of any desire to be yn the warres, but for drede to be ferre con-  
duyte / and for periles that might ensue therof / and he enquerid 20  
of Orcays who was *withyn* that place / he answerd, "that it was  
one fferaunt, the SeneshaH of Sizile, that was there" / Assone as  
Athis herde hym named / he knewe wele that it was the same *with*  
whom the Valiaunt man dwelled, that he had herde so moche speke 24  
of / and if his wille were bifore to go vnto that place / it was more  
now by a C. part / Orcays his maister, of good wille counseiled hym  
to the contrary, seyng / "my frende, this place may not endure  
ayenst oure power / and if ye taken wit-yn it / y know, my lord, 28  
my fadir is such a man that all the worlde may not saue you /  
wherfore y counseile you to drawe to som other parte / and drede  
not, but y shall se you to be surely conduyte." But for no thyng  
that Orcays coude sey / coude he meue Athis from his opinion, 32  
wherof he was right sory. Then he yaue hym the best hors that  
he had, and the harneys that he was armyd yn hym-self / whiche  
was at that tyme as good & as faire as any might be / and yaue  
him an C. floreyngs / & concluded that on the morow, when they 36  
came to their loggynges, <sup>2</sup>he wolde sende hym surely conduyte to  
the towne. Than tolde he his fadir thentent of his prisoner / by  
the whiche purpose he ymagyned more & more, that yn this man  
shold be right grete honour and corageous wille / nertheles, sith he 40

had promysed his sone, he wolde not breke his promes, but was  
agreable to that his sone had ordeyned / and on the morowe they  
departed, and came withyn litle while to the towne / and than  
4 Orcais called his prisoner, and saide vnto hym / "Athis, my  
frende, the tyme is come now of oure departyng / but, & my com-  
pany were asmoche desired of you / as youres is of me / it sholde  
be harde to make the departyng / nertheles, y had leuer we sholde  
8 departe, than my fadir shold put you to dethe / se yondir the cristene  
towne that my fadir entendith to ley sege to / but y pray you, go  
not thider / & y vndirtake ye shalt be sauflly brought whidir cuir  
ye will ellis / but y know wele, and ye go thider, ye may neuir  
12 departe thens withoute dethe." Athis answerd then, & seide, "my  
lorde, y betake me vnto the garde of hym that hath brought me  
here; and sith that it pleasith you to do me this grace, to yeue me  
leue, I beseche you that y may be conduyte to yondir place" /  
16 Orcays toke him forth with him, & brought him to his fadir / to  
take his leue of him, aH armed as he was. The turke was at that  
tyme out of his tente, acompanyed with many prynces / he sawe  
his sone bryngyng his prisoner, & seide to theym / "se, my sone,  
20 how grete desire he hath to delyuer this man / and he hath right /  
but aH-wey my herte yeueth me ilt ther-of" / and some of theym  
seide / "my lord, what may o man do by his delyueraunce / litle  
harme may growe ther-of" / and at this wordes approached Orcays /  
24 and seide vnto his fadir, aH smylyng / "my lorde, y haue brought  
you this cristen to take his leue / thus abiled as ye se / & yif I  
might haue bettir apoynted hym, y wolde with aH my herte." The  
prisoner alight, & toke his leue at the Turke & alle the company  
28 that was ther / & humbly thanked Orcays his maister / prayng god  
to yeue him grace to do some seruise to his pleasir, sauynng his  
feith / and thus departed he, acompayned with many herowdes of  
armes purceuauntes, that brought hym to the barres where fferant  
32 was, & desired to speke with him / & saide vnto hym in this wise,  
"My lorde! Orcais, sone to the Turke, oure souerayn lord, at this  
last auenture that befelle vpon the cristen by a vesseH that brake,  
1 some of theym came to Londe, amonge whiche this was one / &  
36 taken by the handes of the said Orcais; & mo was ther not saued /  
And yn asmoche as this is his first prise, that by reason & for his  
honour he wolt not withholde / he hath sende hym you hider yn  
suche cas as ye se hym / certifyng you, that from hensforth he hath  
40 done his deuoir / if any mo fal yn his handes." fferant, heryng

Prince Or-  
cays is loth  
to part with  
Prince David.

The Sultan's  
heart mis-  
gives him.

But David  
is taken to  
Size, where  
Ferant is.

[1 leaf 48]

the heraudes speke, knewe wele that yn suche cas enery prynce or grete estate doth the same, and seide vnto the heraudes / "Orcais, your maister, hath done his deuoir / & hath right wele, and honorably aquyte hym. and now may ye withdrawe you whan it pleast 4 you"; and commaundid wyne, & made them drynke, and did them all the chere that he coude / and askid them whedir þey shold sone be biseged / the heraudes answerd / "ye may se grete liklihoodes." & more seide they not / for at that tyme they were *seruauntes com-* 8  
mitted, aswele for on part as for othir, saue for their feith / Aftir the departyng of the heraudes, Athis entird yn-to the towne / ther was none acostomed so moche to honour and chere to straungers as Le Surnome; and he made him to be brought to his loggyng / & 12  
made him to be vnarmed & wele loggid / & wente to se him / and whan he saw him vnarmed / he saw him so goodly a man & so personable, and yn alle his wordes so wele assured, that he had grete ioie of hym / thus eueri thinge sekith his semblable / for he that was 16  
a kynges sone had grete fauour & loue to the kyng of Scottes sone / and suche loue felt bitwene them, that alwey aftir endured / and he loggid him *with* himself / and parted *with* him such goode as he had / and neur varied they yn wille or opinion / neurtheles Athys 20  
alwey put hym to grete honour, & concludid verily yn his herte, that neur to no man wolde he discouere what he was, but tolde euery man that he was a pore gentilmannes sone of Scotlande. that night he was brought to fferaunt / whiche questioned him of the 24  
manere of takyng of hym / and the fortune that was befallen them yn the see / & he tolde him alt the trouthe / and he askid hym specialy of the knyghtes of Sizile that the kyng had sente / & he seide he knewe not what was befall of them / than were they 28  
sore bemoned of fferaunt and alt his company / for they were fult notable men / than praide they hym to telle them the trouthe of his takyng / and so he did / sauynge of his owne noblesse, he <sup>1</sup>spake not /  
but seide / "had not be the grace of god that he was taken by the 32  
turkes sone, he had be put to dethe as alle othir were, for there was none that escape a lyue but he" / eueri man that herde him reherce his auenture, thought he had grete fortune / and thought he might not faile to be a man of right grete honour. fferaunt was right 36  
ioifult of hym / and also that Surnome hadde takyne hym yn-to his company / wherof he coude him right goode thanke. the night came / and euery man drewe hym to reste aftir the Vacche was set / and yn the morowe betymes, euery man aroos, and herde masse / 40

Prince David enters Size,

and is welcomed by Prince Philip:

like to like, they become fast friends.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 48, bk.]

Prince David tells of his capture, and his fellows' death.

- and armed hem / for they knewe wele / that day the sege sholde  
 come / wherfore they were alle redy to abide suche fortune as sholde  
 befall them / for they knewe wele that the Turke had sworne to  
 4 take that place with assaute / and to do by them as the kynge of  
 Siziles folkes did by his / but god of his grace had othirwise  
 puruaide / for a grete parte of his pride was abated bifore that  
 place. ¶ Now came the day, and the hoste of the turkes, with  
 8 grete sowne & noise of taberynes & beaumes / they departed at  
 sonne risyng in iij. bataills right wel ordeyned / and diuided theym  
 selfe yn thre parties, and delyuered the charge of the tone partie to  
 Orcais his sone / and the tothir to his Constable / and the iij<sup>de</sup>. to  
 12 him self / and thus alle raungid & set, euery to the place that he  
 sholde abide yn for that day / for they durst not come ny for  
 gunnes / but they thought, whan the night was derke, to come nere /  
 & to establissh their sege / fferaunt, seyng the conduyte of his  
 16 enemyes, had the yates shut, without suffryng any man to go oute,  
 & made no semblaunt of warre, for this cause / that the turke & his  
 hoste sholde haue more hardynes to come nere; and so did they /  
 euery man came to his place apointed, & did their deuoir to dresse  
 20 vp their loggynges, whiche were a good wey a-sundir / for eche of  
 the iij. bataills were loggid by them self. The Turke, seyng no  
 semblaunce of warre of them yn the towne / toke suche a company  
 as pleasid hym, and went to his sone / to se the maner of his  
 24 loggyng & of his gouernaunce. fferaunt, espiyng hym ther /  
 whiche was a man of meruailous witte & prowesse, seide to his  
 folkes / “ Me semeth / seyng the besynesse that oure enemyes haue to  
 logge them / and that we be loggid at auantage, we ought to visite  
 28 them, and to go se them a litle ner / for it semeth than that here is  
 nobody / but they shalle haue knowlage that there is ” / euery <sup>1</sup>man  
 that herde this seyng was anoon horsed. And fferaunt ordeyned /  
 that ther shold go yn his company but .v. C. ; & an othir feliship  
 32 sholde be redy to releue them, if nede were / and at that yate they  
 roode oute, he ordeyned an othir feliship *with* grete ordenaunce of  
 smale gownes / that if cas be / that they were dryuen to the yates  
 ayen / as it might full wele happen them / *with* the grete company /  
 36 that their enemyes had, that then they shold leuelle & shote alle at  
 ones / lest their enemyes shold come to ny / And longe bifore was  
 no towne bettir garnyssed than that was. This ordenaunce thus  
 made / the yates were opende / and they wente out at that yate  
 40 that was bifore Orcays / and the first that went oute was Surnome,

The Turks  
advance in  
3 battalions.

Ferant keeps  
his men in  
reserve.

The Sultan  
goes to see  
his son's en-  
campment.

[1 leaf 49]

Ferant leaves  
500 men at  
the gate, with  
cannon,

and sallies  
out, with  
Prince Philip

and Prince  
David.

They kill  
many Turke.

More Turkish  
troops come  
up, and drive  
the Chris-  
tians back.

Prince David  
takes Prince  
Orcays pri-  
soner.

[1 lf. 49, bk.]

The Turke  
press on to  
the gates of  
Size,

and are  
thrown into  
disorder by  
the Christian  
fire, which  
destroys  
many of  
them.

& Athys, that grete desire had to folowe hym, & to se the meruailes  
yn Armes þat he hade herde speke of hym. so rode they forth as  
fast as their horses might renne / tilt they came to their enemys /  
at their first comyng, they slewe many / and mightly set vpon the 4  
Turke, that was come thider to se his sone / but he and the moost  
part of his company withdrewre them aswele as they might / whiche,  
as ye knowe wele, might not be done without grete losse & damage  
to the Turke & his company / for there were moo slayn of them by 8  
double / than they were that assailed them / the crie aroos on alle  
parties, and euery man assembled and drewre to the Turke & his  
sone / & than were they so bigge, that by force they made oure  
folkes to withdrawre to the remenaunt of their company that helde 12  
them to-gedir / Orcays, that was yonge & corageous, came byfore  
alle othir / and knewe anon his prisoner that was with Surnome,  
whiche ij. were the laste that withdrewre them / he ranne so ny  
that they ioyned to-gedir. Surnome, seyng his felawe in daungre, 16  
cam for to socoure hym / but there were so many folowyng Orcays /  
that, had not their good maister fferant a bene, they had neur  
retourned yn-to the towne / but he, seyng his ij. seruautes in suche  
daunger amonges so grete a nombre of the turkes, with alle his feli- 20  
ship, at ones encountird them so vigorously, that he made them to  
withdrawre more than the draught of an arowe. In this recountre  
was takyn Orcays by the handes of Athis / and many moo prisoners  
were ther takyne without nombre. The Turke sawe & knewe for 24  
trouthe his sone to be takyn / with the handes of hym that the  
night afore he had delyuered / the crie & the noise was so grete yn  
the turkes hoste, that he might not haue herde a thondre, & they  
resorted ayen <sup>1</sup>so fast / that by force they made the cristen to with- 28  
drawre ayen yn-to the towne / that were folowed vnto the yatis,  
which were sone closed / and anon alle the ordenaunce & Arthery  
were shotte at ones amonges their enemyes / whiche were so thikke  
assembled, þer might not faile to be hurte & slayne many of them / 32  
whiche brought them alle out of aray / for there were so many slayne  
& hurte, that it was meruaile / for they stynted not, but leide on  
them with ordenaunce so sore / that the turkes wist not what to  
do / fferant seyng them alle out of aray, made the yates to be 36  
opened ayen, & made a newe scarmysh on theym a foote / at whiche  
tyme he did grete hurte to the turke and his folkes / that neur  
sith were they so hardy to come so ny the towne. The cristen did  
so moche that they retourned pesibly ayen to the towne. & there 40

were that day so many prisoners taken, þat men might not knowe  
one fro an othir / But Athis knewe full wele his prisoner / and  
what he had done for hym / and knewe wele also that it shold not  
4 ly yn his power to delyuer hym / and he were ones knowen. wher-  
fore, of fre and honorable corage, he brought hym oute of the towne  
by an othir yate / and seide vnto hym, "Orcais! ye haue saued my Prince David  
lif / and it is reason therfore that I deliuiere you now, & soone, or  
8 elles shaH it neur lye in my power. I can no bettir arme you than  
ye be / nor bettir horse you / wherfore y geue your hors & your  
harneys, that is myn be right. I pray god to conduyte you oute of  
alle daungers / and now, saue your self, for it is tyme." Thus lete quietly lets  
Prince Orcays  
escape,  
12 he his prisoner go so couertly, that noman perceyued it / and came  
ageyn yn-to the towne, where he founde his felawe Surnome, that  
was full sory that he wist not where he was / and whan he sawe  
hym come, he made him grete chere / and askid hym where his  
16 prisoner was / and he seide, that at the last encountring / he was and lies to  
Prince Philip  
about it.  
slayn. Surnome bileued hym wele y-nough / for there were many  
slayn, aswele prisoners as othir. ¶ Now retourne y to the Turke,  
that, aftir this auenture that was full damageous vnto hym, he  
20 lefte good gardes yn his sones hoste, and wente ayen hym self vnto  
his tentes, where he was serued with many knyghtes & squyers /  
that all that while had kepte stille his loggyng / and at his comyng,  
askid hym tidynges; & he tolde them the dolorous fortune that this  
24 day was befallen hym / as to haue lost his sone, & grete part of his  
people / and of the best / wherof he named grete nombre of hy and [1 leaf 50]  
noble estates and valiaunt knyghtes / after this he seide to theym,  
"ye sawe wele that my herte coude not assente to the delyueraunce  
28 of my sones prisoner / and it was not without a resone, for y sawe  
hym this day take my sone prisoner; and aftir he had ones con-  
quered hym, he wold not leue hym nor fauour hym, for y sawe  
hym lede hym towarde the towne / and yit y know not whedir at  
32 the last encountre my sone were slayne or not / or if he be yn the  
towne / nor how it is with hym." & amonge, thies wordes he seide  
to them / that "there was neur houre sith y sawe this cristen man  
first / but that my herte tolde me that by hym I sholde haue grete  
36 damage; and so tolde y my sone alwey / and now hath he founde it."  
**A**s they were in this talkyng, euery man makyng doule, came  
a man vnto the pauylion, and seide vnto the Turke / "sir, but then  
hears tidings  
of his safety.  
my lorde your sone, ys sauf / for as me thought y sawe him  
40 come alone from the towne" / The turke went out / and by then

his sone was almoost at him / whiche a-light assone as he sawe  
 hym / & came to hym, & comforted hym aswele as he coude, aftir  
 his grete daungere / the Turke seide, "my sone, this auenture that  
 ye haue had to day, & y had ben bileued, had not befallen you / 4  
 for yn this partie ye are cause of oure losse / for whan ye were  
 takyne, to haue rescowed you, this grete hurte is befallme" /  
 "truly, sir," quoth Orcays, "that y haue done, y holde for no grete  
 dede / for the sone of a mighti kyng hath delyuerd a felaw that 8  
 he knew not / which hath not ben sears, nor of so pore corage / but  
 that he hath wele to his knowlage delyuerd the sone of the grettist  
 kyng that leuyth" / Than tolde he his fadir the maner of Athis /  
 and the wordes that he had seide / and how he had delyuerd hym 12  
 frely / & had put him self in iubarde of his lif, if it were knowen ;  
 "thus haue y do no thyng for hym, yn regarde to that he hath done  
 for me" / the Turke, heryng his sone reherse the grete bounte of  
 Athis, more & more in corage dredde hym, and seide / "yn a man of 16  
 pore condicion ne might be so grete vertu ; and alwey more & more  
 me thinketh he shold do vs harme. Nertheles, what-som-euir be-  
 falle, he is a man of hy & noble corage" / than comforted he him  
 aswele as he might / aftir this sharpe fortune & annoy, seyng the 20  
 recouerir of his sone, he made to fortifie his sege, and made stronge  
 wacche / for he sawe wele <sup>1</sup>that he had to do with valiaunt folkes.  
 Nowe shal we leue to speke of the sege / and of alle the warres of  
 Sizile, & retourne to speke of the kynges sone of Englonde, that 24  
 conduyte thus, as ye shaH here.

Prince Or-  
cays tells the  
Sultan

how Prince  
David set  
him free.

The Sultan  
fears Prince  
David,

and strength-  
ens his own  
force.  
[<sup>1</sup> If. 50, bk.]

Prince Hum-  
phrey of  
England

laments the  
Allies' losses  
in Sicily ;

but the King,  
his father,  
will not let  
him go there.

**I**T is trouthe, that, as ye haue herde, the kyng of Englonde had  
 a sone named Humfray, faire, wise, and right wele condicioned /  
 for as y haue seide you here-to-fore / the kynges made their 28  
 children yn youthe to be norissed by notable folkes & wele con-  
 dicioned / This yonge Humfray, aftir the discomfiture and harde  
 auenture that the cristen had vpon the see yn Sizile / helde the  
 reaume as lost, wherof he had as grete sorowe yn parte, as alle his 32  
 frendes had ben destroyed / and thought wele that the cristen put  
 hem not yn suche deuoir as they shold / and many tymes he seide  
 to his fadir / that "it was grete pite to se thus cristendome  
 destroyed" / The kyng anoon vndirstode wele for what entente he 36  
 seide it / but for no thinge wolde he sende him forth / he toke  
 ensauple of the kyng of Scottes, that was yn suche sorowe for  
 his sone, of whom he coude here no worde, that noman might  
 recomforte hym ; and therefore the pore Humfray lost his tyme to 40



- speke therof / and whan he sy he might haue non othir comfort of  
his fadir / he remembred hou the kynge of fraunce had loste his  
sone / & thought he wolde secretly breke with the feliship that  
4 were aboute him / as the sones of grete prynces and othir grete  
lordes / that in their youthe had be norissed with hym / and if he  
might fynde any of his accorde / he wold departe from his fadir, &  
drawe to Sizile; for he thought wele / and he were ones there / and  
8 his fadir knewe ther-of, that for no thyng he wold leue hym yn  
daunger / but rather sende thider folkes to acompany him / whiche  
might be grete socour and helpe to the kyng of Sizile / and in this  
thought was he longe tyme or he durst discouer it pleynty to any of  
12 his seruantes. So fortunèd, vpon a day he stode at a wyndowe,  
passyng trist & pensif / and the Erle of warwikes eldest sone was  
there / that long tyme of youthe had be brought vp with hym / so  
he came to him and seide, "my lorde! sauynge your displeasir, me  
16 thinketh that now of late y haue sene you more pensif & malyn-  
colious than euir ye were before / and as me ought yn this wise, y  
shewe you the trouthe, that many folkes withdrawe them out of  
this courte / and be right sorowfull to se you in this cas; <sup>1</sup>for by  
20 youre Lustynes, & Liberalite & frendly manere, eueri man desired to  
yeue you attendaunce, and to be acompanyed aboute your persone /  
and now they se you of right mate & heuy chere / and if they  
come aboute you, ye make vnto them full litle countenaunce, or  
24 noon, whiche they haue not ben acostomed to; Wherefore they haue  
the grettir meruaile / and thus departe they all abassed and sorow-  
fulle, to remembre how ye ar turned so ferre from that they lefte  
you / and there is noon that moost desire to do you seruise, but  
28 that they are annoyed to se you so / ye knowe wele, my lorde, y say  
trouthe / for here were many noble men that were right glad to do  
you seruyse at their owne coste & charge that nowe be departed.  
And this courte is sore amenysed of noble men / and alle by you / I  
32 biseche you, my lorde, pardone me of thies thynges y haue shewed  
you / for y can yn no wise hide fro you / that haue brought me vp /  
any thinge that y se or here, that shold be to your charge, or  
amenysyng of your grete loos & renome / that of your age hath  
36 largely be spred thorough the worlde" / Thus yong Humfray / hering  
thies wordes of this yong sone of warwik / knewe wele that of good  
herte, & feithfull loue & seruise, he seide thies vnto hym / and  
thought wele he seide trouthe; and forthwith the teres felle from  
40 his yen / wherby this yonge gentilman perceyued wele that his

Prince Hum-  
phrey re-  
solves to start  
for Sicily, if  
he can find  
friends to go  
with him.

The Earl of  
Warwick's  
son re-  
proaches  
Prince Hum-  
phrey for  
his melan-  
choly,  
[1 leaf 51]

which has  
driven young  
nobles from  
Court.

This makes  
Humphrey  
weep.

Lord War-  
wick's son  
says he'll risk  
his life to  
help Prince  
Humphrey.

Humphrey  
then tells him

[1 ff. 51, bk.]

that the peril  
of the King of  
Sicily

and his lovely  
daughter,

which danger  
his Allies  
have not  
relieved him  
from,

maister might not wele speke / the sorow strayned so sore his  
herte / than seide he / "my lorde! y se wele that there is som  
thinge yn your herte that sore annoieth you / or displeasith you /  
and .I. wote not whethir ye haue or wilt discouer it to any aboute 4  
you / but y sey for me, if y knewe any thyng that were to your  
annoy or displeasir / and it were possible my seruise to remedy it /  
y shal auenture my body and lif to accomplishe it / neuirtheles y  
desire to knowe of youre secretes no ferthir than pleasith you y 8  
sholde knowe / but whan my seruyse may please you ye shalt fynde  
it redy, without any Demaunde reseruyng / aȝ-only the kyng, & my  
pore lorde, my fadir." whan Humfray had herde his seruaunt &  
kynnesman thus sey vnto hym / and offrid his body and goodes for 12  
him / thought wele yn him self that he might trust hym, & seide  
vnto him, "ye haue be norissht vp with me / and y trust certainly  
that my wele, myn honour, and preferment, ye wolde as moche as  
any man that longith to my fadir or me; and for this y am con- 16  
cluded yn my thought to <sup>1</sup>discouer vnto you myn entent / and  
notwithstandynge ye haue be brought vp with me of childehode /  
and that y haue alwey loued you wele, yit wolt y haue an othe of  
you / and what othe y shalt sey you / if that y shalt disclose vnto 20  
you, please you not / nor that ye wiȝ assente and agree ther-to /  
that neuir, daies of your lif, it shaȝ be opend or disclosed by you /  
and this shalt ye promyse me" / and he answerd him / "my lorde,  
y wolt wele / for y had leuir dy than euir y shold discouer thinge 24  
that ye commaunde me to kepe" / and here on yaue his trouthe /  
and then he shewid his sorowe in this wise / ¶ "It is so that ye  
haue, dyuerse tymes & many, herde speke of the right grete pite &  
destruccïon / that euery day befalleth to the kyng of Sizile / that 28  
is a kyng of full grete honour, whiche is a grete amenysshment to  
aȝ cristendome, & shame to alle cristen kynges that haue their  
reaumes in pees / and he hath a doughter, of whom the renome of  
al honour is spred through aȝ the worlde / and the kyng, hir 32  
fadir, might haue pees / if he wolde mary hir among the mys-  
creauntes / but he had leuer dy / and þe destruccïon of hym & of  
his doughtir bothe / than euir, daies of his lif, he wold consent  
ther-to / ye may wele se that this cometh of a stable herte / grete 36  
drede & loue of god / ye knowe the socours that by the kyng of  
ffraunce / my lorde,<sup>2</sup> my fadir / and the kyng of Scottes, hath be  
done to him / whiche no thing hath profite him / but to him a grete

<sup>2</sup> MS. my lorde my lorde.

hurte / for his folkes are gretly discouraged ther-by / for, as y vnder-  
 stonde, bfore this comyng, one of them was worth .vj. turkes / and  
 nowe y se noman that dressith to any socours of the seide kynge /  
 4 but they thinke they haue done y-nough. I haue many tymes I've talkt to  
 my Father,  
 moued my lorde my fadir, heryn, that litle hede takith to my  
 wordes, but rathir thinkith my speche ys chyldissh & folie / and he thinks  
 me silly.  
 thus for certayn y holde this good kynge / his fair doughtir and his  
 8 reame, lost / and for that me thinkith that euery noble man sholde  
 be sorowfuH of so grete a losse / y can in no wise make good chere /  
 and this is the principaH cause of my sorowe / And y thynke werrily  
 if y might gete thider / the noble suggettes & seruantes of this  
 12 reame shold can me no maugre / and wolde god that euery man  
 wold employ hym therto / and that the kynge were agreable to  
 sende me yn this viage / but that wol he not, for no thying, y knowe  
 for certayne / notwithstanding aH my speche vnto hym / & also [1 leaf 52]  
 16 the grete losse that but late is fallen to them that were sent to the  
 socours / But y shaH telle you more playnly myn entente, suche But I mean  
 promyse as ye haue made me / for ye be one of them that y haue  
 most affiaunce yn / and also y knowe you wele assured, and wise y-  
 20 nough to conduyte an<sup>2</sup> hy matier, if it please you / wherfore y pray  
 with aH my herte in especiaH, that ye wiH assente to my desire  
 with-oute breking it / and helpe me to execute it / and here nowe  
 what y haue thought / I knowe wele, as y haue seide, that for  
 24 no thinge, my lorde, nor alle they of his reame, fro the grettist  
 estate to the porest degre, ne wol not consente that y shold departe  
 so ferre fro them / but aH that shaH not restrayne me / if y may  
 haue the power, & any that will helpe to conduyte me in this  
 28 werke, y shaH departe oute of this reame right honestly accom-  
 payned, not as a kynge, but as a knyght / and for this y haue goode  
 y-nough, & garnysst wele y-nough / And y wold that "yn the name  
 of som othir than of me, at som port in this reame, fer fro this I want some  
 one to engage  
 a Ship,  
 32 towne, a good ship were ordeyned, wele tak-lee & vitailed, whiche  
 sholde alwey be redy to departe / without houre or tyme apoynted /  
 and abide there oure comyng; and yn the meane tyme, to ij. or iij.  
 of my specialle seruantes & kynnesmen, & othir that haue be  
 36 norisshed vp with me / vpon an othe y shaH discouer myn entente /  
 & y trust that at leste y shaH be accompayned with xvj. or a xx<sup>ti</sup>. and then I,  
 with 16 or 20  
 noblemen,  
 noble men / and euery man, one seruaunt with him / and at suche  
 tyme as aH shall be redy / y shall depart at euen out of this towne,

<sup>2</sup> MS. and

will some day  
go aboard and  
sail to Sicily,

which I hope  
to aid, and  
also win  
honour.

Will you  
help?

[1 lf. 52, bk.]

Lord War-  
wick's son  
advises  
Prince Hum-  
phrey

to get 3 or 4  
friends to  
manage the  
matter,

and he will  
help.

The Prince's  
friends

object at first,

that by the mornnyng, if y be myssed / y shalbe to fer to be ouirtaken  
or we come to the port / and then wolt y streight to shipe / and  
go vnto the Reaume of Sizile / and whan y am onys ther / y shalt  
lete my lorde, my fadir, haue knowlage therof / and what causes haue 4  
meued me / and y am sure whan thoos tidynges come to his know-  
lage / he, and alle they of his reame, wol be right wele content to  
sende suche company vnto me as may be for his honour / whiche  
shalbe a grete recomforte to the reaume of Sizile / and pis be cause 8  
of my goyng ; & by pis may I trust to wynne the loue of god, and  
honour / without hauyng shame ; but this can y, nor may, do with-  
out helpe / wherfore, myn owne consyn & frende, I pray you teH  
me, heryn as ye thinke" / This yong sone of <sup>1</sup>warwik heryng his 12  
maister thus speke, was not so yong / but that he thought yn his  
corage, that this mocion came of grete honour and gentilnes of herte.  
and thus he answerd hym / "my lorde, this matier that ye meue,  
procedith of an hy & noble corage / a[n]d also the mater is right grete / 16  
and y alone, & but yonge / & notwithstanding, your wordes gretly  
reioise me / yit dare y geue you noon other counseH than this that  
y shalt sey / ye haue of yong men, thankid be god, that of their  
age be right wise & discrete, & that wiH be trewe vnto you as longe 20  
as god wol geue them lif / ye may calle vn-to you iij. or iiij. of  
them that ye thinke be moost propre to guyde this mater / and if  
it please you, y wolbe with them / and what-so-euer shalt then be  
concluded / and ye commaunde me to execute it, y shalt do my 24  
deuoir to the vtterist of my power / and thinke neuir, sir / that,  
daies of my lif, this that it hath pleased you to seye to me, shaH be  
opende by me to no lyuyng creature / for y knowe wele the grete  
affectione, trust, and fauour, that ye shewede me, discoueryng this 28  
matier that is most secrete in your herte / wherof, right humbly y  
thanke your good grace / and as for my body, & alle the goodes that  
y haue, if my pore company may plesse you, affir ye haue takyn a  
ferme conclusion, [I] shall be redy to do you seruise as long as my 32  
lif may endure" / his maister thankid him right hertily / & thought  
his auise good / and on the morow full erly was steryng, sent for  
suche as he wold haue / to whom he had grettist affiaunce / and  
without long taryng, to abregge the matier / yn like wise as he had 36  
broken to the erle of warrewikes sone, of his entente / so did he to  
them that he had sent for / whiche, anoon as they herde his pleasir,  
thought the matier right straunge / and seide vnto him / "that yf  
they shold acompany hym yn this matier, they knewe for certayne 40

- that they durst neur retourne to this reaume ayen / for the kynge  
 his fadir / and that their owne fadirs wolde be the first that sholde  
 destroye them" / and also they seide, "my lord, whan ye come to  
 4 the age of more knowlage, & haue children, as my lord your fadir  
 hath / ye wolde neur haue loue ne fauour vnto vs / but thinke  
 that we shold be as agreable to beguyle you of your children, as we  
 sholde be nowe agreable to beguyle my lord your fadir, of you,  
 8 where-thorough ye shold haue vs alwey yn hate / & mystrust" /  
 But no[t]withstandyng alle thies wordes, he seide to them / "my  
 frendes, doute <sup>1</sup>not but, in conclusion, this matier shalbe reputed to <sup>[1 leaf 53]  
but he  
answers their  
arguments,</sup>  
 youre Honour and preise / bothe of my lord your fadir, and of alle  
 12 your frendes / for whan they here where we shal be, there shal be  
 fewe yn this londe, ~~but~~ haue any some of age to bere armes / but  
 that they shal wille they were ~~with~~ vs / and as for me, y shold be  
 the moost wrecche yn erthe / if ye that haue fadirs & modirs, kynne  
 16 & frendes / and grete possessions yn this reaume / which ye shold  
 leue for the loue of me, if y sholde hate you / god neur be pleased  
 to geue me lif so longe / but shortly to ende it / ffor if god geue vs  
 grace to achene & brynge our entirprise to good conclusion / y  
 20 shold be fult vntrewe & right vnkynde / if euer y failed any of you,  
 daies of my lif" / many wordes were amonges them / but at last alle <sup>and at last  
all agree to  
do as he  
wishes.</sup>  
 to-gedir concludid to do & accomplissh the pleasir of their maister /  
 not yn so grete nombre as they wolde haue had, for fere it sholde  
 24 be knowen and discouerd / But now euery man toke his charge,  
 some to ordeyne a ship & the vitailyng / some to puruay good <sup>Some get the  
ship, others</sup>  
 horsis / and to brynge them to suche secrete places where as they  
 might be dayly coursed & renne; som puruaide for gold & siluer & <sup>proenre  
money,</sup>  
 28 for harneys, and som for aray / so that ther lakked no thyng to  
 noon of them / but that they were alle puruaide of euery thyng  
 longing vnto them for a grete while / Aftir this, was eueri thing  
 puruaide and so wele guyd / that by the day they apoynted / alle <sup>and by the  
day appointed  
all is ready.</sup>  
 32 thyng was redy ther, without knowyng of any persone saue of  
 them that delt ther-with. ¶ Now fro this day forth was Humfray  
 of bettir chere then he had ben longe before, wherof eueri man had  
 grete ioie, for they had ben yn sore discomfort for his sadnes / but  
 36 no man durst make no questione. The tyme approched of his  
 departyng; he made iustis & turneys, and assembled his ladies and  
 gentilwomen / & did so moche, that alle folkes than had more ioie of  
 him than euer they had / thus beloued of the kynge & of alle the  
 40 iij. estates of the reaume, departid this yonge gentilman out of his

One mid-  
night Prince  
Humphrey  
leaves his  
Father's  
house, and  
goes to his  
ship.  
[1 ff. 53, bk.]

They set sail.

The King of  
England is

told that the  
Prince's  
room is  
empty:

so he knows  
his son has  
gone to  
Sicily.

The King  
grieves  
greatly.

fadirs house aboute midnight / so secretly that he was vnperceyued /  
and rode so that night, that it was not possible to ouirtake him /  
thus, *withoute* makyng lenger tale, he came to the port ther as the  
ship abode him / and they that had the charge therof / and assone 4  
as he came ther / he & his fe<sup>l</sup>lship in alle Haste possible entrid  
ther-yn, which, whan they were there, were yn nombre xviii.  
persones / of gentilmen and other. then made they to pulle vp the  
saile, & were *withyn* litle while *withoute* sight of the londe. 8  
¶ Now goth Humfray and his company / god by his grace con-  
duyte them / for they be fult ferre from their entent. The kynge  
of Englonde, on the morowe that his sone was departed, herde thorough  
his court grete noise & murmour, & askid what it might be ; but 12  
noon ther was that wold or durst telle it hym / *neuirtheles* at laste  
he most knowe it / and so came his counseil to enforme hym ther-  
of, and seide vnto him / “ sir, it behoueth that ye knowe wherfore  
we are come to you / to-day be comen vnto vs many of the *seruauntes* 16  
of my lordes youre sone / that for certayn knowe not where he is /  
for they haue ben at his chambre, & founde it open / and he not  
ther-yn / his chambrelayn yn like wise, & suche as were moost a-  
boute hym / nor wote not where they are / for the *seruauntes* of 20  
diuerse of them be come to vs & sey that they haue lost their  
maistres / thus for drede that it shold falle vnto you as it did to  
the kynge of ffrance, we be come to enforme you ther-of / assone as  
we mysse hym / for we wote not yif ye knowe where he is or no.” 24  
The kynge of England, heryng this, knewe anon for certayne that  
his sone was goon / and thought wele that he had takyn the wey  
to Sizile / consideryng the wordes that he at diuerse tymes had  
seide vnto him / and then he made diligently to seche thorough all 28  
his reame / and whan he sawe that he might haue no tidynges of  
hym / he determyned to sende notable folkes yn-to Sizile / for to  
knowe and enquire if any tidynges might be had ther of hym / It  
is to thinke / that the kynge was yn grete sorowe / & not *without* 32  
cause / for he had no moo sonys ; and if he had sorowe, ye may wele  
thinke *pat* be quene & hir ij. doughters were not *withoute* / for they  
had suche sorow that alle folke had grete pite of them / this sorowe  
was not alone yn the kynges court / but the fadirs & moders, kynne 36  
& frendes of the yonge lordes that were gone with hym had their  
parte yn like wise / & so had the surplus of alle the reame, & had  
grete drede lest the losse were *without* recouerir / as that of ffrance  
had ben. ¶ Now sha<sup>l</sup>l we leue of this grete sorowe that they made, 40

- & not withoute cause / for moche trouble had they that thus <sup>1</sup>were [1 leaf 54]  
 departid / and ye shall here the manere Howe. ¶ Whan Humfray  
 and his folkes were in the see withoute the sight of any Londe of  
 4 the reaume of Englonde, they toke their wey towarde Sizile / and Prince Hum-  
 had connyng maryners to conduyte them, & faire wedir at wille / phrey sails  
 so that *withyn* litle while they might haue aryued in Sizile, ne had towards  
 ben the fortune & tempest of the see, that neuir is sure / ffor on a Sicilly.  
 8 day bifelle grete tempest in the see / so that the vesselt that they A tempest  
 were yn was many tymes yn daunger to be perished / yn-so-moche rises;  
 that the maryners coude no remedy, but all only yn the handes of  
 god, & lete the vesshelt dryue *with* the wawes and the wynde, the ship  
 12 whedir as god wold conduyte it. Humfray and alle his company drives;  
 were in orisons and praier *with* grete deuocion, hauyng no hope but  
 of dethe / and yn the meane while one of the maryners perceyued  
 londe that they were ny vnto / but he knewe not the contre, for he  
 16 had neuir be ther / so he wente to Humfray / and to the maister  
 maryner / and tolde it theym / whiche made grete ioie / for when  
 they were so ny the londe, the tempest was not so rageous as it had  
 ben in the playne see / sone aftir they aryued at londe *with*out any  
 20 hurte / and it was nye a grete towne that helde of the turke that they land at  
 was in Sizile / and they went oute yn vessells & botes, & came to a Turkish  
 this shipe / and founde it garnysst *with* cristen men / and when town, are  
 they sawe thies yonge folkes, and the good that was *with* them, they robd,  
 24 were right ioiefult, and brought their prise to the towne, and departed  
 their botte / and for it thought them a cas of nouelte / they sente and given  
 presentes to their neighbors of the cristen prisoners, so that they away as  
 lefte *with* them but ij., wherof that one was Humfray / and thus prisoners.  
 28 was thys company disseuerd / Humfray was put yn a derke prisone, Prince Hum-  
 and his felawe *with* hym / whiche sone aftir died / and he abode phrey is put  
 ther all alone, where he endured moche payne & trouble / alle othir in a dungeon.  
 than he wende to fynde whan he departed oute of Englonde / and  
 32 pitously he complayned him to god / besechyng hym humbly that  
 this payne & prison that he was yn / might stande for part of his  
 purgatory / for he wende neuir to escaped thens / but oure lorde,  
 that knewe the cause of his departyng / and that he was abandoned  
 36 for his seruise, put him not yn foryetyng / but sone aftir holpe to  
 his delyueraunce / <sup>2</sup>as ye shall here / but now he was stille kepte [2 lf. 54, bk.]  
 there, to thentent to presente the turke with, at his retourne. The  
 kyng, his fadir, had sente yn-to Sizile vij. or viij. of his folkes  
 40 aftir his departyng / & whan they were returned / and tolde that

The King of  
England's  
envoys can  
hear no  
tidings of  
Humphrey  
in Sicily.

The King of  
England  
mourns the  
loss of his  
Son.

The King of  
France, be-  
fore dying of  
grief for the  
loss of his  
son, Prince  
Philip,

appoints his  
brother,

[1 leaf 55]  
the Duke of  
Burgundy,  
Regent of  
France, and  
King after 9  
years.

thorough alle the reaume of Sizile they had enquired & sought / but  
for certayne, yn that region had not be seyne no ship / sith the losse  
of the cristen armee, that was sent for their socours. & they certified  
for trouthe, that ther Humfray nor his company was not / The 4  
kyнге of Englonд, heryng thies tidynges, helde his sone as loste /  
and than his sorow redoubled, but it might not be amendid / and  
aH his lif he contynued wepyng & teeres / and seide to suche as  
were a-boute hym / "Alas! ye may se iij. reaumes full desolate! 8  
the kyнге of ffrance & y haue loste oure ij. sones / and wote not  
how the kyнге of Scottes hath lost his also / but he hath more  
recomforte than we two / for his sone died knyghtly yn the  
seruise of god / and yet hath his fadir ij. sones alyue, which is a 12  
grete recouerir to his reaume / & noon of vs two haue noon heire  
male / and y here sey the kyнге of ffrance lith seke in his bedde;  
without any remedy of his lif / whiche is comen to hym of sorow / of  
which is grete pite, and withoute faile he seide trouthe / for aftir 16  
the departyng of his sone, hadde he neur ioie."

**A**s the kyнге of Englonд seide / and as ye haue rehersed here  
tofore, The kyнге of ffrance, sith the departyng of his  
seide sone, enioied neur day of helthe / in so moche that 20  
withyn ij. yere aftir, he departed oute of this worlde / and bfore  
his dethe, made to come bfore him his wif and his brother, the  
Duc of Burgoigne / and seide vnto them in this wise / "My wif  
and my brother / y perceyue wele y most dye / whiche is the 24  
thyng y haue moche desired / and as ye knowe wele y had a sone  
a ij. yere syne, and wote not yet / whethir he be a-lyue or not / to  
whom ye, my wif, be moder / and ye, my brother, be vnele / y  
haue loued you naturally as my brother / and ye haue done me 28  
grete seruyse and honour, wherof y thonke you, and pray you to  
contynue your kinde and naturaH loue vnto me aftir my dethe /  
and to my sone, if he be a-lyue / and if he be not / y may haue no  
grettir ioie than to wite you kyнге aftir my dethe / for to you 32  
sholde the reaume falle as rightfull enheritoure / wherfore y wolde  
that ye shold be regent and gouernour of this reaume by the space  
of vij. yere / and yn caas be that my sone come not / and that terme  
passed / I wol that ye be crowned and sacred kyнге / for the abidyng 36  
is long y-nough of ix yere / and y trust that ye wiH thus do / and  
so y pray you promyse me / for the goodes of the reaume be as wele  
yours, as Regent / as if ye were crowned kyнге; and so shaH ye  
leese nomore for the tyme, but only the name of the kyнге." The 40



Duc of Burgoigne, that was fult wyse, worthy, and a passing good man, was knelyng afore the kyngè his brother, heryng him thus speke, of right feruent lone, and of right stronge and soroufull  
 4 herte, wepte so sore / that he might vnnethe speke a worde / but as he might speke, he promysed him trewly to perfourme his desire & commaundement / Aftir alle this, and that the goode kyng of ffrance had serchid his conscience wisely and deuoutly, he yelde  
 8 his soule to god, and was entered as to a kyng perteyneth, and his ordynaunce doone & accomplisshed, as he had diuised. And his Brothir, the Duc of Bourgoigne, was made Regent of ffrance / and helde entierly, and accomplissid, alle that he had promysed his  
 12 brother, withoute contraryng of any thinge / and had noon othir wille ne desire, but that his Nevewe sholde come ayen / for he hadde neither wif ne childe, and he was noon of the moost yonge, wherefore he was determyned yn himself neuir to marye. He helde the  
 16 reaume, as long as he had the gouernaunce, yn good Iustice, pees & tranquillite. ¶ It is tyme to be stille a litle of this matier, and retourne to the sege that the Turke had set bifore fferaunt and his company.

The King of France dies,

and the Duke of Burgundy becomes Regent.

20 **L**onge tyme endured they bifore the Towne without any wynnyng / & euery day there was som sawte or scarmysssh, and alwey profitable for them withyn / and so moche yn  
 24 armes did Le Surnome and Athis / that of alle othir they bare the name / for their dedes were, as who seith, yneredible; and so wele did Athis / that sawe Le Surnome, ther was noon to compare with hym / wherof le Surnome was as glad as he might be / and loued his honour asmoche as his owne / and he shewed wele he was not  
 28 enuyous / for whan they were withdrawen from any scarmysssh, he wolde so ioifully reherce of Athis, his felawe / that alle men <sup>1</sup>Had grete pleasir to here him / whiche alway passed hym, & was werry mirrour and ensample to alle othir / Thes sege dured fulle longe / and  
 32 many tymes sent fferaunt to the kyng of Sizile, that he sholde haue no drede for them / nor put himself yn noon auenture / for it neded not / for they had gret plente of vitaille for more than a yere / and whan they most nedes leue the place / they wolde departe to  
 36 the a nother of their enemyes, mangre them alle / and thus the kyng of Sizile, in trust of fferaunt, abode the auenture that god wolde sende / and often made his folkes to ride to the Turkys hoste / to distourbe their vitaille / whiche aquytte them right wele / and  
 40 did grete damage to the Turkes, and made them right wery /

Ferant and the Christians make daily sallies against the Turks,

[1 1f. 55, bk.]

and tell the King of Sicily that they are all right.

A letter of  
Ferant's,

and his mes-  
senger, are  
taken to the  
Sultan,

who is told  
that they  
don't at all  
fear him.

[1 leaf 56]

The Sultan  
calls a Coun-  
cil to discuss  
the slow pro-  
gress of the  
siege,

and the  
damage that  
Prince Philip  
and Prince  
David do  
the Turks.

ffynally they loste moo of their folkes before that place then they  
had done of all the while that they were yn Sizile / and yit were  
they neuir the nere of the place / On a day befelle that fferaunt had  
sent a letter to the kyng his maister / yn suche wise as ye haue 4  
herde before / the messanger was not so wise as othir had be, nor  
coude not þe weies so wele / so was he taken with the Turkes  
meyne / & brought bifore him yn-to his Tente. the Turke toke  
him aparte, & suche of his counseil as pleased him / and made to 8  
woide the remenaunt / for that he wold not the messangere shold  
be openly herde / lest he shold sey any thing / that shold discourage  
them / & whan all folkes were wided, the Turke asked hym cer-  
teinly of his tydynges / And he tolde hym suche as he knewe, with- 12  
out hidyng of any thyng / yn embandonyng his lif, if it were founde  
othir wise / he seide that they withyn dred not the Turke and alle  
his power / but were rathir glad than sory of his beyng ther / for  
they wist for trouthe, that it was grete charge to hym / and that he 16  
shold alwey lese more than wyne / and yn the meane tyme the  
kyng of Sizile shold fortifie his Reaume, and be daily releued with  
newe folkes / so that his puissaunce shalle alwey encresse. The  
Turke asked the messanger if he had any letters / and he seide 20  
“ye” / as he that durst not deny it / and forthwith toke theym  
hym / the Turke opend them, and founde them affir suche forme  
as ye haue herde before this. whan the messangere had be wele  
enquered / and answerde and seide like as he knewe / whiche was 24  
alwey to the honoure<sup>1</sup> of the cristen : then was He delyuerd to one  
that shold kepe him wele and surely / the Turke abode stille with  
his counseil / and they diuised many thinges to-gedre of thies  
matier / & they thought wele they loste tyme / and therfore toke 28  
they this conclusion / that on the morowe the Turke sholde  
assemble alle his counselle / and the Capteynes / and seid to them  
that were there with hym / that they shold auise them wele that  
night of this grete matier, & on the morow to shewe him their best 32  
aduise & counselle / Thus departed they, and euery man to his  
loggyng / til on the morow the Turke sende for them / many tymes  
and often were they awakid by them withyn / whiche had noon  
othir delite nor pleasir but to trauaile them, to the annoie of the 36  
turkes / and that shewde wele Le Surnome, and Athis his felowe,  
pat, alle the while he was withyn the place, chaungid not his harneys  
that Orcais had yeuen him / wherby he was wele knownen; and  
also he shewde it full ny them many tymes, to their grete damage / 40

- for the Turke wolde often tyme sey / "se there my sonnes prisonere !  
 here may ye se the profit of his delyneraunce / my herte gaf me  
 neur othir wise / he is the flour & choise of alle them *withyn* / one  
 4 reserued / that dothe vs meruailous grete hurt / by them ij. is alle  
 the losse we haue." Now this night passid / on the morowe came  
 the Turkes counselle to hym, and alle the Capteynes he had sent for,  
 and the Turke declared the matier him self / yn this wise, seyng  
 8 vnto them / "ffaire lordes, it is nigh the space of a yere sith we  
 leide the sege bfore this place / wheryn it semeth me to be as ferre  
 from hawyng it as the first day we came here / the damages that we  
 haue had, aswele of them *without* the place, as of them *withyn* / be  
 12 *without* nombre / for we haue lost here, of the best of oure  
 company / & yit if it appered that we might haue it be length of  
 tyme, y sholde holde my peyne wele employed ; but we cannot, as  
 fer as y se / this night passed, was taken by my folkes one of their  
 16 messangers, beryng letters to their kynge / whiche, yn the *presence*  
 of diuerse suche as be here *present*, y haue examyned, & founde  
 him trewe, seyng aftir the content of his letters / whiche letters, se  
 here yn my hande / & y wolde they be redde yn *presence* of you  
 20 alle, because ye may auise what is to do / and that ye may counselle  
 me to my honour / and so y pray you do" / thies letters, were  
 opende and redde by a Secretary of the Turkes / and were of such  
 matier as ye haue herd to-fore / and aftir they were redde, he seide  
 24 ayen vnto them / "ye se the termys, and how the matier stondes ;  
 I *perceyue* that, sethe oure comyng yn-to this reanne, oure tyme  
 hath not gretly emploied / nenirtheles, or y sholde departe with  
 shame / y had leuer dye / and if we wolde any moo folkes, we nede  
 28 but to sende for them / but me semeth that we be y-nough, bothe  
 for theym *withyn* & for them *without*, In-asmoche as we haue ben  
 so long vnfoughtē *with* / Also the harde ceason of wynter ap-  
 procheth / and it shold be full ill for any oure folkes to labor in-to  
 32 this euntre frome so fer, and also it shold be fulle grete charge &  
 dispence / and fulle harde for vs to gete vitaile / for the kynge of  
 Sizile diffendith it vs daily yn alle that he may / Now, alle thies  
 thinges considered, I haue assembled you alle, to haue your good  
 36 aduise and counselle, whether it be behofuH for vs to sende for moo  
 people or not / So I pray you that eche of you counselle me aswele  
 as ye can." Aftir that he had seide thies wordes / there were  
 many of theym that eche behelde othir / and thought wele yn their  
 40 mynde that the Turke was very that the sege endured so longe /

The Sultan  
tells his  
Council that  
their year's  
siege has  
been of no  
use.

[ If. 56, bk.]

He has  
Ferant's  
letter read  
to them,

says Winter  
is coming on,

and asks their  
advice.

wherof they were glad, for it sore annoied them, their beyng there  
 so longe / In asmoche as they sawe be no meane to be nerre the  
 wynnynge of the place than thei were the first day they came ther /  
 and daily sith had they hadde grete losse and damage, aswell doon 4  
 by theym *withyn* the place as by theym *without* / they had lost  
 many of their next frendes and of the moost worthy of their com-  
 pany / Some other preised moche the Turke their maister / and  
 thought if he reised the sege / it shold be to his shame / and yet 8  
 they sawe wele he lost his tyme, and had grete charge aboute  
 nought / wherof they abassht theym moche / And in especialt, how  
 the kynge of Sizile but litle a-fore had wonne that towne with  
 assaute / and hou they had biden there so longe space / & coude 12  
 not gete it; but moche preyed they them of *withyn*, of wisdom &  
 worthynesse, thinkyng that they passed alle other that they had  
 seen in their tyme. Thus euery man thought of the be'synesse  
 that belonged to the Tourke, that sawe this company alle sadde and 16  
 pensif / knewe wele that there was cause / and thought that he had  
 our lightly leide sege there / seyng the puissaunce that his enemyes  
 had / that night & day aboute the Sege, were in suche diligence and  
 trauaile, that they vnnethe of the host mighte haue any slepe / for 20  
 they were nightly distourbed of their reste, either by them *withyn*  
 or by them *without*; so seid he to his folkes: "I pray you remembre  
 wele thies matiers, for it nedith to take good aduise; for *our* abidyng  
 here is fulle noious and dangerous / & oure departyng shold be 24  
 shamefult / Neuirtheles, it semeth me one of thies ij. we most nedes  
 take; but it behoueth vs to thinke what were the best meane we  
 coude fynde / yestir even, aftir the takyng of fferauntes messanger,  
 some of you were here *with* me / and I pray to bethinke you what 28  
 were best / I was not aduised than to assemble you alle, as y haue  
 now done / and for this cause y shalt aske first of them that were  
 than with me / for that y know wele they haue had bettir leiser of  
 remembraunce than the remenaunt that be here" / Than asked he 32  
 the aduise of one of his moost preuy counsellours / and that, as he  
 trusted, toke his matiers moost to herte / And was, as aftir his lawe,  
 a right a notable and a wise knyght / the whiche, by the com-  
 maundement of his maister, refused not to sey his aduise, whiche 36  
 was this / "Sir, it is trouthe that yestir euen ye commaundid  
 diuers of vs to remembre on this matier, & so y suppose we haue,  
 euery man on his party / and as for me, y haue so thought on it  
 that y slepte no slepe this night / and the more y thinke on it / the 40

Some think  
 the siege  
 shouldn't  
 be raisd.

[1 leaf 57]  
 All are sad.

The Sultan  
 calls on one  
 of his most  
 trusted  
 Councillors.

- more me semeth it is harde and doutefull / Also your self haue  
 opened the difficultees any man may sey in this matier, aswele of  
 thabidyng as of goyng, and haue seide wele, as me semeth, that in  
 4 noon of those ij. is neither honour nor profit / and it behoueth to  
 auise som meane, as ye seide, to kepe your honour, and to eschewe  
 the contrary / fforsothe my thought hath ben this night, and is yet /  
 Vpon this meane with correccion / biseching you humbly, if y say  
 8 not wele, to pardone me. And this is the meane that moost may  
 be with your honour, as me semeth / if any meane may be founde  
 to take trews for a yere bitwene your Enemy and you / <sup>This Coun-  
cillor advises  
[1 lf. 57, bk.]  
a Truce for a  
year with the  
Christians;</sup> <sup>1</sup> And than  
 by honour may ye reise the seege / And this tyme hangyng, ye may  
 12 leue garrisons in this Reaume / and retourne your self this wynter  
 in-to your owne Reaume, for it is long sith ye were there / and  
 than may ye make a newe reise, bothe of people & tresour, and  
 than in the newe ceason, whan the grounde is replenyssed with  
 16 corne & gresse, than may ye come with grettir power than euir ye  
 did / for it is no doute of / whan your people and sogettes se your <sup>and then a  
fresh attack  
with more  
men;</sup>  
 grete desire and good entent, they wille helpe you more than euir  
 they did / ye haue sene wele the denoir that your Enemyes haue  
 20 made to haue socoure / and yet haue noon had / ner noon, y beleue,  
 shalle haue, for if any they shold haue had, ye may thinke weel,  
 seyng the long seege that ye haue holden, they shold haue had it  
 by this / wherfore it is to be thought that, if they be weel re-  
 24 mended heron, they wol be right glad of this trews / ffor they  
 wille thinke that, in that meane ceason, they shalle mowe haue some  
 helpe of the cristen / and at the last assemble, his estates to take  
 aduise of the guiding of his reaume. The maner hou men might <sup>the way to  
get the Truce  
should be  
further  
discust.</sup>  
 28 come to this trews, is not yet by me wel aduised / but if it please  
 you to conclud to this aduise, men may remembre the maner how /  
 and come hider to you ageyn affir dyner / euery man to sey his  
 aduise / Sir, suche is myn aduise at this tyme. I knowe no bettir,  
 32 albeit that I am redy to be confourmed to theym that y shalt here,  
 yif bettir counsell which right lightly may be done" / The Turke,  
 hering his knight and right trusty Counsellor thus speke, toke his  
 wordes right agreeably / for he sawe wele that by, other meanes, with  
 36 his honour might he not departe / a[n]d his abidyng was right  
 damageable / He asked than of many other their aduise / and, for  
 to aberge [so] the matier, euerichon folowed the same that the knyght  
 had seide / And saide that he was fulle wise / for the departyng of <sup>The rest of  
the Council  
agree.</sup>  
 40 the Turke was not possible by noon othir meane without dishonour /

and dred moche that they might not gete the trews *with* their honour & pleasir. The Turke, that saw this conclusion yn nombre of opinions, & alle one / saide to them / “yet of the maner hou this trews might be / we nor noon of you haue spoken / wherfore y wold 4 that, at iij. after non, eeche of you be here present / and that the meane while ye remembre eche one his party, how y may entre yn this matier to my honour, *without* shewing of any semblaunt of drede; and if the <sup>1</sup>meane might be founde, that it might be half by 8 their Request.” Thus eueri man departed til after dyner / and at the houre of iij. assembled there agein / and there shewed many resons and opinions / but hard it was, as they thought, to fynde hon this matier shold not come of the Turke, for they coude espie no 12 drede yn their Enemyes. whan the Turke, that moche desired to haue this thinge accomplisht, entred in-to his Tente / where as they alle were, & vnto hym did their dewte; & whan he was set in his chaier, he made them alle to sitte downe / & than he asked of 16 him that most pleased him, thanise of how he was remembred of this matier / that they were departed on / And this was one of his Capteynes, a passing wise man of werre / whiche answerd him in this maner / “Sir, ye shal ful porely be aduertised by me / for that 20 y haue litle knowlage in so high thinges / but sith that it pleasith you that y say in this matier what y haue thought and diuised, whiche is to litle effecte in regarde of that / that thies notable knyghtes herby shalle say / Natherles, y shalt shewe as y haue 24 thought, sith that ye be concluded to the trews, if ye may haue it / & wolde it were by the desire of your Enemyes, or at the lest half by their Request, whiche is an hard thinge to be done / for ye se not yn them no maner liklyhood touching this matier / If we had 28 any prisoners, notable folkes, outler of them *without* or of them *withyn* / then were it litle maistrie to fynde the meanes by their oune request & labour / but that wiH not be / for we haue no suche. A nothir wey there is / *withyn* the place there is many noble and 32 wise lordes, knyghtes and squiers of those whiche be prisoners ther / And y can thinke they haue so many prisoners there, that they wold *with* good wiH be delyuerd of som of them, for spendyng of their vitaille. Thus may ye sende vnto them for delyueraunce 36 of som of them, And in suche wise may the prisoners them self entre in langage *with* their maistirs, as it were of their owne mocione, for their delyueraunce / And thus, me thinketh, they may playnly touche of this matier to fieraunt, whiche, if he wiH, may 40

[1 leaf 58]

After dinner  
the Turkish  
Council  
reassemble,

and one of  
them

advises that,

In order  
to make the  
proposal of  
the Truce  
come from  
the Chris-  
tians,

they be askt  
to set free  
some of their  
Turkish  
prisoners,  
who can  
suggest a  
Truce.

- surely breke this matier, and bring it to conclusion with the kynge  
his maister / And y can thinke, seyng the grete reason that they  
haue, & be closed yn this towne, they haue not had <sup>1</sup>their ease in [<sup>1</sup> lf. 58, bk.]  
4 alle thinge; and whan the saide fferaunt shall se a meane of youre  
departyng, to his honour, he wold be right glad to brynge it to that  
conclusion / for his honour shall be wele saued by this meane. An  
other way also, vnder your correccion: It is longe sith that kynge  
8 fferabrace of Perce, that hath ben prisoner yn the handes of the  
kynge of Sizile, your enemy / and yet hath there ben no speche of  
his raunsome / ffor that ye trusted alway to recouer hym by  
strength, whiche, as me semeth, ye are fulle fer fro / ye may sende,  
12 if it please you, to the kynge of Sizile, desiryng him to put him to  
finaunce / and if he wille entende ther-to / than shalle ye haue a  
good colour to sende of your folkes vnto the kynge your brother,  
whiche may be aduertised by them to breke this matier vnto the  
16 kynge of Sizile, for a meane of his delyueraunce; and if he wille  
entende therto, ye may make a desire vnto him to haue a sauf-  
condite, for ij. or iij. notable knyghtes of youre house to go speke  
with youre brother for his delyueraunce / And by them may your  
20 brother be weel aduertised in euery thinge touchyng this matier /  
And thus semeth me, by one of thies two weies ye may not faile /  
but this mocion may be made as though ye knewe no thing therof /  
And that for the loue of youre brothir and of othir prisoners / and  
24 at their grete request, ye shalle be enclynable to this trews, whiche  
is, as ye shalle make semblaunt, right contrary to your pleasir. I can,  
as for my parte, noon othir thing deuise / yf y bettir coude, y  
wolde right gladly shewe it vnto you, and to my lordes that here be /  
28 yn whom y wote wele ye shalle fynde sadder aduise than yn me / I  
durst not refuse to sey myn opinion, sith that it pleased you so to  
ordeyne and commaunde me." Thus endid he his aduise. And  
the Turke asked forth of the remenaunt of his counselle that were /  
32 hou it thought them of this matier / so were there many other  
meanes & mocions made amonges them / but, in conclusion, the  
Turke liked best the two first waies that his knight had meued /  
and saide that he coude not thinke by that / that he knewe yn  
36 fferaunt, that he wold, be any cause or meane, haue a trews bitwene  
hym and the kynge his maister, without that he might se it more  
the profit & honour of his maister / than for his owne allegeaunce  
and ease / And ther<sup>2</sup>fore toke he this conclusion, to sende for a [<sup>2</sup> leaf 59]  
40 sauffcondite, that his folkes might speke with fferabras his brother / ask for a safe-conduct,

Or, as King  
Ferabras of  
Persia is  
prisoner in  
Sicily, the

Sultan can  
propose to  
ransom him,

and ask for a  
safe conduct  
for Envoys  
to see him,

and let him  
broach the  
Truce.

The Sultan  
resolves to

94 *The Turks' Proposal to ransom King Ferabras is laid before the King.*

and by hym this matier to be opende / This conclusion was taken,  
 and letters sent to the kyng of Sizile by two kynges of armes / In  
 and sends a  
 proposal to  
 the King of  
 Sicily,  
 to ransom  
 his brother,  
 the King of  
 Persia.  
 The Turkish  
 messengers  
 reach Naples.  
 The King of  
 Sicily  
 assembles  
 his Council,  
 and shows  
 them the  
 Sultan's  
 letters.  
 He appoints  
 one advocate  
 to argue for  
 the ransom,  
 and another  
 against it.  
 [1 lf. 59, bk.]  
 and heught to his brothier, the kyng of Perce, whiche at that tyme 4  
 was his prisoner / and had ben a grete while / and right fayn wolde  
 he haue hym ageyn / if by any fynauce he might haue him / And  
 for this, if his wille were to put him to fynauce, the Turke his  
 brother wolde sone purvey for his delyueraunce, In asmoche as he 8  
 was taken in his quarelle & seruise / And for to procede in this  
 matier, the Turke requyred to haue sauffcondite for iij. or iiij.  
 notable knyghtes, of whom he sent the names yn his letters / Thus  
 were the letters delyuerd forth / and they sped them so weel that 12  
 in litle while they came to Naples, where as the kyng of Sizile  
 was / and some were they condited by noble folkes yn-to the place  
 where the kyng was / and anoone was it tolde the kyng that  
 suche folkes were comen vnto hym from the Turke. the kyng 16  
 made them be brought vnto him, where they founde him wele  
 accompanied. the kynges of armes presented their letteres / and  
 the kyng of Sizile resceyued them, and redde theim, and sith  
 asked thofficers of armes if they had any othir thing in charge / 20  
 and they tolde their charge / whiche was suche yn substaunce as the  
 letters specified. & whan he hadde hird alle their message, the  
 kyng made them to be condite to their loggyng, and ther to be  
 wele acompanyed with alle the chere that men might make them. 24  
 on the morow aftir, he assembled his folkes of counselle, and many  
 of his Capteynes that were there with them, to whom he shewed  
 the letters that the Turke had sent hym / and the credence of the  
 letters / wherupone he asked their counsell & aduise yn this matier / 28  
 and wold here it debated and concluded before him self / So there  
 were ij. notable men bifore him to do this / that one ordeyned to  
 susteyne the delyueraunce of his prisoner / and the tothir to con-  
 trary it / He that susteyneth the deliuerance, shewed to the kyng 32  
 that this deliuerance was profitable for hym, and the reasons why /  
 sayng that his body was not ofte <sup>1</sup>in daunger / the delyueraunce of  
 kyng firabrace not helpe but to him / for ther was noon othir like  
 vnto him / also he was surely acompanyed / and of a long tyme 36  
 had not ben gretly annoied / and of liklyhood his strength sholde  
 rather encre[se] than empeyre. And the Turkes might was daily  
 dymnysshed and gretly damaged / wherfore him thought this  
 deliuerance was moost profitable to the kyng / for with his 40



- raunsone sholde he be of more power to damage his enemyes / The  
 tothir knyght, hering what he had purposed, answerd to the con-  
 trary, shewyng that at that tyme the Turke, whiche was brother to  
 4 kynge ffrabrace, helde seege before the place that the kynge had  
 conquered vnder him / yn the whiche was enclosed the flour of  
 knyghthode of that Reaume, and in especialle they to whom he is  
 prisoner / whoos, of right, the prisoner is, and noon others / and if  
 8 it so fortune that the Towne were taken by strength, whiche god, of  
 his mercy diffende / if it were so / by the kynge of Perce, alle they  
 that were withyn shold be rescowed, whiche is more worth than  
 iij. suche fynances as he is able to pay / "And for to answer to  
 12 this that ye haue seide, that none suffiseth to the deliuerance of  
 the saide prisoner, but the only body of the kyng; by that meane  
 that y say, ij. thousand noble men may be saue & brought agein by  
 hym. And to come to reason / who ought so weel to be bought  
 16 agein by hym, as they that toke hym, whos propre prisoner he is /  
 forsoothe noon, as me thinketh. Also remembre weel in what  
 perells and in what fortunes ye haue seen the kyng here present, &  
 souuerayn lord, be in his tyme, whiche, if he were prisoner, shold  
 20 be in auenture cuir to be had agein, if this kynge were deliuerd /  
 Thies thinges considered, if y were as the kyng, for no thing shold  
 he be delyuered / And whan it shalle please the kyng / vpon the  
 debates of vs two, that be but of litle effecte to the reasons of my  
 24 lordes that here be, he shalle here there aduise, and to do then  
 as him thinkith moost to his wele" / The kynge of Sizile, heryng  
 thise debates that were made, of good wille, and by noon hate, asked  
 of him that spake last his adnise, whiche seide vnto him / that  
 28 gladly he wolde say it / sith it pleased him so to commaunde him,  
 whiche was this / that in no wise men ought not, nor might not  
 entre in-to this matier without thauise and counselle of fferaunt,  
 whiche <sup>1</sup>was biseeged withyn the towne and hym, that now men  
 32 lightly might speke with hym, for the kyng might write vnto the  
 Turke, that without the aduise & counselle of fferaunt & Surnome,  
 to whom his brother was prisoner, he wold not procede in that  
 matier / and he thought be thise meanes the Turke shold be weel  
 36 content that the kynges folkes might go speke with fferaunt. And  
 ij. reasons he shewed / that meued him to gif this counselle / that  
 one is / that fferaunt is one of the wisist knightes of this Reaume,  
 whiche appereth weel by his werkes / And by this meane, if the  
 40 kyng sende vnto him of his folkes, he shalle trewly be asserteyned

The advocate  
against the  
ransom

urges that  
Ferant's inan  
took K. Fera-  
bras,

and that  
his release  
woud en-  
danger the  
King of  
Sicily.

The King  
of Sicily  
resolves

that Ferant  
must be con-  
sulted;

[ leaf 60]

and Prince  
Philip,  
who took  
Ferabras  
prisoner.

of the demeanyng of fferaunt and of the Towne / and theraftir  
 may he take counselle outhur of the deliuerance of his prisoner or  
 of the contrary / And the tothir reason that he shewed, was this /  
 that the seid prisoner had be taken twies by the handes of Surnome, 4  
 in the presence of fferaunt his maister / *with*out whom, by reason to  
 holde trewly the right of armes, the seide prisoner might not be de-  
 lyuered : "suche is the ordre of right and Iustice in dedes of armes /  
 as y haue alway vndirstande / And as yet y can thinke of the saide 8  
 prisoner, there hath be made no departyng bitwene them, nor noon  
 accorde nor apoyntement / and therefore, shortly to conclud my  
 matier / me thinkith, *with*out their aduise it [were best] to procede  
 no farther." Thus endid he / & it thought vnto the kynge and his 12  
 counselle that his aduise was right good & Resonable / And then  
 were letters writen and sent vnto the Turke, vndir suche fourme as  
 thei were concludid by the counselle / as ye haue herde. Thus were  
 the messangers delyuered, and had grete giftes, and were surely con- 16  
 dited, vnto the kynges power / and at their retourne agein vnto the  
 Turke, they founde the hoste gretly troubed / for greuously had  
 they ben assailed by them *with*-yn the Towne / and in especialle  
 toward the Turkes loggyng / for there were made alway the grettist 20  
 assawtes ; and trouthe it was, that they had ben so hourelly assailed  
 sith the departing of the messangers, that they neuir might be at  
 leiser to assemble in no counselle to-gidir / and diuers tymes wolde  
 they haue short termes of trews & *comunicacione with* fferaunt / 24  
 but he wold neuir answeere hem to any suche matier, for he had no  
 [1 if. 60, bk.] desire to dele nor trete *with* hem / wherof thei were full<sup>1</sup> soroufult.  
 So long contynued this maner of demeanyng, that the Turkes  
 folkes were right very / and endured grete payne & labour / 28  
 fferaunt, that was fulle wise, remembred weel this, & thought weel  
 it were litle maistry to annoy them / and thought he had ben idle  
 a gret while, and not mette *with* his enemyes / and so he saide to  
 his folkes, *with* a merry contenance / "I se weel we be so presed 32  
 on *with* oure enemyes to haue a treetee, whiche lettith not but yn vs,  
 for we may haue alle that we can resonably aske / And it is longe  
 sith oure neighbours & frendes herde any thing of vs, that knowe not  
 weel where we are / therfore it is good that to-morowe we make vs 36  
 to be knowen" / Alle they that were yn the place were ioyfulle of  
 these wordes, and in especialle Le Surnome and Athis / for in dedes  
 of armes were thei neuir satisfied / and so answerd they vnto their  
 maister, it shold be right wele done. "so helpe me god," seide 40

Letters to  
 this effect are  
 sent to the  
 Sultan,

who has in  
 the mean-  
 time been  
 harast by  
 after attacks  
 from Siz.

Ferant says  
 he will make  
 a grand sally  
 next day.  
 Prince Philip  
 and Prince  
 David re-  
 joice.

- fferaunt, "I thinke to-morowe, with the helpe of god, to take suche  
 acqueyntaunce amonges them, that they shalle not alle be pleased /  
 for it is longe sith we made theim any grete assaute / and therefore  
 4 go eueri man to his reste / and be vp to-morowe vpon the point of  
 the day / and eueri man serue god / and we shall do aftir as weel as  
 we may" / Thus eueri man went to reste him. And that night  
 made fferaunt al his smafl ordenaunce to be brought toward the Ferant  
 8 Turkes loggynge / and on that side of the Towne made he to lay his  
 grete Bombardes, ageinst the comynge of his enemyes / and there  
 made he to be kepte moo fayrer & sure watche. In the mornynge / musters his  
 toward the poynt of day, were his folkes assembled about him / so men early,  
 12 ordeyned he a good company, as him thought sufficiant y nough  
 to discomfite the wacche that was bifore / for to wyne the Turkes  
 Bombardes, for they thought it was light y-nogh to do / and of the and makes  
 first company he made Capteynes, Le Surnome & Athis / for wel Princes  
 16 knewe he that corageously they wolde do this entirprise / And the Phillip and  
 remenaunt of his folkes he guyded him self, for he thought the David cap-  
 first company shold haue nede of releef: thus ordeyned he the tains of the  
 assawte / And whan it was purueide, Le Surnome & Athis ordeyned first Batta-  
 20 their folkes redy at the gate that was assigned vnto them / than lion.  
 made fferaunt the yate <sup>1</sup>to be opende, and went out / and ascried [<sup>1</sup> leaf 61]  
 the Turkes wacche, and they wende fult weel to haue diffendid  
 them / but their diffence litle auailed / for Surnomes company and  
 24 Athis put as many to the swerde as they might gete, without They kill  
 takynge of any prisoners. This first company passith forth with so all the Turks  
 grete corage & hardinesse that, er the Turke and his folkes might they take,  
 be armed, thei came to his logging, killyng and sleynge alle that  
 28 cuir mette with them / and ouirthrowe Tentres and Pavilions; and  
 did so moche in armes that eueri man fled fro them / whan fferaunt  
 sawe them passe so fer / he knewe it shold be grete auenture of and go so  
 their retourne / and therefore toke he his feliship, & went aftir them / far forward  
 32 and passed by the place where the wacche had ben, and where that Ferant  
 moche of the Turkes ordenaunce lay, whiche he made labores, bothe has to march  
 men & wommen, haue in to the Towne / whil he went to releef his in support.  
 first company. and this assaute dured til the sonne risynge / and  
 36 there was the noise and the crie so grete / that men might not haue  
 herde the thondre / and the Turkes drewe them alle to the Turke,  
 so grete a multitude that fferaunt saw wele his folkes might not  
 long endure there / wherfore he made to blowe reetrete; and by He blows the  
 40 than had his first company taken so many prisoners, that they were retreat.

almoost as many as them self / and ther were many of theim noble  
 men / and of the Turkes counseil, suche as had ben at the communica-  
 cion of the trews / whan they withdrewen them / Surnome & Athis  
 were the last / and put their folkes & their prisoners bfore them / 4  
 and so moche endured they than, that it was meruaile; and had  
 not fferant their good maister than releued them, they had neuir  
 retourned agein in-to the Town / and it was meruaile to wite hou  
 many Surnome & Athis slowe at their re trayte / thus entred they 8  
 in-to the Towne with alle their prisoners, to the grete damage and  
 losse of the Turke, & litle vnto theim. In this grete brewte and  
 trouble, came agein the heraldes, that had ben messangers from the  
 Turke vnto the kyng of Sizile / and sawe the feeldes fulle of men of 12  
 armes, & had herde the noise and the crie more than ij. myle  
 thens / This auenture turned to grete damage & displeasir to the  
 Turke & his company / for thei sawe weel at length, by litle & litle  
 their power sholde empaire / for whan they with-drewen them they 16  
 knewe wele what Losse they had / for they founde of their folkes  
 moo then xv C. dede, and moo then ij C. prisoners taken. If the  
 Turke had grete sorowe, it is no question, for the losse was turned  
 vpon a grete party of the best of his hous / He coude not thinke 20  
 that Le Surnome nor Athis were any mortalle men, but ij. thinges  
 sente doune by the god of the cristen / for his destruction / for him  
 semed, and alle othir, that there might not be so moche worthynesse  
 yn the body of any erthely man, as he founde in them that day / 24  
 thus ranne<sup>2</sup> the renomee of them thorough alle the hoste / Thus  
 whan the Turke was withdrawn, the heraldes, that y haue tolde  
 you of bfore / entred in-to his Tente / and deliuerd him their  
 lettres, whiche he redde / and then made alle theim to come vnto 28  
 him, that were of his counselle / at that tyme beyng present / than  
 made he to come afore him agein the messangers / and commaundid  
 theim to telle suche credence as they had from the kyng of Sizile /  
 and they made their report weel and wisely, as they that were 32  
 of grete discrecion / whiche was suche as ye haue herde before,  
 accordyng to the intent of the lettres / And to make shorte tale, the  
 Turke agreed to the request of the kyng of Sizile right gladly / and  
 hadde good cause / for eueri day he sawe his strenght empayre / So 36  
 he made the Saufconditz to be made vp for suche names as the  
 heraldes had brought / and in alle haste the Saufconditz, made and  
 sealed, were sent agein vnto the kyng of Sizile. Ye may weel

They re-enter  
 Sizile, with all  
 their prison-  
 ers,

[1 If. 61, bk.]  
 200, and have  
 slain 1500  
 Turks.

The Heralds  
 from the  
 King of Sicily  
 reach the  
 Sultan,

who agrees  
 to the King's  
 request,

and gives the  
 safeconducts  
 he want.

thinke, that whan fferaunt and his company were entred agein in-to  
the Towne, they made grete ioy of the goode auenture that god had  
youden them that day. And whan he shold go to dyner, he made  
4 as many knyghtes and noble men sitt at his boorde as might haue  
Rome / and ij. boordes beside / aminges whiche company, Surnome  
and Athis were not forgotten, of whom he had more ioie than of  
any ertly men / and not without cause / for he had seen hem do  
8 in armes that day yneredibly / for they had taken with their awne  
handes vpone a iij.<sup>xx</sup> prisoners / and alwey deliuerd hem to othir  
for to kepe / while they contynued in bataile, without hauyng any  
regarde or remembraunce to couetise / as they that desired no  
12 thinge but to gete worship / and to do service to god in their  
cristen feith / for euerich thought in his owne mynde that they  
had y-nough in their owne contrees. hou be it, their ma'ners re-  
sembled no thinge kynges sones; they demeaned them liker pouere  
16 gentilmen / ffor albe-it there was noon so honorable as they two /  
yet for no fortune or auenture that couth befall them / they wolde  
neur take on them to be knyghtes, excusyng them alway by the  
symplenesse of their birthe / and they hadde reason not to take on  
20 them the ordre of knyghthode / for they were knyghtes long before /  
hou be it, nouthor of them vndirstode of other / what birthe they  
were of / And fferaunt their maister, at his dyner, reported to them  
their outrageous hardinesse, in maner blamyng them of that they  
24 had done that day / for in abidyng them had he almoost lost grete  
part of his people / and if he coude haue thought that they wolde  
thus haue be rewled, he wold rather haue lefte them keypyng the  
Towne / than haue had them forth to the assaute. thei answerde  
28 no thinge vnto their maister / but were al shamefast of his wordes,  
and thought that a nothir tyme they wolde not do so / but when  
they were in like caas agein / that purpose was alle lost and for-  
gotten / Aftir dyner, fferaunt made to visite his prisoners / and  
32 founde that he had a party of the grettist & moost prevy of the  
Turkes counselle, wherof he was right ioifulle, as reason was, and  
made them to be kepte, eueri man aftir his worship / and thus  
abideth he in his place, all ioyfulle & assured of his enemyes / til  
36 that he herde tidinges of the kyng of Sizile / as ye shalle here / ye  
haue here before weel vndirstande hou the Turke sent vnto the  
kyng of Sizile saufcondite for iij. of his knyghtes to come to  
fferaunt / This saufcondite was borne vnto the kyng by the same  
40 heraldes that late had ben with him fro the Turke, which Saut-

Prince Philip  
and Prince  
David, single-  
handed, took  
above 60  
prisoners.

[1 leaf 62]

But Ferant  
reproaches  
them for their  
dangerous  
hardihood.

The Turkish  
safeconducts  
are given to  
the King of  
Sicily,

who sends 4  
knights to  
Ferant.

[1 ff. 62, bk.]  
These 4 Sicilian  
knights

tell Ferant of  
the Sultan's  
wish to ransom  
K. Ferras,

and the  
King's wish  
for Ferant's  
advice.

Ferant tells  
the Sicilian  
knights of  
the prowess  
of Princes  
Philip and  
David.

condite the kynge resceyued, and made it to be redde / & founde  
that it was good & sure / Than purvaide he the iiij. knyghtes to go  
to fferaunt / and they toke leue of the kynge & the quene, & of their  
faire doughter, & of alle the ladies & gentilwomen / & tolde them 4  
whider they wente / and eche of theim made their recommenda-  
cions / And faire Iolante forgate not to recommaunde hir to  
Surnome; and she and alle the ladies seide amonges them / that  
fferaunt was a notable knyght, and honorably had borne him, and 8  
was worthy to be renommed of alle othir that they knewe / On the  
morow erly the knyghtes departid, and spede them so, that withyn  
litol while they came to fferaunt, of whos conyng he <sup>1</sup>was right  
ioyfuH / for they were his special frendes / & thought wele that 12  
they had brought some grete tidynges / he brought them to their  
loggynges / and made them all the chere that was in his power /  
& when they were rested a litil while, fferaunt and they went to  
counselle in-to a chambr / and there tolde they him eueri worde, 16  
hou the Turke had sent vnto the kynge of Sizile / and hou the  
matier was debated bfore the kynge, for the delyueraunce of kynge  
fferabrace / and the causes that bothe thies knyghtes shewed / and  
hou it was determined by the kynge and alle his counselle that, 20  
without thavice and agrement of him, the kynge wolde answe to  
no thyng of this matier, for suche causes as had ben elegged bfore /  
whiche thei declared and shewed vnto fferaunt / And whan he had  
herde thise tidynges, he thought the matier was of grete peyce / 24  
wherfore he wolde make no sodeyn answe, but made his delay  
vpone Surnome, sayng that the matier touched him, and that he  
ought to be called to this counselle / And this they apointed an  
houre, at whiche tyme Le Surnome shold be ther / and fferaunt 28  
seide that he was right wise, & might wele be called to counsell in  
eueri matier aswele as in that / bothe for his hie wisdome & grete  
vertu / and than tolde he vnto tho knyghtes of Sizile of the grete  
worthinesse of Surnome and Athis, & hou he sawe neur noon 32  
comparable vnto them, but that Surnome passed alle other / hou be  
it, Athis folowed moche the condicions of Surnome, bothe in honour  
& largesse / and in habilitie of his persone; and fferaunt saide there  
was no knight in the world might avaunte him of the company of 36  
Such two as he was serued with. Than he told hem hou le Sur-  
nome receyued Athis vnto his company / and in what maner he  
came / and hou ther was in Surnome noon envie / for he wold so  
gladly reporte the worthinesse and prowes of his felawe, that by his 40

maner and speche it semed he thought him self, nor noon othre,  
comparable vnto him / and reputed him self right ewrous that god  
had sent him suche a felawe / and than reherced he grete armes that  
4 the two felawes had done duryng the sege / and the drede that  
their enemyes had of theim, and of the grete comfort and hardinesse  
that his company toke in theim : and thorough their grete worthi-  
nesse the Towne was double encoraged / Thies tidynges tolde he to  
8 þe knyghtes of Sizile, <sup>1</sup>wherof they thought grete meruaile, and  
Iuged for trouthe that god had sente them this meruailous fortune,  
for sauacion of the realme / And so shewed it weel ; “ for they that  
no thinge were worth / thorough theim be at this day as valiaunt as  
12 men can fynde / and they that no thinge dred vs, be at this day  
the moost failyng and wrecchid nacion that lyueth ; and parde this  
werke may not be without miracle.” with suche language passed  
forth the day til the houre that they had taken to assemble agein  
16 in counselle, at whiche tyme Le Sournome was sent for to come  
amonges them / and at his comyng was the matier alle newly  
reherced / like as ye herde before, seyng vnto Le Surnome, that the  
kyng had gyyen them in charge to haue his aduise & agrement  
20 theryn. fferant had weel remembred the matier / and seid ther  
vnto the knyghtes, “ ye se weele in what caas we be / and the  
greatest harme that we endure, is the prisoners that ben here, þat  
gretely dispende our vitaille / hou be it, y thanke god we be yet  
24 resonably weel puruaile / wherfore it shalle not nede the kyng to  
haue no drede of vs / but that we shalle be able to abide them  
lenger than shal be their ease to lye aboute vs / & y purpose to put  
those that be noble men to fynaunce / and to put the tothir to  
28 dethe ; and by this meane shalle oure vitaille endure vs lenger. And  
as touchyng your charge of puttyng kynges fforabrace to fynaunce /  
y shal sone say as y thinke / suche thinge may befall that the  
kyng wold for no thing had put him to ffynaunce. It is a faire  
32 thinge whan he hath in his hande the same that is sufficient to  
delyuere him / if the caas so fortune. But if it were the kynges  
pleasir, vpon good apointment and good hostages, to enlarge him  
for a terme / perauenture for his delineraunce may be founde peas  
36 bitwene the kyng & the Turke / The visage of man makith vertu /  
for if he be present, he may more lightly fynde frenship in his  
brother and other frendes / than if he be stille in prison ; for his  
brother, seyng him in that daunger, shalle haue gretter pite and  
40 compassione of him / than he hath now / wherfore me thinketh his

[1 leaf 63]  
The Knights  
of Sicily  
recognize  
God's hand  
in the help  
sent.

Prince Philip  
attends Fer-  
ant's Council.

Ferant pro-  
poses to let  
his noble  
prisoners be  
ransomed, and  
the others  
kild.

Ferabras  
must be only  
enlarged for  
a time.

enlargyssing, surely made, shalle do but profit vnto the Realme."

After that fferaunt had thus seide / the knyghtes wolde wite the  
 [1 lf. 63, bk.] opinion of Surnome, whiche saide: "my lorde my <sup>1</sup>maister, that  
 here is, me thinkith hath taken the best way / & be thus doying / 4  
 the kyng shalt not be differred from his prisoner, but haue him  
 alway stille in daunger / and if it please the kynge of his grace, I  
 Prince Philip wolde of one thinge beseche him / that if king ffrabras be enlarged  
 thinks King for any terme / that or his departyng, he be sworne be his lawe, 8  
 Ferabras should be and the creance that he holdeth, that if there be any persone  
 sworn to free all Christian withyn the landes & possessions of his brother or of his / that hath  
 prisoners in Turkish any cristen prisoner that hath not ben in this werre / but that  
 hands, hath ben taken in passing or in goyng on pilgramage / that thei 12  
 may be delyuerd franke & quite, without constreyning them to  
 and to stop renay their feith / and also that fro hensforth there be no more  
 all oppression oppression nor hurt done to the poure labores & simple folkes of  
 of the poor. this lande / and in this is the Raunsome, for my part, that y wille 16  
 desire / As for the remenaunt, belongeth vnto my lorde my maister,  
 that here is" / fferaunt coude passing grete thanke to Surnome, for  
 his request / and thought weel that grete noblesse, fredom & pite,  
 meued him to that remembraunce. The knyghtes of Sizile saide / 20  
 that suche reporte as they had founde with fferaunt & Surnome they  
 sholde make vnto the [Turkes], & thought weel that they wold be  
 agreeable to alle this, without contraryng of any thinge / After thise  
 wordes they went out of the chambre / and came into the halle, 24  
 were was many a noble man / fferaunt sent for some of his  
 prisoners / for to wite if they wolde be brought to any ffynauce /  
 Some of amonge the whiche was one or two that had ben at the conclusion  
 Ferant's pri- that the Turke had taken in his counselle, touchyng the trews / 28  
 soners whan they came bfore fferaunt, they toke him a-part, and saide  
 vnto him: "my lorde, if it might be done, and with your pleasir,  
 we wolde fayne, if we might / speke with kynge ffrabras your  
 ask to be prisoner / bothe for the meanes of his delyueraunce & oures; we 32  
 allowed to with thynke to fynde suche a meane as shalle be grete weel vnto this  
 K. Ferabras Realme / and therefore remembre you / for we thinke yn this ye  
 about his shal do grete seruice vnto the kynge your maister." fferaunt,  
 ransom and heryng thise knyghtes thus speke, whiche by semyng were men of 36  
 their own. gret honour, called vnto him the knyghtes of Sizile / and made  
 [2 leaf 64] them to reherce agein in their presence like as <sup>2</sup>they had seide vnto  
 him. And whan the knyghtes of Sizile had herde them / they  
 withdrewe them, & counseled a litil to-gedre / and thought, seyng 40



- what they had saide, there coude no thinge but weel falle of their spekyng with kyng firabrace / than called they agein the prisoners vnto them / and asked them what hostage they wold lay for them /
- 4 and they saide it sholde be harde for them to lay suche hostages as fferaunt shold be content with / but, and it pleasid him, that one of them might go to the Turke, and that othir abide in hostage, on his lif / he thought it sholde suffice / fferaunt and the knyghtes
- 8 accorded herto / And thus that one of theim is departed vnto the Turke, whiche was right fer thens / and tolde the Turke alle the maner how his felawe and he had done with fferaunt and with the tothir knyghtes of Sizile, that were sent to fferaunt from the kynge,
- 12 whiche were accorded vpon good hostages, to lete his felawe and him go to kynge firabrace / whan the Turke herde this, he was right glad / and thought the matier was weel bigonne to breke to his honour / for eueri man might weel thinke, that what so euir
- 16 his brother or the tothir prisoners did / was for their owne deliuer-  
aunce / and not for the profit of the Turke, nor at his request / so alle thinge was concluded to the pleasir of þe knyghtes prisoners / and suche hostage delynered as fferaunt was content with / The
- 20 Turke charged his knyghtes, and praied them to employe wele this matier / and to shewe his brother playnly what case he stode yn / for he wende neuir to haue seen the Houre of his departyng, with his honour and lif / Thus departed the knyghtes, and came agein
- 24 to fferaunt / and in alle haste were their promyses accomplisshed / and they redy to departe and go with the knyghtes of Sizile / On the morow erly, the knyghtes of Sizile toke lene of fferaunt and of alle the company, to whom they seide a lowde / that it was the
- 28 moost honorable company that was that day vpone the erthe / & aught moost to be renommed in alle honour / sayng that the kyng thanked them alle, as them that he was asmoche biholden vnto, as euir was prince vnto his suggesttes, praing them alle way to contynue
- 32 their high & good corage / Than seide there many, with an high voice, "say vnto the kynge, oure soueray[n] lord / that for vs he
- 1 make no trettee nor apointment to his preiudice / for, bettir
- 36 dauncyng Iustes or any, othir disporte." The knyghtes answerd / "ye may be sure that god wolle gif you grace to departe out of this place with honour, and then shalle ye se the ladies, where as ye shalle be welcome / and right wele recomforted / & so haue they
- 40 grete cause / and wele y wote, whan ye come / we that no thing haue
- They propose as hostages half their number.
- One Turkish party goes to the Sultan, and reports proceedings.
- They return to Ferant,
- and start with the Sicilian messengers,
- [1 ff. 64, bk.]

and soon  
reach the  
King of  
Sicily.

The Sicilian  
Knights tell  
their King of  
Ferant,

and his pro-  
posal that  
K. Ferabras  
shall be only  
enlarged.

The Turkish  
Messengers

are allowed  
to see K.  
Ferabras.

done in armes, shal be litil set by / but alle out cast" / Aftir thise  
wordes, they toke leue and departed, seyng to alle the company /  
that they trusted within litil while they shold here good tidinges.  
Than spedde they so wele their iourney, that they came sone vnto 4  
the kyng, which grete desire had to here tidynges of fferaunt, & of  
this Towne, and of alle the company therin, & also to knowe what  
opinions fferaunt helde in such message as he sent hem, touchyng  
the delyueraunce of the Turkes Brother. It was not long aftir 8  
their comyng, but the kyng made them come vnto hym / whiche  
tolde hym hou they had sped in alle thinges like as is a-boue  
rehered / and howe they had by thauice of fferaunte / brought ij.  
knightes prisoners in their company / for they thought that the 12  
kyng, by heryng of their entent, might no thinge lese / And also  
shewed the kyng ferther of the opinion of fferaunt and of Sur-  
nome, whiche the kyng toke right wele in gre, & thought the  
enlargyng of kyng fferabrace bettir and more prope[r] for him than 16  
his clere deliueraunce / Than sent he forthe knightes prisoners, and  
asked them what their entent was / & they seide / that if it pleased  
him, they wolde speke with kyng fferabras. Than sent the kyng for  
alle his counselle / and shewed them the message of his knightes 20  
prisoners / and it thought them alle, that it was best to lete them  
speke with kyng fferabrace a-part, or yn what wise thei wolde / for  
thei thought their speche might litil hurte the kyng / but rather  
of lyklyhode be to his pleasir & profit, seyng the cas they were yn / 24  
And assone as this counselle was thus concluded, kinge fferabrace  
was enformed how thies folkes were come to speke with hym / and  
hou the king was wele content that they shold speke with him alle  
at their pleasir / and that they shold abide a day or ij., or as longe 28  
as it pleased him to telle him of their tidynges / and wherfore  
[<sup>1</sup> leaf 65] they desired to speke with hym. kyng fferabrace, that sith his  
takyng had herde no tidynges of his Brothir, nor of noon othir  
frende of his / was right ioyfulle to here tidinges of them; & yet 32  
the more, that the kyng was pleased that he shold speke with them  
a-part / for he wist weel he shold be the bettir, assertheyned of alle  
tidynges / than were thei sone brought vnto him. when they sawe  
him, they salowed him, accordyng to their dewte, the teeres falling 36  
downe from their visages, for pite of his longe enprisonment / And  
whan he espied that / he was in grete drede to here som euyl  
tidynges of his brothir or of his Nevewe; & anone as they that  
brought them were departed / he called them vnto hym / & asked 40

- them of alle their tidynges / for seth he was first prisoner, herde he  
 neuir tidynges / ffor the kynge of Sizile had so ordeyned / ffor him  
 thought / that if men shold telle him good tidynges, for his partie it  
 4 was not couenable / & what so euir any man tolde him of the wele  
 of the cristen partie, he wold not haue bileued it / but thought it  
 had ben rather seide yn maner of avaunt / and therfore the kynge  
 had ordeyned that no man shold telle him no tidynges / wherfore  
 8 he was now the more desirous to here of their tidynges, & askede  
 theim of his brothir, & of his nevewe, & of alle their armee. and  
 they tolde him of alle the certaynte / & of the cristen flete / hou it  
 fortunéd amonges theim by tempest; hou they were scaterd / &  
 12 many of them drowned, & a vesselle of theirs brake vpon the ryvage,  
 even aforne the Turkes Tentés, and many of them came to londe on  
 lyue, whiche were slayn alle at their landyng, sauf one, that Orkays,  
 the Soudans sone, toke with his owne handes, and of his delyner-  
 16 aunce / and how Orkays was takyn by him aftirward, & deliuered,  
 as is a-foré reherced / and than they tolde him of alle the worthy-  
 nesse of them withyn the towne / and in especial of him þat was  
 taken by Orkays, and of his felawe, Le Surnome, whiche passeth  
 20 alle othre; & tolde him of the losse that his brothir had had sith he  
 lay aboute the Towne / aswelle by them of the cuntre, as of them  
 withyn þe Towne, wherthorugh his folkes might neuir be out of  
 harneys, nor all-moost had neuir rest / and yet were they neuer the  
 24 nerre, by ought they coude se, of their conquest, but rather ferther  
 & ferther / than <sup>1</sup>they tolde him what direccíon had ben taken [1 lf. 65, bk.]  
 bothe by the Turke and by his counselle / and hou, if he might haue  
 departid bifore this tyme with his honour, he had be gone long or  
 28 this / but he coude fynde noon othir meane but this / Than tolde  
 they him alle the charge that they had from the Turk vnto hym  
 self, & of hem alle. king firabrace, hering thies tidinges, was  
 gretly abasshed, seying that in so litel while the worlde was  
 32 chaunged with them / for a-boute the tyme of his takyng, their  
 enemyes were in suche discorage that thei durst not wele be seen  
 at no scarmyssh / yet neuertheles thies tidinges moche displeased  
 him not / for he sawe wele therby som profit might growe to his  
 36 delyneraunce / whiche he desired ouir alle thing; so toke they  
 amonges them the best conclusion that they coude, to conduyte this  
 matier to the pleasir of his brothir and to the honour of him self,  
 and desired to haue certaine of the kynge of Siziles seruantes, and  
 40 Counselle to speke with him / and with suche as had be sent vnto

He asks for  
their tidings.

The Turkish  
Messengers  
tell K. Fer-  
abras how  
Prince Or-  
kays captured  
Prince David,

and was then  
taken by  
him;

and what  
losses the  
Sultan has  
suffered,

[1 lf. 65, bk.]

and how he  
wants to get  
out of the  
war.

K. Ferabras  
is abasht,

but sees that  
things may  
work to set  
him free.

He asks for  
Sicilians to  
confer with  
him.

K. Ferabras  
tells the Sici-  
lian Knights

that his  
brother, the  
Sultan, pro-  
poses to  
ransom him,  
and make a  
Truce with  
the King of  
Sicily.

The Sicilians  
say the King

will only  
enlarge him  
for a time,

him from his brothir / This came to the knowlage of the kynge of  
Sizile, and he assigned those same that he had sent bfore to  
fferaunt, to knowe his aduise and counselle / and whan thei were  
comen to kinge ffrabrace, he seide vnto them yn this manere / 4  
“ffaire lordes, the cause that I haue sente vnto the kynge to speke  
with some of his counselle is this / ye knowe wele that y haue ben,  
as me thinkith, right long a prisoner, to my grete annoy / ye se here  
also thies two knyghtes, that be prisoners aswel as y / hou be it, 8  
they haue not contynued so long, yet are they gretly annoyed, as it  
shewith wele by that y shalle shewe vnto you / they haue remembrid  
for their deliuerance, and haue ioyned me yn the matier with  
them / for this that they thinke the Turke wille be sonner con- 12  
fournable to any resonable apointment for my wele, than for  
theires, by cause y am his brothir; and y shal telle you what they  
haue aduised me: It is, that y shold make a request to be put to  
ffynance, and by meane therof the Turke shold be content to take 16  
trewes for half a yere, or a yere, with the kyng of Sizile & alle his /  
wherby the sege shold be reised, and prisoners delyuerd, aswele of  
one part as of othir / and by this meane bothe parties sholde ease  
them for that ceason / whiche, as me thinketh, sholde be a speciaH 20  
wele and comfort vnto this Reaume, that hath so long contynued  
yn werre. <sup>1</sup>This are the mocions that they made vnto me, whiche  
is to me right pleasaunt, if they coude haue the power to bring it to  
the same concludione with my lord, my Brother / wherof y haue 24  
grete doute, seyng that he lith at the sege bfore his Towne, that  
but late was wonne from hym / Neuirtheles, if it please the kynge  
of Sizile to entende this matier, I wold employ me to the same  
entent / and require alle my frendes to giff the Turke counselle to 28  
the same” / whan the knyghtes of Sizile had herd this mocione of  
kyng ffrabras, they seide vnto hym / “fforsothe, sir, or this tyme  
we haue herde the kyng, oure souuerayn Lord, say / that his entent  
was neuir to deliuer you till the warres were ended bitwene the 32  
Turke, your brother and him, without ye were rescowed by force /  
hou be it, we knowe not whether he wold be content, vpon good  
hostages, to enlarge you at your request, for to fynde some tetry of  
peas betwene your Brother and him, whiche thinge we alle, his com- 36  
pany, [desire]. And if vpon this wele ye wille speke and charge vs,  
therwith, we wol make report vnto the kynge therof, and othirwise  
not” / Kynge ffrabrace helde longe vpon his vttir delyuerance /  
But the knyghtes of Sizile wold in no wise agree therto, seyng that 40

- they were, alle be it they were not worthy, of the kynges counselle /  
“and if we shold gif him avise of youre delyueraunce, and not  
assured of peas, we were not trewe vnto him ; wherfore be sure we  
4 wille neur speke therof as long as we lyue, without the warres be and then only  
if the war is  
stopt.  
ended / But if that were so, we wold right gladly employ vs to your  
request / and now wille for your enlargyng, vndir suche fourme as  
we haue seide you / trustyng the sonner to come therby to the weel  
8 of peas / ffor we be sure ye wille more largely employ you therto, ye  
beyng in daunger, than if ye were at your liberte.” ¶ Aftr alle  
thies wordes, he trusted to come to his delyueraunce. Natheles,  
kyng ffrabrace was content that they shold speke to the kyng  
12 for his enlargyng. The knyghtes seide, that with right god wille  
they wold so do / And thus departed and came vnto the kyng of  
Sizile, and made their report, as ye haue herde / and founde the  
kyng enclynable y-nough to entende to thise matiers, seyng the  
16 counselle that he had hadde / and in abregging this matier without  
moo wordes, they were concluded that, vpon good hostages, suche as  
the kyng of Sizile was pleased with / that kyng ffrabrace was K. Ferabras  
is set free  
for a time,  
20 his leue, and of the quene and of their fair doughtir / & of alle the [ 1f. 66, bk.]  
ladies & gentilwommen. The kyng made him honourably to be  
condyte / And so wele sped he him / that in litil while he came to and goes to  
his brother,  
the Sultan.  
the Turke / whiche made him right grete chere / and so did alle  
24 they that were there with him / this night was he gretly fested and  
welcomed of his Brothir, and had moche talkyng to-gedir / for he  
was a worthy knight, a passing wise man in grete matiers. So  
founde he his Brother alle of othir opinion than he lefte him /  
28 a[n]d so did he alle them that he spake with ; wherof he had grete  
mervaille. In litil while knewe he alle the pleasir of his brothir /  
and sawe the maner of the sege / whiche thought him right  
straunge. He sawe the fersnesse of them withyn the Towne / and  
32 herd reported the grete damagis that they had done to the Turke  
and to alle his company : the prowesse of Surnome, and Athis his  
felawe, was often rehersed vnto him. Thus many tidynges herd  
he / but noon to the honour of his brothir, nor of his partie, wherof  
36 he was right sorowfuł, and thought wele in him self that it was  
nedefult to haue a longe trews / for those folkes were discouraged in  
alle pointes. Than put he him in diligence to this trews / and othir  
notable folkes, and laboured it as shortly as they coude, so that the  
40 trews was taken bytwene them for a yere / and whan the surtees He works  
for a Truce ;  
and one is  
arranged  
for a year.

were made, sworne, and ensealed, the Turke departed from the seege / & made alle prisoners to be yolden agein, aswele of one party as of othir, saving kyng firabrace, whiche was but enlarged. And for asmoche as fferaunt and his company hadde moo prisoners 4 than the Turke had / he had in recompense a C. thousand besauntes / and eueri besaunt worth a Docket / and, beside that, the Turke deliuered agein ij. Townes / and deliuerd to the ponere folkes of those Townes alle that they had lost / ¶ Now hath the Reaume 8 of Sizile endured this ij. yere yn grete peyne and mysery / But sith the comyng of Surnome it began alle othirwise to turne. ¶ Thus departed the seege from byfore the Towne, to the grete honour of the kyng of Sizile, and of them *withyn*. thorough alle the Reaume 12 This trews was cried & pub[l]ished / wherof Surnome & Athis were right sory / for they thought a long terme to be a yere in peas / seyng the warres be not ended ; and they purposed not to departe before the ende of the warres. The kyng of <sup>1</sup>Sizile, that saw 16 him thus yn peas for a yere, bithought him what he might do alle that ceason / where of a longe while afore he had not ben idle so gretly / and so he sent for fferaunt, whom he desired moche to se / for moche he thought him bounden vnto him / and praied him that 20 he wolde bringe *with* him bothe his seruantes, for moche desired he to se them, for the grete renome they were of ; and so did alle they of his court, bothe ladies & gentilwomen, and knyghtes & squyers, & alle othir / Anon as fferaunt had resceyued his letter to 24 come to the kyng, and aftir that he had departed right largely *with* the noble of his company / so that they alle were wele content / he wente in alle haste to the kyng / to whom it is not to be asked if he were welcome / where at his comyng the kyng toke him in 28 his armes, seyng / “my frende, ye haue don so moche for me and myn honour, that y am alle youres” / Than toke he Surnome in his armes, and [had] of hym ynly grete ioy / than fferaunt shewed Athis vnto him, of whom he had herde so moche worship / & then he in 32 like wise welcomed him fulle honourably / seyng : “what shal y sey vnto you, faire lordes / ye thre be the right arme and diffence of my reaume” / Aftir this, fferaunt & his company went vnto the quene, and ladies & gentilwomen, whiche fulle honourably and ioi- 36 fully welcomed them / And moche was Athis loked on amonges hem / for they had not sene him bifore / and they seide that god had gyuen him grete grace / for heryng sey / his worthines was meruailous / and his habilitie suche *pat* there was none comparable 40

Prince Philip  
has happily  
changed the  
state of  
Sicily.

[1 leaf 67]

The King of  
Sicily sends  
for Ferant,  
and Princes  
Philip and  
David.

They come,

and he joy-  
fully wel-  
comes them.

So do the  
Queen and  
the Ladies,

- to him, saf le Surnome, that passed al the worlde. This day passed forth in pleasir and in disporte / and euery day after they disported them with the ladies and gentilwomen yn alle honour. The kynges and Princess  
4 doughter, þat was so faire, as ye haue herde bifore / was right glad to haue thies gentilmen in hir company, without thinkyng of any harme or of any grete loue / hou be it, and hir fortune were to marye / perauenture she wold a sholde resemble one of them two /  
8 and in especial, Le Surnome. & if she had knowen that he had be either a kynges sone, or a grete prynce, she wolde haue gyuen hir herte vnto hym a-fore alle othir / But in asmoche as she thought he was but of smalle reputacion in regarde to hir estate, she had no  
12 suche ymaginacion, but <sup>1</sup>only to be accompanied with them in alle honorable disportes, and to make them frendly chere more than any othir / for the grete renome they were of, and for the good seruise they had done to hir fadir / Thus endured they a grete  
16 while in makyng Iustes, and turnays, and alle other disportes, for they had no thing ellis to do / And yn euery thinge Le Surnome & Athis passed alle othir / Now leuyth the tale a while to speke of the kyng of Sizile and of his company / that restith them this  
20 wynter, as ye haue herde, and retourneth to speke of the Turke, of his Brother, and of their company. [*Illumination: March of Sultan, Knights, &c.*]  
**A**ccordyng to suche apointment as was taken, the Turke The Sultan  
24 departed fro the seege and alle his company, & drewe him withdraws,  
in to the gretest towne that he helde at that tyme, that he weary, to  
had conquered in Sizile / so very and trauailed with the warres, his biggest  
that almost he might be no weryer, and so were alle his folkes, fro town in  
the moost to the leest; for, moche payne and mysery had they Sicily,  
28 endured at the sege, as wele of famyne as othirwise / and the Turke thought wele, that he was escaped with his honour fro the worst bargayn that he was atte alle his lyue, by the meanes of his Brother / and no man coude sey that this trews that was taken, had  
32 be for his pleasir / or by his cause, but only by the request of his Brother and othir of his folkes that had ben prisoners / Aftir that he and his folkes were a litil rested / he concluded to leue grete then garrisons all his  
garrisons / and his places wele furnysshed, and he and his Brother conquests  
36 to retourne in-to their Contre / and seide vnto his folkes that he lefte ther / "that he wolde not faile at the ende of trews to be there again, so wele accompayned, that he wolde <sup>2</sup>neurir departe [2 leaf 68]  
thens til he had accomplisshed alle his pleasirs." These titynges and goes  
40 wele ordeyned / he departed out of Sizile, & drewe vnto his owne home.

There, Prince  
Humphrey of  
England lies  
in prison.

The Sultan  
sends for  
him;

and as he's  
thin and ill,

[1 lf. 68, bk.]

gives him up  
to K. Fera-  
bras, who

soon gets him  
into good  
condition,

Marches / and his brother *with* him / whan they came ther / it is no  
doute but he was honorably resceyued of alle his suggettes / for of a  
grete while he had not be *with* hym, he abode there a ceason or he  
wold speke any thyng of suche purposes as he entended / But kyng 4  
ffirabrace foryate not the couenaunt he had made at his enlargyng,  
for he had sworne vpone his lawe / that he sholde ayen alle cristen  
prisoners that were in any Londe of his brothers or his / And in  
the same towne that his Brother and he lay, was yong Humfray 8  
prisoner, the kyng of Englonde's sone / hou be it, noman knewe  
what he was; & of that yonge prisoner was kyng ffirabrace  
enfourmed / and than wente he vnto the Turke, and tolde him of  
his promes that he had made at his departir out of Sizile / And 12  
the Turke asked if any prisoners were in that Towne / and he seide  
“yea” / for there had ben a vesselle takyn *with* xiiij. persones yn  
it / wherof they had reserued but ij., and that one of them dyde,  
and that othir is yet alyue, a yonge man so megre & seke, that, as 16  
men thought, he might lyue no while / Than the Turke sent for  
him; & whan he sawe him, he asked him of whens he was / this  
yonge Humfray; þat was so our come as he that neuir bi-fore had  
ben acostomed yn suche mysery & pouert / answerd *with* low 20  
vois & feble, “fforsothe, sir, y am cristen, borne of the reaume of  
Englond / and my name is Ector / By fortune y arrayued here / grete  
almes it had ben for them that toke me to haue put me to deth /  
but sith it pleaseth god that y endure this longe payne, y am con- 24  
tente.” The turke, that sawe him megre, & alle out of likyng, was  
no thing sory therof. And notwithstanding / that by his owne  
counselle and his agrement / his brother had made thus promys, yet  
thought he alwey in his mynde, that asmoche as he might, his 28  
brother shold neuir fynde prisoner / but that he wolde put them to  
dethe or they came yn his brothirs handes; for if he coude knowen  
of any prisoner bi-fore his brothir / he wolde haue made him  
secretly be put to dethe / But for the symplesse & pouert of his 32  
persone, he gruggid the lesse his deliuerance, & toke him vnto <sup>1</sup>his  
brother / that ful grete pite had of this yong man / & sent him  
vnto his loggyng / & made him to be eased & serued of that was  
nedefulle to hym, made him to be bayned and newe clothid of alle 36  
that longed vnto him / and wythyn little while, by the comfort  
and helpe of kyng ffirabrace, he amended / and came ayen to his  
grete bewte / so that eueri man had ioy to beholde him / kinge  
ffirabrace thought, assone as he was hole, and that he might ride, 40



- that he wolde sende him yn-to the handes of cristen men / And  
many tymes he wold biholde him / & thinke yn his mynde that they  
were passing wele fetured / and goodly folkes of Englonde, ffraunce, and admires  
his beauty.  
4 & Scotland, for by they were of his marches, he remembred of Sur-  
nome & Athis, that he had sene at his departir out of Sizile / and  
thought that Ector was moche of the same age / and if Surnome had  
him, he supposed he wolde be right lothe to lete him oute of his com-  
8 pany / And than wolde he thinke / if he had the hardinesse of one  
of them / a shold not faile to do grete hurte vnto their party, if he  
lyued long. Than was he somtyme yn wille not to sende him ; and  
than wold he thinke ayen / that he had sworn his feithe, whiche  
12 he wold not breke, to dy for it / In this ferme wille contynued he,  
and on a day wente to se the Turke, his brother, and brought with  
him Ector / whiche aftirward he repented / for vnnethe might he  
bryng hym ayein / as ye shal here / The Turke bihelde this yong  
16 man that was with his brothir, & thought wele he was a straunger /  
for he knewe hym not / he was so gretly chaunged & amendid sith  
he sawe him / and wele he thought he semed ful like to come to  
grete honour / wherfore he axed his brother what he was ; and he  
20 tolde him it was the cristen man that was delyuerd vnto him the  
last day / "fforsothe," seide the Turke, "I knewe him not, he is so  
meruailously amendid / my hert yeueth me, if he be deliuerd, that  
he shold do vs grete damage / wherfor, my brother, ther nedith  
24 neurir none knowe of this matier / and y pray you, for the wele of  
vs and of oure lawe, to be agreable that he may be some night  
secretly drowned / for ye knowe wele that by the comyng of one  
straunger yn-to Sizile, were ye taken / and almoost to the destruc-  
28 cion of vs alle / wherfore y holde youre conscience more hurte,  
<sup>1</sup>what othe so euir ye haue made, if ye deliuere him, than to do as [<sup>1</sup> leaf 69]  
.I. sey / for the grete losse of oure folkes that may come by hym /  
wherfore y pray you, brother, to be agreable to my desire / and y  
32 wol take the synne on me / And as for shame, ye may noon haue /  
for neurir noon shalle knowe it" / whan ffrabrace herde his brother  
sey thus / and sawe the deth of Ector his prisoner redy, if he  
socoured him not / he was so wroth and sory / that of a grete while  
36 he coude not answere, for right moche loued he Ector ; and also in  
his lawe he was right trewe and a noble knyght, whiche shalle  
shewe by hym yn alle his werkes. The Turke, þat sawe hym in  
grete thought / and that he answerd not / asked hym ageyn /  
40 "how say ye hereto, faire brother" / "fforsothe," seide ffrabrace,

One day  
K. Ferabras  
takes Prince  
Humphrey to  
see the Sultan  
again.

And as he  
looks so well,

the Sultan  
proposes to  
have him  
quietly  
drownd.

This angers  
K. Ferabras,

and he says  
that he has  
sworn to free  
Christian  
prisoners.

If the Sultan  
kills Hum-  
phrey,

K. Ferabras  
will at once  
give himself  
up to the  
Christians.

[1. l. 69, bk.]

He will keep  
his promise,  
so far as he  
can.

"I haue fere to sey any thyng that shold displese you / and there-  
fore was y so longe stille / but, sir, ye are mighti, and a roialle  
kyнге, yn whom aught to be founde more trouthe than yn a meane  
persone. And y sey for me, I am not so mighti a kyнге as ye 4  
be / albeit y am your brothir and a kyng / I haue promysed my  
feith, suche as ye knowe by youre owne agrement / and if y shold  
be forsworne for one only man / forsothe, my lord, it shold be noon  
honour to you nor me / And where as ye say, it shold neuir be 8  
knownen / trewly y shold be as sorowfulle to knowe my self vntrewe  
as alle the worlde knewe it. what wold men sey if it were knownen  
that y shold put this cristen man to dethe / that was delyuered yn-  
to my kepyng for his surete? they wolle likken me to a Bocher that 12  
gressith beestes / and than putteth them to dethe / wherefore, y  
biseche you, my lorde, take no displeasir though y consente not  
herto / for if it so befelle that ye wolde put him to dethe, as ye  
may wele y-nough, if it please you, I make promesse to alle the 16  
goodes that we bileue on / that y shal neuer aftir abide yn your  
seruice, but rather go yelde me prisoner agein, and holde my feith,  
and perauenture do som thinge that shalle displease you / what en-  
sample shalle oure folkes take at oure dedes if, for so litil a thyng, 20  
we shalle breke oure feith and oure promesses" / The Turke, heryng  
his brother thus spekyng, saide vnto him thus / "he neuir made no  
suche promys, but only for his wele / and as for any promys, but  
only for his wele / he might breke it whan he wolde / for he was 24  
not sworne therto / and if it were to do agein, he wold neuir do so  
moche for him / And said he wold <sup>1</sup>sende to alle his officers thorough  
his reame / that if they had any cristen men in their handes, that  
they shold put them to dethe / and seide that he was not bounde to 28  
be sugget vnto his brother" / And whan kyng ffrabrace sawe the  
Turke wrothe / he answerd right humbly / seyng, "my lord, y  
neuir made promes but by your auctorite. And by this meane,  
saving your correccion, be ye bounde as wellle as I. Neuirtheles, ye 32  
may do it as it pleasith you; I am not bounde to noon ympossi-  
bilite / but y say for me, y shall trewly kepe alle that y haue  
promysed as longe as it is possible for me" / The pouere Ector was  
yn the chambre alle this while, & thought fulle litle where aboute 36  
they were / for he wende fulle wele to be assured of his departyng /  
Sone aftir kyнге ffrabrace toke leue of his brother, right sorowfuлл  
& wrothe, & thought in his mynde to kepe his prisoner as surely as  
he might, for he drede moche his brother / and so he had cause, for 40

assone as he was departed / he ordeyned folkes to sle yonge Ector, if they might fynde him at any tyme from his brother. he was so angry with the wordes that his brother had seide vnto him, that he  
4 thought to be avenged on Ector. On the tothir party kynge ffrabras knewe his brother right cruelle / wherfore he had grete drede of his prisoner, and ordeyned that he shold haue a chambre withyn his owne loggyng / and a xvj. or xx<sup>ti</sup> men to awaite aboute him /  
8 whiche he charged, on their lyues, to awaite wele aboute him / and to diffende him to their powers from alle daungers / and they obeid his commaundement without departyng fro hym at any tyme / Thise folkes that the Turke had youen yn commaundement  
12 to slee Ector, put them in alle the deuoir they coude therto; but they coude neuir fynde the meanes to haue him / kynge ffrabras thinkyng alwey on the tyranny of his brother, concluded in him self to sende a-wey his prisoner be night / and to make him surely to  
16 be conduyte in-to some cristen lande / and for cause his goyng shold not be espied, he made tho men that he had apointed aboute Ector, to kepe stille his chambre ij. or iij. daies after he was gon, like as he had be stille there / Then tolde he vnto Ector alle thentent of his  
20 brothir / and how he was displeased with hym bicause he wold not breke his promes / and therfore wold he sende him nowe thens / and delyuer hym to officers <sup>1</sup>of armes, to whom he had grete trust /  
& ordeyned them to ride aH the night / and to kepe the wodes on  
24 the dayes / than delyuered he hym to his guydes, & charged them on their lyues to brynge Ector to sauft. Than he made Ector to promyse hym that he shold yelde him prisoner to one that hight Surnome, that was seruaunt with the SenesshaH of Sizile / Ector  
28 toke leue of the kynge his maister / and offerd hym aH the seruice that he might do / so it were no preiudice vnto his feith / And whan it was night, he departed / and they that shold conduyte him / so secretly, that they were espied of no body. ¶ Nowe  
32 retourneth the tale vnto the Turke, that aH-wey contynuede stille in his grete cruelte / He called them that he had commaundid to slee Ector, and asked them / "howe is it that ye haue not done as y haue commaunded you" / and they seide, "that þei might not" /  
36 for eueri day was he with kynge ffrabras / & on nightes had he xx<sup>ti</sup> men waityng on him / when the Turke herd this, he was gretly displeased / In so moche that in a fury he commaundid that iij. or iijj. score of his folkes shold breke vp the dore where as Ector was /  
40 and to slee him / and let for no man / this was apointed to be doné

The Sultan tells some of his folk to kill Prince Humphrey.

K. Ferabras sets 20 men to safeguard Prince Humphrey,

[1 leaf 70]

who is to start at night,

and give himself up to Prince Phillip.

Humphrey starts.

on the morow / Here-before ye haue herd howe kynge firabras  
 made to kepe Ectours chamber, like as he had ben there, to thentent  
 that he might be a good wey of / or his brother knewe of his  
 departing / ffor he knewe wele, and his brother might gete him / 4  
 ther shold be founde yn him non othir mercy but deth. Thus  
 was Ector departed ij. daies bifore the Turke had made his entir-  
 prise vpon him / So the seconde day at night, they came vnto  
 the chamber, where as they wende to finde Ector / purposyng 8,  
 verily to haue slayne hym, not lettyng for noman. Thus brake  
 they vp the dore alle sodeynly vpon them that kepte the chambre /  
 and it was in kyng firabras owne logging / wherof the crie & the  
 noise was suche, that kynge firabras himself cam thider, and many 12  
 of his folkes with him / And whan they sawe the kinge come, they  
 withdrewe them alle, sauf x. or xij. persones that bode stille ran-  
 sakyng the chambre, whiche kynge firabras made to be hewen  
 bifore him. Thise tidinges came to the Turke; and it was tolde 16  
 him alle the maner how they <sup>1</sup>came in-to the Chambre / where as  
 they founde not Ector, and howe the noise & the crie was suche,  
 that his brother came thider, and slowe x. or xij. of his folkes / The  
 Turke, herynge this tale, was right sorowfuH and wroth / and sent 20  
 for his pryuee counsell / and tolde them aH the matier, without  
 hiding of any-thing / bothe of the wordes that were bitwixt his  
 brother and him / and how, for displeasir therof, he wold haue put  
 Ector to the dethe / and in what wise / and how his brother was 24  
 displeased / and had put x. or xij. of his folkes to dethe / which  
 was to his grete shame and displeasir / whiche he wold not leue so /  
 wherfore he asked their best counsell and advise / ffor if he shold  
 folowe his owne wiH / he wolde do his brother a grettir annoy and 28  
 displeasir than he had done him yet. They of whom he asked  
 counsell were wise, & perceyued wele by his owne tale that the  
 defeaute was yn hym / wherfore they seide thus vnto him, "Sir,  
 saving youre displeasir, ye haue ben *with* my lorde youre brother 32  
 to ouir hasty; for, as vs thinkith, tho wordes that he had vnto you  
 meued hym of fre and noble corage; and ye haue done him a  
 vilany / sith, in his owne loggyng ye wolde make to slee his folkes;  
 for the prisoner was his. And to make folkes come yn be night 36  
 with force of armes in-to the loggyng of so noble a kynge as he is /  
 it semeth vs a grete offence / seyng he hath done so moche for you /  
 we thinke he wil take this in grete displeasir / And we drede  
 moche, yf this matier be not the sonner appesed, grete inconvenience 40

2 days after,  
 the Sultan's  
 men break  
 open King  
 Ferabras's  
 door,

[1 16, 70, bk.]

but find  
 Prince Hum-  
 phrey gone.

The Sultan's  
 Privy Coun-  
 cil reproach  
 him

for his be-  
 haviour to  
 K. Ferabras.

- may growe therof / The kynge your brother is a Lorde of suche  
 corage as ye knowen weel / and for you, and yn your werres, he  
 hath aventured body and goodes, and standith at this day yet  
 4 prisoner / his men and his sogettes haue done you goode service /  
 wherby many of them haue lost their lyues / and this is a smalle re-  
 warde that ye yelde him / wherfore we meruaile nought though he  
 be displeased / considering like as he seide vn-to you suche promesse  
 8 as he made / to deliuiere all the cristen prisoners that were in any  
 partie of youre Reaume / bothe by your owne pleasir & agreement /  
 wherfore it were litle meruaile if, for the despite that ye haue done  
 him / he meued werre against you / So moche as he hath done for  
 12 you a-fore this" / "By my trouthe," seide the Turke, "if <sup>1</sup>y coude  
 thinke he wolde do so / I sholde sone deliuiere the worlde of  
 him" / Than his counsell answerd him, "Remembre, sir, what  
 sholde falle ther-of if ye put hym to dethe / ffor he hath fair childre,  
 16 whiche shall not be so nigh of blode vnto you as he is / nor in  
 affection / whiche wolde rekke lesse to meue werre to yow-ward  
 than he wolde / also he is kynge of a noble & a mighti Reaume /  
 and wel beloued theryn / and of the moost worthy folkes that ye be  
 20 serued of this day, be his sogettes / and they loue him asmoche as  
 is possible for any sogettes to loue their Lorde / Thinke ye than to  
 be without werre, by sleynge of hym? nay, nay / ye may be sure /  
 and that were shold stike nerre you than the werres of Sizile / And  
 24 more to your shame & reproef." The Turke, hering thies wordes,  
 knewe wele that thise folkes seide hym trouthe / and than seide he  
 vnto them, "it behoueth to knowe howe my brother takith this  
 thing to hert / I trowe he wolde be wele pleased if ye went to hym /  
 28 and if ye thinke it be to, y am content / and that ye say vnto him,  
 that y knowe nothings of alle this / and if any haue offendid hym, it  
 shal be wele amendid / And if he seme not myn amendes y-nough /  
 if he require me of Iustice / y shal do it him. And ye may sey  
 32 hym, that y am right sory of this auenture / and if y had knowen  
 it a-fore, y wold for no thinge haue ben agreable ther-to / how be it  
 y was not pleased of the deliuerance of the cristen man, ffor the  
 experience that y haue sene in two only men to oure grete damage /  
 36 I pray you do so moche if ye may, that this thinge be wele appeased /  
 ffor if it be ferre spoken of / there may growe litle honour therby  
 to either of vs bothe." They were glad whan they herde their  
 maister thus speke / for the matier was to hym right shamefull /  
 40 and they, as good seruauntes, to appease it, toke the charge on them

The Privy Council remind the Sultan of K. Ferabras's great services.

[1 leaf 71]

They warn him against killing Ferabras.

The Sultan asks his Council to

apologize to K. Ferabras for him.

K. Ferabras  
tells the  
Turkish  
Council  
[1 lf. 71, bk.]

how badly  
the Sultan  
has treated  
him.

He will go  
home.

K. Ferabras  
forthwith  
rides to  
Persia, and  
is welcomd  
there.

Prince Hum-  
phrey keeps  
to the woods.

with right good wille, and departed from the Turke, and went to the kynge his brothir / whom they founde all redy to ride / and whan they came, they spake with hym at good leiser, and tolde hym in substaunce alle the wordes as ye haue herde before / And than 4  
kynge ffarabrace made alle his compleynte vnto them ful pitously / and seide, "my frendes, y cannot bileue that noon of you were consentyng or agreable to do me so grete a wronge, <sup>1</sup>ffor y haue serued my Lord my brother, with my body, my goodes, and alle my 8  
power, as longe as y might, so that y am now prisoner, and in way of destruccion / And thus, in his Towne, and of his folkes, there hath be done to me so grete Iniurye, that I am all abashed to se his men come yn *with* force of armes, to breke vp the dore on my 12  
prisoner, to haue murthred hym, as they saide, & haue hurte & wounded my folkes; and y haue none othir socour but to saue my self. fulle long shold it be, or a straunger might be sure *with* hym / whan y, that am his seruauant & his brother, am yn drede of my lif, 16  
& neuir did thinge that of right shold displease him / wherfore it is bettir for me to withdrawe me in-to my contre, and assay amonges my sogettes to gedre my fynaunce, whiche y trust wilt not leue me yn this daunger / than to abide in this Towne, and be alwey in 20  
thise vnkyndely daungers; wherfore, my frendes, y wilt departe / and Recommaunde me to my Lord & my brother, and sey hym that y compleyne me of hym to hym self / and yet alwey y shal con-  
tinue his trewe seruauant and brother" / Thise wordes sent he, *with*- 24  
out longer taryng *with* the messangers, and toke his hors, and went his way yn-to his owne Reaume, where as he was resceyued *with*  
grete ioie / and was assured of his persone / for there was he mightly loggid / so that he had no drede of his brother / The Turkes mes- 28  
sangers came vnto him agein / and told hym alle howe they had done, and what his brother had seide / and how he was departed.  
whan the Turke herde thise tidynges, he was yn wille to sende a company aftir his brothir, to brynge hym ageyn, wold he or not / 32  
But aftir many aduisementes of his folkes, he lefte that opinion, yn trust that by some bettir meane / and *with* more honour, they sholde accorde.

**N**OW most we speke a litle of Ector, that all the nyght rideth / 36  
and on dayes tyme kepith him close yn woodes, til he were surely conduyte in-to the Reaume of Sizile / to suche place as pey had in charge that guyded hym. And there they departed fro hym, & taught hym the way / and the Townes that he sholde 40

- passe by til he came vnto the kynge. Than toke he leue of them,  
 and thanked them right humbly / offryng them seruice & frendship  
 for the payne they had with hym, ful humbly recommendyng  
 4 hym vnto kynge fforabrace, as to <sup>1</sup>hym that he was moost bounde [<sup>1</sup> leaf 72]  
 to / of al erthly men. Thus departed he from them / and passed Prince Hum-  
phrey rides  
thro' Sicily.  
 thorough the Reaume of Sizile; and in his iournay he mette *with*  
 some of the kynges folkes, to whom he tolde part of his charge /  
 8 and accompayned *with* them til he came thider as the kynge was.  
 And yn his iournay, he fil yn remembraunce of the grete goodnesse  
 of oure Lord, remembryng the grete ynfirmittees that god delyuered  
 hym of / bothe out of prison & from the malice of the Turke /  
 12 whiche he knewe weel, was by no meane that he coude make, but  
 only by the grete bounte of oure Lorde, wherin he thought him ful  
 vnable to do *seruice* vnto god / aftir the grete grace / that he had  
 youen him / And than made he avowe and promysse to god / that He vows to  
fight for it  
till it is free,  
or lost.  
 16 if he lyued so longe, he shold abide in his seruice yn the Reaume  
 of Sizile til god had releued it / or ellis it were vttyrly lost / and yn  
 the meane season, neuir to discouer what he was, to no creature.  
 and thus determyned he yn hym self, fro that day forth to take in  
 20 pacience what payne or pouerte that god wold sende hym yn his  
 seruice / whan he had taken this ferme purpose, he came thider as  
 the kynge lay / and asked first of alle / aftir the Senesshalls loggyng,  
 whiche was sone tolde him; ffor, nexte the kynge, there was no  
 24 man in aH the Reaume kepte so grete an house as he did / nor was  
 so moche renommed / And whan he came to hym / he fonde hym at  
 Dynner, & Surnome & Athis *seruyng* him, for he coude neuir make  
 hem do othirwise / but to be more diligent yn his seruice than any He goes to  
Ferant,  
Prince  
Philip, and  
Prince David.  
 28 othir man / that longed vnto hym / Ector is thus entred in-to the  
 halle, and salowed fforaunt and alle his company / and aftir, he asked  
 whiche was he that men called Le Surnome. fforaunt behelde him,  
 and sawe him yonge, faire, and wele proporcioned yn euery feture /  
 32 and aH smylyng, saide vnto hym / "my frende, biholde, this same  
 is he / ye may sey to him what it pleasith you / And if ye will  
 speke with hym a-part, ye may" / "In good faith, sir," said Ector,  
 "nay / y had leuer speke *with* him yn *presence* of moo folkes / for  
 36 that his loos & renomee sholde be knowen / and y wold y were of  
 suche worthynesse that he might be enhaunsed by me; hou be it,  
 he hath little nede therof, for it is spred thoroughout alle the world."  
 and than saide he to Surnome, "kynge fforabrace, youre prisoner,  
 40 that holdith hymself weel ewred <sup>2</sup>sith his fortune is to be prisoner / [<sup>2</sup> ff. 72, bk.]

Prince  
Humphrey

yields him-  
self to Prince  
Philip,

and asks to  
serve him.

Prince Hum-  
phrey is  
taken to the  
[1 leaf 73]

King and  
Queen of  
Sicily, and  
Princess  
Isolante.

to be taken of so noble and good handes as of yourres, and accordyng  
to promesse, that of pite, & by trefy, ye made hym to make / he  
recommāundith hym to you, and sendith me to you, to do *with* me  
what it pleasith you, & hath deliuerd me out of that prison / wher- 4  
yn y was brought by fortune and tempest of the see / and he sendith  
you worde for trouthe, that yet hath he founde no moo cristen  
prisoners / And whom-som-euir it bifalle, wele I thanke god it is  
bifallen me wele nowe / and aftir, y thanke you, whom god hath 8  
youen the grace to helpe me out of this daunger / wherfore, yn  
accomplisshyng my feith & promys, y yelde me to you" / than  
kneled he downe bifore him, and wold haue kissed his feet / Le  
Surnome, alle abasshed of the honour he did hym, toke hym vp by 12  
the hande / and saide / "my frende, y thanke God that ye be  
delyuerd / for me thinketh it had ben grete pite if ye had ben  
thus lost. And for Rawnsome, y shalt put you to choise, whethir  
ye wilt be felawe to Athis & me, or maistre of oure chambre / and 16  
take which it pleasith you." "fforsothe," saide Ector, "I am no  
man of suche honour to be felawe *with* neither of you / But and it  
pleased you to take me as your seruānt, I wolte desire no grettir  
honour / and I thinke me wele fortunēd so for to be" / fferaunt, 20  
that sawe this yonge man stande *with* Surnome and Athis, thought  
hym-self right moche bounden to god; for eueri day befille hym  
good adventures / for he hadde grete trust in Ectours worthynesse,  
and was right glad that he logged *with* Surnome and Athis; and 24  
toke hym in reputacion as felawe to theim. Thise tidynges came  
to the kyng and to the quene / and to their faire doughtir as they  
sate at dynner / and eueri man saide, that he was wele fortunēd that  
was sent in-to the company of Surnome. Than was tolde the 28  
maner of his comyng, and howe grete ioie fferaunt had therof.  
"fforsothe," saide the kyng / "he is happy / & hath cause to be  
ioifult, for his renomee is multiplied & doubled *with* straungers  
that come to his seruice, whiche, had not ben for his displeasir, I 32  
had receyued hem long sith of my houshold / hou be it, I haue ben  
serued *with* them in his company, as wele or bettir than if they had  
ben abidyng with me" / As they were yn thise wordes, came yn the  
Seneshall and Ector with hym, whiche he brought vnto the kyng, 36  
and he salowed hym right <sup>1</sup>humbly / and the quene & hir doughtir /  
And than the kyng enquired hym first of the maner of his person,  
and aftir his deliuerance, and of the tidynges of beyonde the see /  
and in euery thinge he answerd so wele & so wisely, that the kyng 40



and alle folkes had grete ioie to here hym / Aftir dyner was he brought vnto the ladies, whiche had grete ioie to beholde him / and so had fferaunt, whiche saide, he was a man replenysshed of alt  
4 beaute yn visage and body / and in wordes and maner fully assured, "and I trust fully yet to se him do as moche in dedes of armes as alle thise" / "fforsothe," saide the folkes to fferaunt, "we leue it wele; and ye be moche bounden to god, for he hath gyuen you  
8 fortune to haue noble seruantes." Thus contynued Ector with fferaunt and his ij. felawes, abiding the ceason of the Turkes comyng, whiche they thought right longe. The kyng made them alle iij. to be reteyned with his doughter / hou be it, their moost abidyng was  
12 with fferaunt / But yet, to put them to the more honour, whan they were there as she was, they did hir dayly seruice / And eueriche did his seruice so proprely / that it shewed wele they had be norisshed vp therin. And amonges them iij. was suche frendship / that eche  
16 of them desired to honour his felaw more than himself. Now leueth to speke of the kyng of Sizile and of his company, and retourneth to the Turke, that was in his contre / as ye haue herde.

Prince Humphrey stays with Feraunt and Prince Philip and Prince David.

20 **A**ftir the departyng of kyng fferabras, his Brothir, many of his sogettes beganne to grucche against him for the wrong that he had done vnto his brothir; and moche peyne had he to appease it / And fro that day forth, neur increased he / ffor fferabras, that sawe him self in daunger of prison, wold neur after do  
24 his brother seruice yn the warres, he nor noon of his sogettes. And if he had not be prisoner / many folkes Iuged he wolde haue made warre ageinst his Brothir him-self, for the grete vnkyndenesse he hadde shewed him / Neuirtheles it was for that tyme appesed. The  
28 Turke made, all this ceason, ordinaunce for his goyng yn-to Sizile / and assembled alle his men / seyng vnto them, "my frendes, ye knowe wele howe y haue enterprised to conquere the Reaume of Sizile, and howe y haue at this day in my <sup>1</sup>hande, fult nigh half  
32 the Reaume / and if y shold nowe leue of / it were to me grete shame / wherfore y aske nowe counsell therin / for y am affermed to go thidre / But y aske aide and comfort of my sogettes and of my frendes / whiche is the cause y nowe haue assembled you" /  
36 Than toke they counsell amonges them; and, in conclusion, every man ayded the Turke aftir his power / more than euir they had done bfore / so that he coude them right grete thanke / Than mustred he his folkes, & fonde his nombre gettir than euir it was.  
40 Thus employed he the tyme of the trews in purveaunce, that he was

After King Ferabras's departure,

the Sultan never prospers.

But he prepares for his fresh invasion of Sicily.

[1 ff. 73, bk.]

The Sultan  
resolves to  
besiege  
Naples,  
where the  
King of  
Sicily is.

concluded, aftir the feste of seynt Iohn<sup>e</sup>, to entre in-to the Reaume  
of Sizile / to make grettir warre than euir he had done bifore / This  
was his armes & his departyng concluded / & euery man apointed  
what he shold do / and him self determyned to lay seege bifore the 4  
Towne of Naples, where as the kynge was, the quene & hir doughtir /  
and the moost of alle the noble folkes of the Reaume / seyng verrily,  
that if he had ones conquered that Towne, he sholde haue little  
besynesse to wynne the remenaunt of the Reaume / Thus thought 8  
they that they had little to do, but with that Towne allone. They  
ordeyned also an othir grete company, beside them that shold ly at  
the seege, to conduyte their vitaille & ordenaunce, without distourb-  
yng or troubling of them that shold abide at the seege / Than were 12  
the Capteynes ordeyned that shold haue the charge of euery thinge /  
And when alle was wele puruayde / The Turke abode stille in peas  
til the tyme came that he sholde go in-to Sizile.

The King of  
Sicily is told  
of the Sul-  
tan's prepa-  
rations.

**N**OW seith the tale, that the kynge of Sizile, that was fulle wise, 16  
made alle diligence to knowe & enquire the purueaunce of  
his enemyes / & spent grete good to the same entent / and  
did so moche, that he had waged folkes of the Turkes owne / and  
knewe by them, alle suche apointment as the Turke had taken / and 20  
here-vpon he assembled his counsell / and tolde hem how he was  
asserteyned, and praied them eueri man to take aduise there-vpon,  
for it was tyme / the newe ceason approched so nigh, wherfore it was  
expedient to take good aduise & short, here<sup>v</sup>pon / and many mocions 24  
were made vpon the maner of his conduyte, but no ferme purpose  
was takyn / This tyme ranne ouir alle of the grete ffense that the  
kynge of Sizile made in his Reaume to thencountre of the Turke,  
and howe that the trews shold breke vp at the feste of seynt Iohne / 28  
and than the Turke shold come agein in-to the Reaume of Sizile  
with grete power / but for alle that, there was no kynge nor othir  
prince that any thinge disposid hym to the helpe or socours therof /  
Thus on a day the kynge of Sizile, to whom the matier touched 32  
moost, whiche daily and hourelly had it yn remembraunce, called  
some of his moost secrete counselle / & newly toke avice of this  
matier / and there-vpon euery thinge in writyng, yn suche wise as  
ye shal here / ffirst it was apointed to write and sende newe mes- 36  
sangers to alle cristen Reaumes / wherein he had no grete trust of  
socour, for many tymes had he done so before / natheles, in asmoche  
as the matier was newer than it had ben othir tymes / for it was  
aftir a longe trews that the werre shold begynne agein / And also 40

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 74]

He organizes  
his own de-  
fence,

by advice of  
his Council.

- that they shold not thinke in hym that he was so presumptuous /  
that for the wele of the cristen feith he deynd not to requyre no  
body / ffor thise causes, concluded he to sende to alle Reaumes / hou  
4 be it, he had no hope but only yn god, and yn his owne power /  
wherfore he purueide him as weel as he coude, *with* the helpe of his  
owne folkes, to abide suche fortune as god wolde sende him / And  
hou-be-it that he had tidinges that the seege sholde be leide bfore  
8 what place that he were yn / yit lette not he to purvey and ordeyne  
his othir places / and to sette good and sure Capitaynes in eche of  
theim, and concluded fro that day forth to fortifie alle his places /  
& to purvey for alle thinge that was nedefulle to the kepyng of them,  
12 for as long tyme as his power might stretch vnto. Aftir, ordeyned  
he for the place that he wold abide yn him-self, the Quene and his  
doughtir, and suche folkes as he wolde haue *with* him / Than  
apointed he ffleraunt & his company to abide with him / Aftir this,  
16 ordeyned he, that if the seege were bfore him, a general Captayne  
that shold be his lieutenaunt at large in his Reaume, whiche sholde  
haue <sup>1</sup>power to assemble alle the garisons, what tyme it pleasid hym,  
for to distourbe & trouble his enemyes / & the seide lieutenaunt  
20 shold haue a certayne nombre of folkes that sholde haue none othir  
charge but to accompany hym / and to go with him to suche place  
as nede sholde be, for to recomforte them, as wele by power of folkes  
as othir wise / if by dethe, or fortune of werre, the garrisons were  
24 amynysshed / Aftir, he ordeyned that alle men shold drawe theim to  
the good Townes, *with* alle their goodes and catelle, for to sustene  
the garrisons / and also to thentent that their enemyes shold fynde  
scarste of vitale to comfort and releue theim *with*. Thise thinges be  
28 put yn writyng. than he assembled his Captaynes and his Counselle,  
as many as he might / and in their *presence* made it to be redde /  
seyng vnto them, that this was but a maner of a mocion, praing  
them to take good aduise theron / and euery man to sey his opinion.  
32 ¶ It was thought by them alle / that they coude take no bettir  
aduise than the kyng had shewed theim / trustyng, if good were  
their good Lord, the Turke shold haue wers welcomyng than he  
had laste / thinkyng that, if he had not bettir yere amonges them  
36 than he had laste, he shulde be right wele content to take a lenger  
trews / and neuir to come again / Thise thinges thus accorded &  
diligently done / messangers were sent to alle Reaumes / the Capi-  
taynes named & proclaimed thoroughout alle the Reaume / that euery  
40 man shold take his good and his catell, & draw him in-to goode

The King of Sicily appeals to other realms for help.

He bids Ferant and his men stay in Naples. He appoints a Captain-General in the country  
[1 lf. 74, bk.] to manage the troops there; and

orders all folk into garrison towns.

The Sicilian Council agree.

Ferant makes  
Naples safe.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 75]  
The Sicilian  
Garrisons are  
munitiond.

The Turkish  
army lands  
at Capletrent,  
and marches  
to Naples.

The 3 French,  
Scotch, and  
English  
Princes are  
like brothers.

Townes / for the sauacion of them and their goodes / Thus euery  
man entendid to his charge, and did so diligently, that yn lital  
while alle thinge was done as the kynge had ordeyned. fferaunt  
had the charge to fortifie & furnysshe the Townes that the kyng 4  
shold be ynne / and he did it so diligently and so wele / that it was  
impossible, if god were their good lorde, for any men to wyne it  
for many yeres / ffor ye may wele thinke / there that the kynge,  
the quene, and hir doughtir were / there lakked nouthur vitaille nor 8  
ordenaunce / Thise thinges thus purveid as ye haue herde / alle the  
Reaume was wele recomforted, to abide suche aventure as god wold  
sende hem / The tyme drewe fast on, that the trews shold breke /  
and euery Capitayne drewe him to his garison, with suche company 12  
as was assigned hym / and kepte <sup>1</sup>suche rewle and ordenaunce,  
aswele of spense of vitaille as of othir thinges, as if the seege had be  
leyde before them / for they knewe wele it wold be long or they  
coude gete any more vitaille. And on the tothir partie, the Turke 16  
assembled his folkes to go in-to Sizile with grettir nombre than euir  
he had bfore; he made to charge grete shippes with vitaille & orden-  
aunce, so that hym thought no thinge sholde faile him / He made  
them to be brought in-to suche places in Sizile as helde of hym / 20  
and ordeyned his folkes to conduyte hem fro thens alway to the  
seege, as nede shold require, like as ye haue herde bfore / his  
ordenaunce was so grete, that it was meruaile to se it / He and alle  
his folkes landed at the port of Capletrent / and whan he had ben 24  
there a while, he toke his iournay toward Naples, to lay seege there;  
for there was the kyng alle at his ease, redy purueid ageinst his  
comyng / whan the kynge vndirstode thise tidinges, he was alle  
recomforted, trustyng verrily in the helpe of god, and thought right 28  
longe aftir the Turkes comyng / But of alle othir, Ector was moost  
ioifult of their comyng / ffor, daies of his lif, he had neur sene bataille  
nor none assemble in armes / and alle his desire was to folowe Sur-  
nome & Athis, to se the worthines that he had herde speke of theim, 32  
and to take ensample at them; for wele he wist that there was noon  
so moche renommed in the Reaume as they / And thise iij. loued to-  
gedir as they had be bretheren / ffor neur had they but one loggyng,  
one purs, and one wille / and neur was there amonges them angry 36  
word / Surnome & Athis had grete desire to wite how Ector sholde  
demene him in the verres, for that he was so perfite in alle othir  
thinges; and he purveide, so that he was right wele horsed and  
armed / and eche of them iij. promysed feith & trouthe to othir / 40

- and bicame brethern in armes / ye may wele thinke that the ladies  
and gentilwomen, whan they sawe hem in this case / were not wele  
assured when they herd the belle of the wacche, for the comyng of  
4 the Turke : they wepte ful sorowfully / and euery man recomforted  
them / and brought them to suche places where they might se the  
puyssaunce come / and if the grete drede that they had of the werre  
had not be / it had ben a good sight to see / ffor the Eyre and the  
8 erthe ressplendisshed *with* the Baners of gold, and of siluer, and of  
Cootes of armes / & <sup>1</sup>of bright harneis / & the riche abilementis  
they had for their horses. So many folkes there were / that the  
Ladies and gentilwomen wende there had not ben so grete a power  
12 in alle the world, and had more feer than euir they had / ffor it  
semed them the Towne might neuir endure ageinst them / And  
thus came this company in iij. partis, for to besege and enclose the  
Towne. *withyn* the Towne was there a vij. or viij. thousand feight-  
16 ing men / And for as moche as they were there *with* the ladies /  
they desired to do some thinge at the bigynnyng that myght recom-  
forte theym / and concluded that on the next morowe, yn the morn-  
yng, they wolde visite their neighbors. ¶ Now y shall telle you  
20 of the Turke, howe he did : he remembered him of the [seege] that  
he had layde bifore fferaunt / and how in loggyng them he had a  
grete skarmyssh, and lost many of his folkes / wherefore he ordeyned  
that enery day shold be a grete company arredied to horsbak /  
24 waityng on a Captayne / to drawe sodeinly to what part nede sholde  
require / And there were iij. grete puissaunces, as ye haue herde, in  
iij. parties of the Towne / And of that one, was Orkays cheff ; and  
of the tothir, the kyng of Luby ; and of the iij<sup>d</sup>. the Turke himself.  
28 ¶ Now cometh the day that the sawte sholde be made. for asmoche  
as the Turke knewe ful wele the[re] were many folkes *withyn*, he  
wold not begynne the saute tilt the sonne were vp. fferaunt, that  
was fulle wise and wele vndirstandyng in suche matiers, saide to the  
32 kyng, “sir, please it you to stande at the gate / and lete no man  
go oute, but suche as I wilt / whiche y shall put alle bifore me” /  
And than he apointed suche as shold come with hym ; and for drede  
he had of Surnome and of his felawes, he made them to promesse  
36 & swere that they shold withdrawe them assone as they herde blowe  
the retrayte / Thus alle thing ordeyned / he departed out of the  
Towne with ij. thousand feighters / and did so moche, or the cry  
arose that they were amonges the kyng of Lubyes Tentis / and our  
40 ranne many of his folkes / the crie and the noise arose thorough alle

The Sicilian  
ladies watch

the fine ap-  
proach of  
the Turkish  
army,  
[ 1f. 75, bk.]

In 3 Divi-  
sions.

The Sultan

orders a  
regiment of  
Horse to be  
always ready  
to move  
when needed.

Ferant sallies  
out of Naples  
with 2000  
men,  
against the  
Turkish 2nd  
Division.

the hoste / and than they that had the charge to a-waite on suche  
sodeyn cries, were redy anone *with* the kynge of Luby / and came  
quikly on fferaunt and on his company, In so moche that by force  
it behoueth hem to withdrawe / and there were some of his folkes 4  
taken / wherof Surnome was right heuy and sory / and he [and] his  
felawes retourned <sup>1</sup>agein to rescowe them / and neuir bifore had he  
aquytte him so wele as he did there / ffor by the noble prowesse of  
hym & his company, their enemyes were fayn to *with*drawe them 8  
agein toward their tentes. All this encountryng shewed wele the  
worthines of Ector / that neuir vnto this day was sene in suche  
case / They iij. to-gedir did so in armes, that it was meruaile to  
thinke / and it semed by Ector that he had ben alwey brought vp 12  
in that crafte / the feeld a-boute them was al steyned and couerd  
*with* blode / and with ded folkes, In so moche that fferaunt was alle  
abassed / & entendid to no thinge but to beholde the hardynesse of  
his iij. seruantes. And as they were thus feighting, came the 16  
Turkes power and his sones / vnto the Kynge of Luby / and than  
they came so sore vp-on the cristen men that they put them alle out  
of aray / whan fferaunt sawe this, he sent vnto the kyng for a  
thousand men moo to socoure them, to helpe to *with*drawe them. 20  
Than made he to blowe the retrayte / and the iij. felawes, by force  
of Armes, were departe eche fro othir / and Surnome was enclosed  
among so many / that hou-be-it he defendid him right valiauntly /  
yet was he taken be might / for our many folkes were on hym / and 24  
was anone had out of the prees / seying fferaunt his maister / that  
at that tyme wold haue ben ded / ffor he knewe weel that alle the  
gold in Sizile might not bye him agein, and he might not helpe  
him / for he and his company were so sore ourisette / that with 28  
grete payne they recured agein in-to the Towne / and had lefte  
behinde them the chief of alle their werre / ¶ But now here wher-  
on fferaunt aduised him / he toke al the folkes of armes that were  
with the kyng at the gate / and sodeinly went out at the gate that 32  
was ageinst Orkays tentes, for he sawe him vngarnysht of alle his  
folkes / and bitwene his loggyng and the Turkes was a ryuer / and  
there was no brigge our it / but a litil passage / where might not  
come past ij. horses or iij. on front / and yit *with* grete payne he 36  
ordeyned a good company to kepe that passage / for by none othir  
wey coude Orkays haue no socoure / Thus was fferaunt, *with* grete  
part of puyssaunce of the Towne, come to Orkays tentes / and there  
<sup>2</sup>endured the bataile fulle long amonges them / By that tyme was 40

[1 leaf 76]

Prince Hum-  
phrey and  
Princes  
Philip and  
David fight  
vallantly.

The Turkish  
3rd and 1st  
Divisions  
attack Fer-  
ant's men.

Prince Philip  
is taken  
prisoner.

The Sicilians  
retire,

but make a  
fresh sally  
against the  
camp of the  
Turkish 1st  
Division.

[2 lf. 76, bk.]

- Athis and Ector enfourmed of the takyng of their felawe / whom they held in part for their maister / for whos sake they had suche sorowe that it was meruaile to wite / fferaunt ascried vnto them /
- 4 "my frendes, now it is tyme that eche of you put payne to the rescouse of his trewe felawe, which rescuse can not be without takyng of Orkays, sone vnto the Turke; now shalt be seen who shalt do wele; for trewly, if one of you were in suche daunger / the
- 8 good Surnome wolde put him in grete deuoir / the ij. felawes lefte their sorowe / and, as they that had ben oute of their wittes, auentured them forth amonges the presse, without casting of any perilt or drede of any daunger; there was neur man sawe ij. men do so
- 12 moche in one day in Armes as they did / they were so besy in euery place, that their enemyes thought they sawe noon othir men but them, so moche they dred them / fferaunt folowed them alwey, and had as leef be ded, without he might haue day to rescowe his yonge
- 16 seruaunt / he had at the leest in his company .v. thousand feighters, which were of fult good corage / and, by their strength and power, yn short tyme was Orkays and alle his company put to playne discomforture / and Orkays takyn prisoner by the handes of Ector, that
- 20 presented him anon to fferaunt, whiche was right glad of his takyng, trustyng therby to recouer Surnome. The meane tyme that this noise and crye was, the Turke sent many of his folkes on horsbak to the rescous of his sone / wherby he thought him sure y-nough /
- 24 But they that were apointed by fferaunt to abide at the passage, kepte it so wele, that noo might passe there / and at the diffence was grete mortalite of the Turkes. whan fferaunt had done this iournay, and sawe Orkays in his handes in saufte / and that his
- 28 folkes had take suche pillage as they might easily bere with them / and had set fyre in the remenaunt / he made to blowe the retrayte / and withdrewre them in-to the Towne / hauyng prisoners withoute nombre / but, ouir alle othir, he was glad of the takyng of Orkays /
- 32 whan they were entred agein into the Towne / the kyng was enformed of the takyng of Surnome, and so were the ladies & gentilwomen / and the tidynges spred thorough alle the Town, wherof the <sup>1</sup>sorowe and complaynt began as moche as if the kyng had ben
- 36 ded. And the kyng himself was so sory, that noman might comforte him / hou-be-it he had the Turkes sone yn his handes / for he helde him so cruelt and felonous, that he had leuer lete his sone dye than deliuere Surnome, by whom he had hadde so many losses and
- 40 hurtes / Natheles he concluded to sende vnto the Turke an herauide

Prince David  
and Prince  
Humphrey,

with Ferant  
and 5000 men,

capture the  
Sultan's son,  
Orkays,  
ront his 1st  
Division,

pillage and  
burn his  
Camp, and  
retire to  
Naples.

[1 leaf 77]

A Sicilian  
Herald is  
sent to the  
Sultan.

of Armes, to certifie him of the takyng of his sone, willyng him to entrete Surnome none othir wise than he wolde haue his sone entretid. [*Illumination: Surnome bleeding, in a shirt; gallows; sally from the Town.*]

The Sultan

determines

to put Prince  
Philip to  
death.

[*lf. 77, bk.*]

He scratches  
the Prince's  
face, and says  
he'll see him  
hangd after  
dinner.

The Sicilians  
sorrow for  
Prince  
Philip.

N Owe retourne we to the Turke, that, afir the distresse that 4  
he had vpone fieraunt and his folkes, and that Surnome  
was brought vnto hym / and that he knewe werily it was  
the same by whome he had hadde so many tymes losse & hurtes ;  
and at that tyme he knewe no thing of the takynge of his sone / 8  
And whan Surnome was brought a-fore him / he thought for ioie  
his worthinesse was doubled / and behilde him, and sawe him so  
personable and amyable / and so wele assured, that he hadde  
meruaile to beholde hym / and concluded in him self / that he 12  
wold neur slepe til he had taken on him cruelle veniaunce, and  
saide vnto him / " Thou vntrew cristen man, thyn vnhappy comyng  
in-to this lande hathe done me more damage than did the puy-  
saunce of cristen kynges : I shal neur slepe / or y se the ded bfore 16  
myn yen." Thus Surnome, hering his deth / with humble corage  
content to abide it, for the pleasir of god / answerd agein vnto the  
Turke, seyng, " O turk, by my dethe shalt thou not be kyng of  
Sizile / for there is many more worthy than euer I was, yn the 20  
seruice of the kyng ; wherfore y knowe wele my dethe shall be  
litol damage to cristen ; <sup>1</sup> and therefore y am to endure suche payne  
and turment as thou wilt deuyse, whiche y shall receyue in ioie " /  
The Turke, for angre, might no more here him speke, but ranne on 24  
him / and scratte him in the visage / and made him to be voided  
out of his sight / and commaunded that gallows shold be made  
anoon ; & concluded, that afir he had dyned, he wold go hym self  
to se him hangd / They of the Towne withyn, seing thies galowes 28  
adressing, enfourmed the kyng therof / And than bigan the sorowe  
more than bfore, thoroughout all the Towne / for they knewe wele  
it was made for Surnomes sake / There might ye se ladies and  
gentilwomen wepe and sorowe / but ouir alle other sorowed Iolant, 32  
the kynges doughter. There was the beaute, bounte, witte &  
worthinesse of Surnome, many tymes remembred & complayned  
that day / & euery body thought that, at the houre of his dethe, alle  
the vertues of the worlde sholde be lost / The kyng was alle out of 36  
mesure / as he that had lost only by Surnome alle the ioy he had in  
this worlde / thinkyng that, after his dethe, he wold no lenger  
lyue / Ector also, and Athis, were so fer from alle reason, that, for  
men wold not lete them go out at the gate, they wolde haue lepte 40



- our the walles / It is alwey saide that a mannys witte ys neuir  
 vnderstond til at a grete nede. fferaunt, that neuir was dispurueid,  
 made hastily a paire of galowes to be set vpon the walles, yn the  
 4 Turkes sight, and euen bifore his loggyng, as though he wold make  
 Orkays dye ther-one / And yit, notwithstanding pat, fferaunt put  
 yn aduenture him self and alle that were in the towne, reseruyng  
 the kyng / and a fewe that waited on him / & thought werrily alle  
 8 to dye, or to rescowe his seruauant / and to this apointed alle his  
 folkes, and in especialt Ector and Athis, whiche fild to his fete for  
 ioy / humbly thankyng / And yet, notwithstanding the grete sorow  
 that he had, he comfortyng them, seyng / "what, we haue yit no  
 12 tidynges of the messenger that went to the Turke. I haue trust in  
 god, and also know wele the loue that a ffadir hath to his childe /  
 wherby he wol neuir be consentyng to the dethe of his sone / And  
 that the prise that hath be made by you this day, my frende Ector,  
 16 at youre nowe comyng, shalt be the sauacion of youre felawe" /  
 Many turkes sawe thies galowes yn makyng on the Towne walle /  
 and anone tolde it to the Turke, <sup>1</sup>whiche strecched him vp at the  
 boorde, and saide / "Lete them hange whom they can gete; for  
 20 there is none shalt lette me to hange this that y haue" / And euen  
 at the same tyme came yn the heralde from the kyng of Sizile,  
 with the message pat ye haue herde tofore / The Turke, hering  
 this, was gretely ameruaild / and coude not bilcue it / for he had  
 24 herde no worde therof bifore / wherfore he saide al wrothly to the  
 messangers / "If the kyng, and they of his company, coude by their  
 language saue the lif of their man / they had wele lerned to speke /  
 But, as for my sone, that is so vnhappily lost, y wolt not respite  
 28 the lif of this / but the rather delyuere hym to the dethe" / And  
 than made he to brynge him to se Surnome, that was redy to go to  
 his dethe / and the rope aboute his nekke / and whan he sawe him  
 in this cas, he was so sory that vnnethe he might stonde on his  
 32 fete / but Surnome comforted him, and saide / "I pray you,  
 recommaunde me to the kyng & to the quene / and to my faire  
 lady, their doughtir / to whom y haue euir ben trewe seruauant /  
 and recommaunde me to fferaunt, my good maister / and to my ij.  
 36 felawes / and sey I praied them not to compleyn nor sorowe my  
 dethe, for y trust verrily in the mercy of god to dye wele /  
 Natheles, pray them to pray for me" / Than he toke hym by the  
 hande, the teeres yn his yeen / and bade hym farewele / and praied  
 40 his ij. felawes also to take his dethe agreably / thus the messenger

Ferant sets a  
gallows on  
the walls of  
Naples, as  
if for the  
Sultan's son.

[ leaf 78 ]

The Sultan  
declares he'll  
hang Prince  
Philip,

and let his  
own son die.

The Sicilian  
chiefs swear  
to rescue  
Prince  
Philip, or  
die.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 78, bk.]  
Philip  
laments his  
parents,  
and France,

and prays  
God to have  
pity on his  
soul.

The Sultan

nearly  
strangles  
Prince  
Philip.

departed, & came to the towne / and tolde the kynge and fferaunt  
how he hadde founde him. And whan they herde this report, it  
touched their hertes so nygh / that they thought they sawe Surnome  
bifore them / in the same cace that the messanger had seen hym / 4  
and after they had wepte & compleyned / euery man concluded  
either to dye or to rescowe him / Two hundred men were ordeyned  
to go to thise Iuyse / and a M<sup>t</sup>. to renne on them that kepthe the  
place, and ij. M<sup>t</sup>. redy to socour them / if nede were / and the 8  
kynge redy, in his owne persone, at the gate with iij. M<sup>t</sup>. to releef  
them / at their comyng yn agein, if nede were. And thus was  
euery thinge ordeyned and redy / and Ector and Athis were de-  
lyuered the charge / whiche toke it on them with right goode 12  
corage / Surnome, <sup>1</sup>on that othir side, that abode no thinge but  
dethe, compleyned his fadir & his modir, and them of his reame /  
and compleyned his contre, that shold stonde withoute heyre / 16  
Aftir, he compleyned the kynge of Sizile, the quene and their  
doughtir, his maister and his ij. felawes / prayng god right hertily  
to comfort them, and sende them aH good auenture, and in especiaH  
that his faire lady shol neuir come in the handes of tho mys-  
creauntes. Aftir this, he praied god to haue mercy & pite on his 20  
soule, seyng that in his seruice he shold now take the dethe /  
humbly besechyng hym, of his grace, to receyue his soule / and of  
his grete mercy to pardone alle his offences. ¶ Whan the Turke  
had dyned, he herde tidynges that his sones loggyng was alle ouir- 24  
throwen and brent / a[n]d moo than x. or xij. M<sup>t</sup>. men slayne / and  
his sone taken prisoner, and brought in-to the towne, and the moost  
part of the grete lordes and noble men of his company / If the  
Turke were soroufuH, it is no question / and, for the grete angir, 28  
forgetith aH fadirly loue, and the seruyce of alle those lordes and  
noble men that were taken prisoners / and forgetith also his owne  
brother / that was prisoner to hym that he had than in daungere,  
by whom he myght haue had his brother agein, or his sone / but 32  
than alle was forgotten / And thus, as a wood man furiously puttith  
the boorde fro him, without aduise, or setting any ordre to the dede  
of Iustice that he sholde do / and asked alle hastily where was the  
prisoner / and men brought him forth ; and he toke hym by the 36  
Rope that was aboute his nekke, and drewe him so hard that, if  
folkes had not taken him away, he had strangled hym / but his  
folkes toke him from him / and seide / “sir, this bilongeth not to  
you to do / lete the hangman do his office, sith ye be so fere forth 40

- that no reason may meue you / we be kynne and frendes to them  
 at this day, that by your cruelte we shal se dye / and your self be  
 cause therof, and also of the dethe of youre owne sone / ffor, he  
 4 assertayned, they withyn haue no suche drede / but assone as this  
 man is ded / he and alle they shalle dy bfore your yen / And whan  
 your pleasir shal in this be fulfilled / your sorowe euir aftir shalbe  
 out of mesure / and then shal be to late <sup>1</sup>to repente, for it shalbe [1 leaf 79]  
 8 passid remedy / Also your brother, or his plegges, shalle dye with  
 sorow and shame" / But of alle that euir they seide vnto him, he  
 rought not / and sware by his goddes, if they spake any more, he  
 shold make them alle to dy an euyl deth / and toke a grete staff yn  
 12 his hande / and made them cary forth the prisoner to the gallows /  
 and euir layde on him so grete strokes, that made him alle bloody /  
 now sent he forth so woodly this prisoner, that he had but fewe  
 folkes aboute him / and yit they that were in his company were in  
 16 suche sorowe and distresse, that they had as leef dye / as lyue / for  
 their kyn and their frendes, that they sawe in suche daunger withyn  
 the Towne / and for that cause there was the more vnsure guydyng  
 in this matier / The wacche of the Towne sawe the multitude of  
 20 folkes comyng / and Surnome amonges them, ledde like a theef;  
 and the folkes couerd aH the felde / they went & tolde the kynge  
 & fferaunt, whiche wepte for pitie that Surnome was so pitously  
 entretid / Surnome bihelde the Towne, wherin he had hadde so  
 24 moche pleasir & ioie, thinkyng neuir to come ther more / for he  
 looked aftir no thinge but dethe / often recommaundid vnto god alle  
 them that were withyn the Towne / and whan they were come nere  
 the gallows, Ector and Athis, that were apointed to go to the  
 28 Iuyse, toke their company with theim, and went thider as fast as  
 their horses might renne, fore drede that they sholde come to late /  
 the Turke, seying this auenture, cried many tymes that men shold  
 kille the prisoner, but there was noon that coude fynde in his herte  
 32 so to do; and there durst they not abide, for they were alle out of  
 array / And at that tyme, were slayn and taken many grete lordes  
 of the Turkes partie / whan Ector & Athis, whiche had the charge  
 to rescowe their felaw / fonde him allone, with his visage all bloody,  
 36 of the strokes that the Turke had youen him on the hede / they  
 wende he had ben hurte to the dethe / and were so sorowfuH, that  
 vnnethe they might speke one worde / Natheles, they set him vpon  
 horsbak / and brought him agein in-to the Towne, without any  
 40 encombraunce or hurt of any cristen man, and vnto the grete losse

The Sultan's  
folk reprove  
him,

but he threat-  
ens them,

and beats  
Prince Philip  
till he's all  
bloody.

The Sicillans  
see Prince  
Philip led to  
the gallows.

Prince David  
and Prince  
Humphrey  
sally out,

roust and kill  
the Turkes,

rescue Prince  
Philip,

and bring  
him into  
Naples,

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 79, bk.] & damage of the turkes. And <sup>1</sup>whan they were comyn in-to the  
Towne, they had grete drede of thurt Surnome had on his hede /  
for they wist not wele yit how it was with him / Than Ector and  
Athis brought him to loggyng, and sawe that he was right seke, and 4  
sore diseased / for his nekke was gretly swolne / and alle the skynne  
of / with the streynyng of the rope / and his shuldres also were  
blac with the strokes of the staff that he had / and in his hede he  
had a grete stroke, whiche was alle bloody and swolne / and his 8  
visage was all to-scrag / The kynge made to sende for alle his  
surgeons, & made them to serche hym / whiche saide that he was  
sore hurt / but they sawe no drede of dethe yn hym / but that he  
shold be heled *withyn* litil while / The kynge and his company 12  
was ioifull of this tidynges; and then was tolde to Surnome the  
grete worthinesse and prowes of Ector that day / and also the grete  
armes that he and Athis had done to rescowe hym, and yn what  
aunenture fferaunt, their good maister, had put hym that day / whiche 16  
semed to be bettir content *with* his dethe than to lyue / & how  
Ector had taken with his hande the Turkes sone / And alle this was  
tolde him to reioice hym / ffor euery man knewe wele *pat* the  
preise and grete renome of his noble maister, and of his ij. felawes, 20  
was one of the grettist ioies that he coude haue / All thise wordes  
were seide vnto hym by the kyng, whiche was come to visite him /  
And Surnome answerd hym, & saide / "sir, y thanke god and you /  
that it pleasid your grace, for so pore a man as y am, to parte oute 24  
of your towne / and put yourself yn daunger / whiche y neur  
coude deserue / But y sha<sup>ll</sup> put me in deuoir alwey to do you the  
bettir seruice" / And thus departed the kynge fro hym, and came  
to his owne loggyng / and there mette with hym the quene, hir 28  
doughtir, & alle the ladies, whiche were right sorowfulle of the hurt  
of Surnome. but the kyng tolde them for trouthe that he was in  
noo perill of dethe / wherof they were as ioifull as they might be /  
ffor there was noon erthly man so moche biloued of euery body in 32  
alle honour as he was, and in especialle of alle them of that Reaume /  
for sith his comyng, the reaume was more furnysshed of noble men  
than euir it was bfore / and he neur did ne seide thinge that  
sholde displease any body / Thus by <sup>2</sup>hym daily encreased their 36  
ioie / But alle othirwise went it yn the Turkes hoste / for he was so  
troubled at that tyme, that he was half in dispeire / and rought not  
to haue slayn hym self, to haue ben oute of his grete sorowe / whan  
he was *with-drawn* & retourned in-to his tente / and knewe for 40

hurt and  
bleeding.

But the  
Sicilian  
surgeons say  
he'll soon be  
well.

He is told of  
the valour  
of Princes  
David and  
Humphrey,

and the  
capture of  
Orcays.

The ladies  
grieve over  
Prince  
Philip's  
wounds.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 80]

certayne put his prisoner was deliuered / and what outrageous losse The Sultan  
 he had of the moost notable of his counselle, that were dede &  
 taken, and wele a xij. or xiiij. hundred men slayne beside / and of  
 4 the cristen, not one hurt at that tyme / And also howe his sone was  
 prisoner, whiche might haue ben deliuered hym ageyn / had not be  
 his outrageous pride / And at the takyng of his sone, slayne the  
 same day .x. or xij. M<sup>t</sup> men. Remembryng all this, he was so is sad at all his losses.  
 8 sorowfull that he wist not what for to do / but sent in alle haste for  
 his counselle, and for his Capteynes / and praied them to gif him  
 their best aduise. And if bifore dyner he were hote and tempest-  
 ous / now is he colde and sobre / for he hath had a sharpe showre  
 12 to cole him with / There was noon of his folkes that bemoned him / His folk hate him.  
 but in their hertes dedly hated hym / and dispreised hym / and  
 seide amonges themself, that there was neuir cruell man in the ende  
 had honour nor glory; and they thought wele their goddes wolde  
 16 punyssh him for his cruelte / and for thys cause they were alle  
 discouraged / Natheles they aduised them, by alle weies they coude,  
 to kepe their honour yn that they had to do / And sent for the But they send for their Reserve to take the place of their lost 1st Division.  
 20 purueaunce for the hoste, and logged them where as Orkays had  
 ben discomfite, & made ij. or iij. brigges ouir the watir / and thus  
 was that quarter furnysshed agein / But for alle that, they were  
 more in drede of them *withyn* / than they *withyn* were of theym /  
 24 The Captayne, that the kyng of Sizile had ordeyned to be his  
 lieftenaunt thorough his reame, knewe for certayne that this grete  
 armee, that shold conduyte his vitale, were than at the seege, and  
 might not departe thens / wherfore he thought their vitaille shold  
 28 come to them *with* litle ease, if he might / and than assembled he a  
 good company togedir / and daily troubled them, bothe in takyng [1 ff. 80, bk.]  
 fro them their vitaille, and sodeyn <sup>1</sup>assaultes, comyng on them in the The Sicilian Captain-general daily harasses the Turks.  
 night / and put them in suche trouble that they were wery of their  
 32 lyues. In this wise endured the seege aboute a iij. monethes / In  
 this meane ceason was Surnome alle hole, and came to se the ladies,  
 as he had ben accustomed to do. And the kynge thought, as his  
 bien venu / and for to reioice the company, to make a Banket, where  
 36 the ladies and gentilwomen shold be / and the Turkes sone / & a  
 grete part of the noble men that were prisoners / for he wold  
 reherce vnto them the cruelte of their maister, And also to make  
 Surnome to telle of his aventure. Thus ordeyned he this Banket / The King of Sicily gives his Captains a Banquet.  
 40 and sent for his Capteynes, the renommed, & in esspecial for fferant

& for his iij. seruauntes, whiche iij. serued the ladies at this Banket / hou be it, the kynge wold haue had them to sitte downe / There sate downe the kynge & the quene, and bitwene the quene & faire Iolante was sette Orkays, that ful gladly bihelde this faire 4 lady / And if he had ben lorde of alle the worlde at that tyme, he knewe no woman that he wold so fayn haue had to his wif / and thought yn his mynde, by meane of mariage bitwene them two, the peas might be made / and or he wolde leue hir, he wolde take the 8 cristen lawe / and fro that day forth abode he in this thought / like as ye shalle here. many othir prisoners were sette at the kynges boorde, that gretely bihelde his persone and his demeanyng / so they did the quene and hir doughtir / fferaunt was set at the 12 kynges boorde, *with* many othis folkes of honour, that sate ther also. whan the kynge had seten ther a while / and ben mery amonges them ; he fille in question *with* Surnome of his hurtes, and com- maundid hym to telle the trouthe how it was. Surnome durst not 16 disobey the kynges commaundement, but tolde of his takyng, & of the Othe the Turke made assone as he was brought bfore hym / that he sholde neuir slepe or he were put to dethe in his *presence* / Aftir, how he made bynde hym to a poste / and putte a rope aboute 20 his nekke / and tolde howe the messenger seide vnto him, and what answere he had / and how-be-it that he was not worthy to qwite suche a prisoner as Orkays, yet was he offred for his deliuer- aunce / Aftir, tolde he how the Turkes <sup>1</sup>folkes blamed him for 24 drede of the dethe of Orkays / and howe the kynge sent to the Turke, & sware, if that he put him to dethe, that Orkays and alle the other prisoners sholde be hanged / And than, *with* grete ire and cruelte, he put the boorde fro hym, and came to him ther as he 28 stode bounden / and drewe the rope so fast, that was aboute his nek / that he had strangild him, had not his folkes cried on him / and seide that it was the hangmans office, and contrary to the honour of so grete a prince to do so foul a dede / and whan he 32 herde the speche of his folkes, he vnbonde him him-self / and deliuerd him to the hangman / and gaf him ij. strokes with a grete staff bitwene the shuldres / and one on the hede / and conduyte him him-self vnto the gallows, he and his folkes vnarmed & 36 *with*out any ordenaunce, ffor the whiche cause they might make no resistance at his rescous. ¶ In heryng this tale, euery man wept for pite, bothe Orkays and all the tothir prisoners. Aftir his tale was ended, the kynge spake to Athis, and seide, “ye were prisoner 40

The Sultan's son, Orcays, falls in love with Iolante.

At the King's command, Prince Philip tells how the Sultan had him bound to a post.

[1 leaf 81]

and then nearly strangled him,

and beat him on the head.

- at the distresse of the armee of the kyng of Scottes sone / telle ye  
the manere now of your takyng." Athis was alle shamefast / but he  
durst not disobey the kynges commaundement, and seide / "sir, it  
4 is trewe þat by tempest of wedir, the vesselle that y was yn, brake, Prince David then relates  
how his ship was wreckt,  
even bfore the Turkes hoste / wherby the moost part of the folkes  
þerin were drowned, sauf vij. or viij. that gate the lande / wherof  
y was one, purposing to haue yolden vs vnto the mercy of the  
8 Turke, thinkyng verrily that god hat done moche for vs to bringe  
vs to lande so nere him, for we trusted to fynde mercy yn hym /  
and when he sawe vs in this case, he cried with high voice / "sle  
tho cristen traitours!" then were they alle slayne, sauf y / whiche  
12 was to grete a pite / ffor amonges them was slayne the good Erle and Earl  
Douglas  
slain;  
Douglas, that was a noble man and a wise / and whan I sawe this  
pitous aventure, y withdrew me toward a litil Rok, and set my  
bak ther-ageinst / defending my self as wele as y coude, praing  
16 all-mighti god of his mercy, as he that abode no thing but dethe /  
And as y was yn this daunger / the Turke cried aH-wey to put me  
to dethe / my lord Orkays was ther present, and meved with pite,  
toke me in-to his handes, and assured me for than / y shold not [1 lf. 81, bk.]  
how Prince  
Orkays  
rescued him,  
20 dye / his fadir toke this to grete displeasir, and wold nedis haue  
put me to dethe, But Orkays did so moche that he put me in  
saftee. Aftirwarde, agein his fadir required hym that y might dye,  
but he wolde neuir agree therto / but did so moche, whethir his  
24 ffadir was pleased or not / that he delyuerd me / and made me to  
be surely conduyte vnto fieraunt, with whom y haue contynued in  
service sith that tyme" / Aftir this tale tolde / euery man bihelde  
Orkays, and thought it was an honorable dede of hym / Than the  
28 kyng commaunded Ector to telle by what fortune he was taken,  
whiche was right shamefast to telle his tale / natheles he bigan, and  
seide thus / "Sir, it is trewe that in my right grete youthe y desired  
to se the houre that y might be yn your service / for the honour of Then Prince  
Humphrey  
tells how  
32 god principally, and to mayntene the feith; and for the grete weeles  
that euery man rehersed of you, of the quene, & my lady your  
doughtir / wherfore it happened me to gete in-to a vesselle with  
notable men, that were therin / and by fortune of tempest we  
36 aryued yn a lande that helde of the Turke / and y suppose that  
oure service was not to god agreeable / So we were taken & brought  
bfore the lord of the Towne / and for-asmoche as we were cristen,  
they thought it a nouelte / and they presentid of the company in-to  
40 diuerse places, and kepte stille with them my fellawe and me / and his ship was  
driven to a  
Turkish  
shore,

and how,  
thro' Prince  
Philip's  
charge to  
K. Ferrabras,

he was given  
to that king,

[1 leaf 82]

and by him  
set free and  
sent to Sicily.

The King of  
Sicily bids  
Orkays tell  
his tale.

he dide in prison / And at the tyme of my deliuerance, y thought  
fulle litil of my lif / But that it fortunede that my maister and felawe,  
Surname, made his prisoner, kynge ffrabras, to promyse that he  
shold sende agein alle cristen men that by fortune had be taken in the 4  
warres in any landes of his brothers or his / And he, remembryng  
his promyse whan he came home, vndirstode that y was prisoner yn  
the same Towne that the Turke was yn that tyme / and he asked me  
of him / than was y brought bifore hem bothe / & the Turke, seyng 8  
me so megre & pore, toke litil hede of me / but lete me delyuerd to  
kynge ffrabras / whiche made me be so wele cherissed and taken  
hede vnto / that *withyn* litil while y recouered, and wex in good  
plite / than on a day went y to the Turke, and y waited on hym / 12  
and was alle newe araied & <sup>1</sup>wel recouered / and he bihelde me, and  
knewe me not / and asked his brother what y was / and he seide that  
y was the cristen man that was deliuered out of prison but late / than  
wold he haue put me to dethe / and seide that, by the worthynesse 16  
of one man / his saide brother had be taken / and the noblesse & the  
corage of the Sezilians was by hym redoubled / and by an othir  
man, that his sone had deliuerd, he had taken so grete hurte, that  
it was mernaile to thinke; And his hert gaf him, if y departed, 20  
that y shold do him grete damage / and thus in no wise wolde he  
be agreable to my delyuerance / and so fille they at wordes / In so  
moche that kynge ffrabras sware that he had leuir dye than to  
false his promys / than he deliuered me by night / and made me to 24  
be surely conduyte vnto this reame / where y haue abiden euir  
sith / and aftir my departyng thens, the Turke sent of his folkes to  
breke vp the chambre where as he wende y had ben, to put me to  
dethe, in despite of his brothir. But y thanke god & good kynge 28  
ffrabras / y was out of his daunger / ffor y wote wele, and y had  
ben in his handes, he wold haue had litil pite on me / that wold  
not haue pite of the dethe of his owne sone / and of so many  
notable men, asmoche as to deliure one persone for the sauacione 32  
of them alle" / Alle they *pat* were there of the Turkes meyne, knewe  
wele thies tales were trewe, wherof they were gretly encombred and  
abasshed of the cruelle & tyrannous disposicion of their maister.  
Than spake the kyng to Orkays, & seide / "Sir, ye must now telle 36  
your tale" / then saide Orkays, smylyngly / "sir, my tale shall sone  
be tolde / for y had neuir othir fortune of warre but suche as ye  
knowe, sauf one whiche y wolt not reherce for my praise / but for  
the praise of them that haue deserued it / trouthe it was, alle that 40



- Athis hath seide / It was my fortune to delyuere him ageinst the  
 wyl of my fadir / and conduyte him surely vnto fferaunt / and the  
 next day it happened they made a grete assaute on my logginges,  
 4 where as were many folkes slayn / and prisoners taken out of  
 nombre, wher-of y was one, and fild in the handes of Athis, that  
 had ben my prisoner / and whan he was in the Towne, he remembered  
 y had done somewhat for him / and yn grete haste ledde me thorough  
 8 the towne / and lete me oute at <sup>1</sup>the gate that was ageynst my  
 fadirs loggyng / and there deliuered me, seyng vnto me / ' I can no  
 bettir horse you, nor harneise you, to your pleasir than ye be / and  
 if y coude, ye may be sure y wolde / therfore ye shalle haue your  
 12 owne still ' / and thus departed y fro hym / and came to my fadir,  
 whiche seide, y ought to blame no man of this fortune but my self /  
 by the deliuerance of hym that he was no thinge agreable vnto /  
 than tolde y hym of my deliuerance / and by whom it was, whiche  
 16 was a thinge, as who seith, impossible for hym to bileue / & howe  
 be it, he sawe me deliuered, and knewe wele that I was delyuered  
 by hym that y had saued bifore / yet repented hym that he had  
 not put him to dethe / And at suche tyme as y toke Athis, y knewe  
 20 him not but by his dedes, which shewed wele him to be a noble  
 man / But whan he toke me, he knewe for certayne that y was the  
 Turkes sone / and what good he might haue had by me / yet was  
 he of so noble corage, that he forgate all couetise, and deliuered  
 24 me " / Than might folkes se howe basshfulst Athis was, to here his  
 praise, and also for drede he shold be shent / The kynge, the ladies,  
 and alle the company behelde him, which loked alle rede, and sore  
 abasshed / than asked him the kynge / " what / Athis made ye this  
 28 deliuerance " / and kneled downe alle shamefastly, and seide / " ffor-  
 sothe sir, yea / wherof y cry you mercy, ffor y coude in no wise  
 put him in aduenture that had saued my lif / and if yn this matier  
 y haue offendid ageinst youre grace, or ageinst my lorde my  
 32 maister / y biseche you bothe of pardone / and offere my self to  
 what punysshment it pleasith either of you to apointe / for y had  
 leuer a dyde, than by me he sholde haue ben in daunger of his lif."  
 Orkays repented him sore of this that he had tolde / for he sawe  
 36 wele by Athis pat he was both abasshed and adred / The kyng  
 perceyued wele that Orkays and Athis were bothe abasshed, and  
 seide to Orkays, "ye haue tolde me of the fredom of Athis / and  
 me semeth ye drede that y shold con him maugre / but forsothe, y  
 40 do not / I knowe wele there was offence / but the cause was so

Prince  
Orcays says  
he did free  
Prince David,

and was then  
captured, and  
set at liberty  
by him.

[1 lf. 82, bk.]

Orcays  
praises  
Prince David.

David con-  
fesses his  
fault against  
the King in  
setting  
Orcays free;

and is at once  
forgiven.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 83]

A Peacock is  
brought in,  
and on it the  
King vowe  
to defend  
his realm;

Orkays vows  
(after his  
father's  
death) to  
give back all  
the Turke  
conquests to  
Sicily.

Ferant and  
his Knights  
vow

never to let  
the Sultan  
be ransomed,  
if they catch  
him.

A Dance  
winds up  
the Banquet.

resonable, that with alle my hert y forgif him" / Athis thanked him  
right humbly / and than went to his maister, & besought <sup>1</sup>him of  
pardone, whiche lightly forgaf him; and aftir, alle his lif, loued he  
him the bettir for that noble dede. ¶ Aftir thies wordes, was 4  
brought yn a Poo by ij. gentilwomen / And the kynge made to the  
Poo his advowe first / and promysed to diffende his reaume to his  
power / "and that, notwithstanding the pride and tyranny of his  
aduersary *withoute* him, he wolde neur do tyranny nor shame to 8  
prisoner[es] that were noble men or of any good disposicion / but shold  
kepe them yn honour and noblesse as longe as they were in his  
gouernaunce" / Aftir, made Orkays his avowe, and seide that, "to his  
power, he wolde put him in payne to make pees bitwene the Turke 12  
his fadir, & þe kynge / & if his fadir died before hym, he shold  
neur, daies of his liffe, make warre *with* the kynge of Sizile, nor  
with his Reaume / but rathir yelde agein vnto him alle that his  
ffadir had taken fro hym / for he sawe him so wele *puruaide* in alle 16  
goode vertues / that aboute alle othir kynges, he desired his fauour  
and acqueyntaunce" / but the trouthe was this / that faire yonge  
lady, that sate by hym, meued his hert with this pite and kynde-  
nesse more than any othir thinge / though he spake it not / eueri 20  
man coude him grete thanke / The kynge, the quene, and their  
doughter thankid him moche / Aftir was the Poo borne to fferaunt,  
whiche sent it agein vnto the lordes and knyghtes that were  
prisoners, whiche made their avowes accórdyng to the same that 24  
Orkays had made. Aftir this, made fferaunt his avowe, and sware  
that, for the grete crueltees that he had seen *without* nombre in the  
Turkes persone, wold he neur yelde him vnto him / and if the  
Turke came in his daunger, he wolde neur put him to raunsom; 28  
and by the same avowe required he, and praide alle them that were  
vndir him, that they wolde make the same promes / The Halle was  
fulle of noble folkes, and the Poo was brough[t] bfore them / and  
euery man helde vp his hande, & sware *with* lowde voice the same 32  
promesse that fferaunt had made / The Poo was brought bfore the  
ijj. seruantes of fferaunt / whiche serued bfore the ladies / and  
they made their aduowe to god, to the ladies, and to the poo / that  
they shold truly kepe the same promesse / that their maister 36  
made / <sup>2</sup>Thies avowes were put in writyng by the kynges of  
armes / than were the lordes taken vp / and the Mynstrells came  
yn / and the lordes, knyghtes and squyers, ladies and gentilwomen,  
daunced ther / that night was ther no tidinges of the seege / 40

[<sup>2</sup> ff. 83, bk.]

- Orkays bicame so amorous of this faire lady / that he coude haue  
 no rest / and often tymes came he, by licence of the kynge, to se the  
 quene & their faire doughter / In so moche that folkes perceyued  
 4 wele by his maner / that he loued hir ouir alle thinge / and folkes  
 seide amonges them, that it were a mete mariage if he were  
 cristened, for therby shold the pees be sure and ferme / but without  
 he were cristened, ther was noon of the Reaume that wold be agre-  
 8 able ther-vnto / This faire lady knewe wele of alle this / whiche  
 made no countenance like it / for if she had knowen Surnome, or  
 one of his felawes, of as noble lynage as hym, she had leuer haue  
 had one of them with right litil, than him with alle the Turkes  
 12 landes, and in esspecial Le Surnome / for aboue alle othir she liked  
 him best; hou be it, there was in any of the tothir two as moche  
 honour as in any persone neded to be wissched, though Surnome  
 passed them. ¶ Tidinges sone ranne by some prisoners, that were  
 16 delyuered in that meane tyme / that the Turke was put in know-  
 lage of thavowes of the Banket / & whanne he herd them, he aduised  
 them weel / and perceyued by the kinges avowe that he had made,  
 to diffende his reaume to his power / that he wold not lightly  
 20 delyuere vp that Towne that he was yn / And aftir, remembred the  
 avowe of his sone, which was / what-so-euir he conquered in his  
 lif, aftir his dethe shold be deliuerd agein vnto the kynge of Sizile /  
 Aftir this, he thought on the avowe of fferaunt and alle his / whiche  
 24 was more lothe vnto hym than any of the tothir / for by that sawe  
 he his dethe sworne, if he came in their daunger / Also he sawe his  
 folkes alle out of corage, and thought wele that his goddes hated  
 hym / on the tothir side, he sawe the maner of the sege, that was  
 28 daily wers for him and wers / and bettir for them that were withyn  
 the towne / also what scareyte of vitaille they had / and with how  
 grete payne they gate that litil that they had / Alle thise tidinges  
 considered, he sawe him self how he had done shamefully to his  
 32 brother / whiche he wist wele wold neur be agreable to do hym  
<sup>1</sup>neither ayde ne service. with alle thise thoughtes, he fille in suche  
 sorowe and drede that he wist not wele what to do / And so he  
 thought to assemble his Capteynes and his counselle / and to shewe  
 36 them thies matiers, in suche wise that they shold not perceyue by  
 his maner nor his wordes, drede nor fere in him to slake their  
 corage, but toke this conclusion to breke with them, as though he  
 vndirstode them enclined to alle his pleasir / and of high and noble  
 40 corage, and thought to shewe his owne maner high and feers / for

Orkays is  
head over  
ears in  
love with  
Iolante.

But she likes  
Prince Philip  
best.

The Sultan  
hears of the  
vows at the  
Banquet,

and sees that  
his siege of  
Naples goes  
worse and  
worse.

[1 leaf 84]

He calls a  
Council.

The King of  
Sicily re-  
solves to  
attack the  
Sultan in rear

and front at  
once.

The Sultan  
lays his bad  
case before  
his Council:—

His Son 'll  
give back his  
conquests;

his death is  
sworn;

[1 If. 84, bk.]  
his men are  
out of heart.

His Council  
answer:—

wel he wist, in conclusion, that generally they alle wold gif him counselle to departe / There may no man telle the grete deuoir that the kynge of Siziles folkes did euery day / grete payne it was to kepe them from fighting with the Turke, and many tymes went 4 they out and scarmysshed with hem / and alf-way to the damage of the Turke, wherby the kynge saw wel that the Turkes folkes had lost hert & corage / and in his ymaginacion thought to make a grete assaute vpon the Turkes loggyng / & concluded in his secrete 8 counselle so to do / Than sent he a seruauant of his, that was wel spoken, secrete and wise, to his lieftenaunt, and sent hym worde at what houre he wold make thassaute vpon the Turke, warnyng hym to be there with alle the power he might make; and that he shold 12 first set vpon the Turke; and while he was yn hande with hym vpon the tone side, wolde he haue alle his power come oute of the towne, & sett on hym on the tothir side.

**Y**E haue wel herde how the Turke was determyned to sende 16 for his counselle and alle his Capitaynes / & so he did / and whan they were bfore hym, he seide vnto them in this maner / “ffaire lordes, the cause that y haue sent for you is this / ye knowe wel, first, the takyng of my Sone; I suppose also, ye 20 vndirstonde thavowe that he hath made, whiche turneth me to grete displeasir / for if y were dede, the payne that y haue taken in my conquest shold litil profite; for his avowe is, affir my dethe to yelde it agein / and ye knowe wel y haue no moo childreen nor 24 othir heyre than him, sauf my brother, whiche y shaH not right wel accorde with” / than seide he smylyngly / “ye knowe wel also, how by the avowes that haue be made, my dethe is sworne / Also my aduersary hath made his avowe to diffende his lande, and 28 neur to trete with me / ye se <sup>1</sup>oure conduyte, and thexploite of warre that we haue done / If y coude se you of as good corage as y haue seen you before tymes, y shold be wel comforted / but sith we came bfore this towne, I sawe no good assaute made by vs; 32 wherfore y pray you gete agein your good corage, and I shaH not leue you, but bere you company in alle daungers” / Thus endid his wordes; and they alle withdrewe them, and spake togedre a while; and than, by one of the best of them, he was answerd in this wise / 36 “Sir, we haue alle wel vndirstand your seyng / and thervpon spoken togedre / and right humbly we beseche you / of that I shal say vnto you, to take no displeasir / for it is as late to breke vnto you now as it can be / and if we had durst, we had done it long 40

- sith / ye knowe, sir, the hardnesse and aduersitee that is nowe  
 come on you / and it semeth, sauf your displeasir / that the naturall  
 pite that a ffadir or a brother ought to haue, or a good prince, to  
 4 his suggettes & seruauntes, is gretly quenched and almost failed yn  
 you / whiche is a grete pite and damage / and hath caused alle your  
 frendes and seruauntes to be vttrily discomforted ; we knowe wele,  
 for thise causes haue thises avowes be made on your persone / ye  
 8 knowe youre sone in daunger, that might haue ben yolden vnto  
 you for a right meane man, to regarde of hym / but ye wold be  
 therto in no wise agreable / but to put hym in thauenture of dethe /  
 and alle your trewe seruauntes, that were prisoners with hym, and  
 12 alle them that ye had leyde in plegge for the kynge your brother ;  
 yea / and perauenture his owne persone, ffor we knowe hym suche /  
 that forto suffre dethe he will not breke his promes ; and that might  
 ye perceyue wele, by the cristen man that he deliuered" / Than  
 16 answerd the Turke, and seide : "by that delyueraunce haue y lost  
 my sone. But whatsoever hath be done before this tyme / be it  
 good or euyll, we be in suche cas nowe as ye se / whiche we may  
 not long endure without othir purueaunce : and it toucheth you alle  
 20 aswell as to me / and therefore y haue assembled you to haue your  
 aduise / put out of your hertes all rancour & debates, and remembre  
 the matiers nowe, yn suche cace as they are yn" / It semed to them  
 alle that were there, that debates might lital anauntage / and that  
 24 they <sup>1</sup>most purvey for othir remedy, for they were in right grete  
 scarste of vitailles, by the kyng of Siziles lieftenaunt and his folkes,  
 whiche dayly toke it from them. The Turke asked thavice of hym  
 that best pleased hym the reason of / whiche saide in this wise /  
 28 "sir, for tho causes that haue be rehersed here / men shal not se  
 folkes speke to-gedir a doseyn wordes, but it is of the conduyte of  
 you / and of your hoste / and to sey the trouthe of their corage and  
 wille / it is no thing towardes you nor your warres / as they were  
 32 whan ye came hider / for euery man seith / that in youre persone,  
 as to the gudyng of your warres, they se neither rewle nor  
 ordenaunce ; wherby they are so discouraged, that xx<sup>ti</sup> Sizilians are  
 worth an .C. of your folkes. Also youre vitailles faile you / and  
 36 wynter shall come on hastily, and ye haue not folkes y-nough to  
 holde your sege / and for to conduyte your vitaille / wherfore the  
 kyng of Siziles folkes distressith them dayly that conduyte it / And  
 therefore, myn aduise shalbe this / that, or ye haue any grettir losse,  
 40 that ye breke vp the sege / and drawe ye all this wynter tyme in-to

'Your troubles are all of your own making:

you wouldn't save your son's life when you could.'

The Sultan says, 'We're in a bad plight.'

What's to be done?'

[1 leaf 85]

One of the Council answers:—

'Your folk see neither rule nor order in your conduct of this war.'

You'd better break up the siege.

The longer  
you stay,  
the greater  
your loss and  
shame 'll be.

suche townes of this Reaume as ye haue conquered / men shalle sey  
that this shalle not be for your honour / but byholde / if ye abide  
here any lenger, what honour ye may wyne therby / I dare sey, at  
last ye shal be fayn to departe, whan ye shal haue spent youre  
richesse, and perauenture lost many moo of your folkes, wherthorugh,  
your departyng than shal be grettir damage and more shame than  
it shold be at this day / for in defeaute of vitaille, can ye not gete  
that place yet / it is so wele purveide / & by trefy ye can not gete  
it / ffor ye knowe wele what avowe the kynge hath made; wherfore  
ye may entende by no meane to haue it but by force; and beholde  
hou fer ye are therfrom / for sith ye came hider, was not one of vs  
so hardy that durst thinke to approche to their walles / wherfore,  
alle thinges considered, with your correccion I am of thopinion of  
your departyng. And whan ye shalle be withdrawen in-to what

When you've  
withdrawn  
to one of your  
towns, you  
can send  
home for  
more help,

[1 lf. 85, bk.]

Towne of this Reaume it shal please you / ye may sende than to  
the grete lordes of your Reaume, to shewe them yn what cas ye be /  
and make them to take aduise amonges them, and sende you suche  
counsell as they thinke best / and then most they nedes helpe to  
execute<sup>1</sup> suche counsell as they gif you; and from hensforth  
afferme your self to bileue your counsell, and to werke by their  
aduise / for the moost wise that lyueth, hath nede of counsell and  
aduise / and if it please you so to do / ye shal kepe that ye haue  
conquered; for youre enemy is not mighti / And y trust, if it will  
please you to bileue your kynne and counselle, by the next somer  
your honour shal be recouerd, and be in as good caas as euer it  
was." Thise wordes, herde by the Turke, displeased him no  
thinge / and so he asked the tothir folowyng, their aduises / But  
euery man was so weried and annoied, that they were of the same  
opinion. The Turke then concluded on this opinion, seying / "ye  
blame that y haue not done by counsel, and yet me semeth, by  
vsyng of this counsell, bothe shame & blame shal bifalle me / but  
as hereyn y wol leue myn opiion / and do by your aduise and  
counselle; and me thinkith it were good to knowe the day of oure  
departyng." than concluded they on the xij<sup>th</sup> day folowyng / And  
that shold be in the night / euery man shold trusse his tente and  
his cariage / and euery man be on horsbak at the sprynge of day /  
The conclusion this taken, euery man was warned that had any  
charge / but the day of their departyng was ouir longe & damage-  
able for theym / ¶ Ye haue wele herde here-bifore of thentirprise  
that the kynge of Sizile had taken, and how he had assertayned

The Sultan  
agrees to  
retire from  
the siege in  
twelve days.

- his lieftenaunt therof; and the messenger had quytte hym so wele, that he was entred secretly in-to the Towne agein / and reported vnto the kynge, for trouthe, that in his lieftenaunt shold
- 4 be no defeaute / for he wold be there *with* moo than .x. thousand men / at suche houre as the kynge had commaundid him / whiche houre was at the poynt of the day, when men might vnnethes se / and they had taken that houre / for cause the tothir ij. puissaunces
- 8 of the Turke might not so easely come to-gedir vnto hym as if it had ben day / The day of this entirprise was on the morowe aftir the turke had assembled his counsell, as ye haue herde. This night the kynge of Sizile made alle *purueaunce* for his goyng forth, as he
- 12 that wold be there him-self. vndir his baner that day he herde masse, & made alle his company do the same / and than toke he leue of the quene and of alle the ladies, whiche he lefte fulle sore wepyng; for grete drede had they of hym / and of his company.
- 16 The kynge wente downe, and came to the gates, praing alle his folkes to quyte hem <sup>1</sup>wele, for if they might abate the Turkes pride / they shold from thensforth lede the remenaunt of their lyues in ioie and in disport, for by this meane shold ende the
- 20 warres / wherthorough so moche cristen people had died / fferaunt, that was bfore *with* his company, whan he shold go oute, he escorted in like wise his iij. seruauntes; and they made their avowes to god, that, shold outhir dye, or be the first that shold come to the
- 24 Turkes tentes, and if they founde him there, they shold put them in deuoir to accomplissh their maisters avowe / In like wise, as the kynge hath monysshed his folkes / so did the lieftenaunt, that was without, and nerre vnto the Turkes tentes, exorted his folkes, shew-
- 28 yng them that his entirprise was not for no smalle scarmyssh or assemble / but either to destroye the Turke, or to dye in the quarelle / eueri man promysed hym to do wele; & that for drede of dethe they wold not lette to accomplissh the kynges pleasirs / And as
- 32 they were in thise wordes, they were so nygh their enemyes that they were amonges tentes and pavilions / and came with suche strength and corage, that at their first comyng they bare downe alle that they mette *with*, ouirthrowing pavilions, and sleying men so
- 36 many, that it was meruaile to se / Than was the crie and the noise so moche, that they herd it in-to the Towne / than they opened the gates / and fferaunt and his company went first out, and went streight vpon the Turkes wacche, whiche they lightly destroyed /
- 40 than came they to the Turkes loggyng / whiche they fonde fortified /

But the next morning, at break of day, the Sicilian Captain-general, with 10,000 men

[1 leaf 86]  
(the King having heartend his folk),

attacks, and is among the Turkish tents, slaying their men.

Ferant sallies from Naples.

The 3 Princes  
charge up to  
the Sultan's  
tent, and,

having sent  
for the King  
of Sicily,

roul the  
Turks.  
The Sultan  
offers to  
surrender,

but the foot-  
soldiers cut  
off his head,  
and stick it  
on a spear.

The Sicilians  
retire to  
Naples.

The two other  
Turkish  
Divisions  
hold together,

but litil while endured it ageinst them / The kynge folowed fferaunt  
with grete corage, and alle his folkes / and perceyued wele anon that  
the Turkes loggyng was wonne ; wherof, if he were glad and ioifult,  
it is no question. The iij. felawes, that y haue spoken of before, that 4  
moche desired to accomplissh their promes, did so moche that they  
came to the Turkes tent, whereas fond hym accompayned with alle  
his folkes, that were than assembled in harneys, praying them to  
quite hem wele / when the iij. ffelawes sawe this company, they 8  
sent anon for the kynge, whiche came fforthwith ; and whan they  
sawe the kynge nere them / they smote yn amonges their enemyes  
with suche strength and corage, that lightly they made them weye /  
for they ouirthrowe alle that abode their strokes. The kynge, that 12  
was nere them, behelde hem in grete mernaile, thinkyng that it was  
impossible for any mortalle bodies to haue done that they did. Thus  
in litil while, <sup>1</sup>the grete puissaunce that was aboute the Turke,  
brake, and was discomfite / than wolde he haue yolden him / but 16  
noman wolde take him. Thise iij. ffelawes, whan they sawe him  
in that caas, coude not fynde in their hertes to lay handes on him /  
and take him prisoner they might not, for their auowes ; so lette  
they the fote men to slee hym / and made to smyte of his hede, & 20  
put it on a spere / And whan the kynge of Sizile sawe he had the  
ouirhand of his enemyes / he made to blowe retrayte, for drede of  
the tothir ij. puissaunces / for by than was the sonne risen. And  
euery man, seing the kynges baner withdrawe / drewe them vnto 24  
him glad & ioifult, with prisoners and richesse out of nombre. Thus  
drewe they hem alle vnto the Towne ; for wele they wist the seege  
was ended / hou be it, they might haue had grete harme by the  
remenaunt of the Turkes folkes, seyng they were sore foughten with 28  
a-fore / Thise othir ij companies of the Turkes were assembled  
to-gedre & embatailed for to come vnto the Turke ; but anone they  
were assertayned that he was dede, and alle his logging ouirthrowen /  
and so they kepte hem stille to-gedre / they sawe the kynge with- 32  
drawe to the towne, and entred yn with alle his folkes alle at his  
pleasir. The ladies were assertayned of the grete iournay and good  
auenture, that god by his grace had yonen the kynge vpon his  
enemyes : than went they to chirche, to thanke god / The kynge, 36  
whan he came to the Towne, he alight at the Chirche, and alle the  
belles of the Towne range / he and alle his folkes thonked god with  
goode herte / and made his offrynges / and aftir went to his  
loggyng / and made to purvey that his lieftenaunt and alle his folkes 40



- were wele logged / They had be there but litil while, but the  
wacche tolde them for trouthe that the tothir ij. compaynes of the  
Turkes departed / Than shortly the kynge and alle his folkes went  
4 to horsbake, and folowed their enemyes / and *withyn* short space  
ouirtoke them / and they wold haue embatailed them / but they  
were so affraied and discouraged, as they that had lost their hede /  
for they abode but litil while / but toke them to flee / and than the  
8 chace bigan, whiche dured a iij. or iiij. myle, wherein were so many  
slyayne, that it was meruaile to thinke, for there was no diffence  
amonges them. than the kynge made his folkes to retourne agein  
yn-to the <sup>1</sup>Towne / and made to take alle the good that was bilong- [1 leaf 8r]  
12 yng to the Turke and his hoste, to be departed amonges his folkes,  
to euery man affir his degre / and was good innumerable, biside the  
prisoners they had gotten / Also they fonde in the vessells that  
caried gold and siluer, more than ij. Millions of golde / eueri man  
16 was so wele garnysed *with* othir goodes, that they toke litil hede  
therof; but by a comen assent, and with good hert, gaf it vnto the  
kynge for to mayntene his warres / prouidyng that they might do  
their owne pleasirs *with* their prisoners. The kynge with good  
20 wille agreed ther-to, and sawe him by this meane riche y-nough to  
mayntene his warres, and for to conquere a nother reauume ther-to.  
Of alle the goodes that were gotten there, Surnome, Athis and Ector,  
were not the bettir / for eueri man knewe him self a kynges sone /  
24 and thought, now the warres were ended, they had litil nede of  
good / for they shold haue good y-nough, bothe for them self, and  
to make their felawes riche y-nough for euir / and thought eche of  
them, if his felowe knewe that he were a kynges sone, they had  
28 ben to famylier *with* him. Thus had alle thies iij. kynges sones one  
thought / and eche of them thought neuir to faile his felawes, but  
to make them riche for euir. many folkys meruailed moche that  
thise iij. toke nomore hede of good / for they toke hede of non  
32 othir thinge, but only to be wele horsid and wele armed / and wele  
beseyne / & of alle this lakkid they nought at any tyme they wold  
aske it. whan they were retourned agein vnto their loggings,  
vnarmed & wele araied, they semed liker aungells than men / The  
36 kynge of Sizile rehersed in the presence of the ladies, and of alle  
them that were there, the grete worthinesse that he had sen in  
them iij. that day bfore the Turkes tente / and seide that he was  
half abassed and aferde to beholde the grete noblesse of them; and  
40 tolde howe they had parted the prese, and how many folkes fille

but soon  
retreat,

take to flight,

and are cut  
up by the  
Sicilians,

who take  
large booty  
and 2,000,000  
of gold.

The 3 Princes  
of France,  
Scotland,  
and England  
will not  
accept any  
plunder.

They look  
liker angels  
than men.

The King of  
Sicily tells  
of the Three  
Princes'  
prowess.

[1 ff. 87, bk.]

He calls a  
Council,

and asks  
their advice

as to the  
recovery of  
his realm.

They urge  
him to press  
on, and re-  
take all his  
towns from  
the Turks.

downe aboute them for fere of their strokes; so many, that their horses might vnnethe haue rowme to stande in / than tolde he aftir of the dethe of the Turke; And that, notwithstanding the grete crueltee that eche of theym had founde in hym / whan they sawe 4 him in wille to yelde him / there was none of theym wolde lay hande on him / but lete the fote men allone *with* him. Euery man  
1 had grete pleasir to here the kynge reherce the Honour and noblesse of thise iij. yonge gentilmen / This night passed the kynge 8 forth in grete ioie / and on the morowe made many masses to be seide, in thanking god of their good fortune / Aftir dyner, assembled he his counselle, to take aduise vpon suche besinesse as he had to do, for he was bothe wise and worthy, and loued and dred god / 12 and for thise causes eueri man loued him, and desired to serue him. And, aftir his power, he had ben aHwey large and curtaise / and right famylier *with* noble folkes / wherfore he had their loue so fermely, that, for to dy, they wold leue hym in no daunger / ¶ whan 16 his counselle was assembled, he saide amonges them in this wise /  
“My trewe & kynde frendes, by whom at this day I haue hadde this high and noble fortune / wherby y may come to the recouere of alle my reaume / yet can y not leue to calle on you, to put you in 20 daunger for me / notwithstanding the grete damages & harmes that ye haue suffred for my sake / ye se wele, my trewe frendes & sogettes, the estate of oure enemyes, and of vs bothe / wherupon y pray you to counselle me / for the wele of cristendome and the 24 recouere of my reaume / and y am redy in what ye wille aduise me, to iubarde my body and my goodes to thaccomplishment therof, if me thinke it be leefult.” This counselle was long in takyng, for they knewe wele it was tyme and nede / wherfore they counselled 28 the kynge to tary not, but to ouir-ride his reaume / and to conquere the townes agein, that the Turke had wonne; ffor they thought wele, if he went shortly ther-about, his enemyes were yet in suche drede & discomfort, that he shold fynde litil diffence in them / 32 And they thought it neded not to telle Orkays yit the dethe of his ffadir, notwithstanding he had made his avowe to yelde alle agein / but they thought it shold be grettir honour for the kynge to conquere it agein by might. ¶ In this maner was it ordeyned and 36 concluded / and the kynge made alle comoners to departe, sauf only men of werre and sowdiours / This night made he redy alle thinges for to kepe the felde, an[d] on the morowe was alle his ordenaunce & Artilyr carted redy to go forth / And the quene and hir doughtir, 40

and alle hir ladies, went vnto a faire Castelle, but iiij. myle thens.  
 By than was spred the tidynges of the grete victory thorough alle  
 his Reaume / wherof they made meruailous ioie / and yelded than-  
 4<sup>1</sup> kynges to god. On the morowe, came many folkes vnto the All the  
Sicilians  
reioice at  
the victory;  
[1 leaf 88]  
 kyng, bringyng vitale and othir stuff / so that the kyng wende  
 there had not ben so many holdyng the cristen feith in a gret parte  
 of his Reaume / Than concluded the kyng, to sende forth tidynges  
 8 to alle cristen princes, of the victory that god had youen him / than  
 were messangers sent to euery Reaume ; so that, *withyn* litil while,  
 this grete iournay was knowen thorough alle cristendome / & euery  
 prince made processions to be gon, thorough-out his Reaume / and  
 12 belles to be rongen in euery chirche, for the good aventure / &  
 many suche, as had take litil hede of the kyng of Sizile, or of his  
 Reaume, and had called him an vnhappy kyng / nowe calle they  
 hym wele vred, & repente them of their seyng / The kyng of  
 16 Sesile, seing his grete puissaunce, & wille of his folkes, went forth  
 conqueryng on his enemyes / and wanne *with* assaute the first  
 towne he came vnto, whiche was the strengist of the Reaume, sauf  
 only that / that himself had be biseged yn / but they *withyn* the  
 20 towne had lost alt corage / wherfore ther was founde litil diffence  
 in them / and alle they were put to dethe, *without* takyng of any  
 one prisoner / This takyng put the remenaunt of the turkes in  
 suche drede / that daily they departed out of the land / The kyng  
 24 of Luby him-self, and alle his company, were goon agein in-to his  
 owne Reaume / they that abode, were hopeles of any socour or aide  
 that might come to them / wherby, in litil while, what by force and  
 by tretee, the moost part of the Reaume was recouerd, sauf twoo or  
 28 thre Townes, that were nigh the see / and that was, for they thought  
 that they might sonner haue socour than any that was *withyn* the  
 Reaume / The kyng, that was sore trauailed / and it was than  
 wynter, toke counselle to lete them be til somer, and than to  
 32 assemble his power agein / and to lay sege to them, and wyne  
 them / Than lefte he fferant in the next place *pat* ioyned vnto  
 them / for grete trust had he in him / and went home him self /  
 and abode the remenaunt of the wynter with the quene and his  
 36 faire doughtir, whom him thought tyme was to be maried / But  
 aboute alle thing, he desired to bistowe hir to a man of grete honour  
 and worthinesse. ¶ Nowe shalle we leue a while of the grete warres  
 of Sizile, & speke of Almayne. [*Illumination: on right, Messengers*  
 40 *giving a letter to a King: on left, Kings, Bishops and Lords.*]

[<sup>1</sup> ff. 88, bk.]  
The Emperour,  
Frederick,  
Duke of  
Brunswick,

dies.

The Electors

give his  
empire to  
the King of  
Sicily, who

thus becomes  
an Emperour.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 89]

The biggest  
Sicilian town  
in Turkish  
hands

is taken

by the 3  
Princes,

IN that tyme had the Emperour a duc of Bruswitt, named  
ffrederike, the whiche, for none nede that the kynge of Sizile  
had, nor his Reaume, wolde neur entende to do him aide nor  
soecour / And for trouthe, he was olde & beyonde the yeres to bere 4  
armes / beside his age, was he as couetous as any man might be /  
thise ij. principalle causes letted hym to do any aide to the Reaume  
of Sizile / There is nobody, be he olde or yonge, but ones shalt dy /  
This Emperours tyme came, that nedes he most departe out of the 8  
world / and lefte grete tresour behinde him, whiche, aftir his dethe,  
litol profited him / and in his lif did him noo worship / for it  
diffendid him to accomplissh suche thinges as by his dignite and  
office he ought to do. aftir his dethe, anone the Chesers of thempyre 12  
were assembled, and aduised amonges them, whom they might make  
Emperour ; and concluded amonges them that the kynge of Sizile  
shold be it / for he had endured grete trauaile and peyne for the feith.  
So they purueyde in alle haste to be ascertayned of his pleasir / and 16  
befille so, that on cristmasse day the presentacion of the Empire was  
brought hym, whiche he resceyued fulle humbly / Thus was the  
kynge of Sizile Emperour, and purposed to do more seruice to god,  
if the cace requyred, than euir did he before hym / Than ordeyned 20  
he his aray, accordyng to his estate, more rially than it had ben  
bifore. Whan thise tidynges were knowen thorough the Reaume,  
they made grete ioie / and euery man seide, that he was moost  
worthy to be it, of any man that lyued / In this meane ceason, 24  
Surname and his ij. felaws asked leue of their maister to go vnto  
an Enterpryce ; and he graunted them, and accompayned them  
right mightly / they tolde their maister no thing whider they  
went / and he enquired them not / for he trusted y-nough in their 28  
honour & wisdomes / than went they vnto a Towne, that was the  
biggest that was in the turkes handes / than sent they bifore of  
their folkes to be hidde in a wode but litil thens / and them-self  
went vnto the towne with suche feliship as pleased them / & scalet 32  
it be night / even against the point of the day / & were entred  
vpon the walles of the maister Toure or any man espied them /  
than went they downe, and opened the gates / and lete the remen-  
aunt come yn, that were in a bussment without. and than aroos 36  
the noise and the cry thoroughout the towne / and euery man wold  
haue goon to their harneys / but it was to late / by the noblesse of  
thise iij. and of their company, was the Towne sone deliuerd of alle  
the Turkes / for they made serche euery house, and slewe as many 40

as they coude fynde withyn the Towne / Then sawe they in the hauen, lyng many vesselles / wherein they supposed was the richesse of the Towne. Than made they alle thise goodes to be departed  
4 amonges their company / and whan euery man was rewarded & wele logged / they made a lettir to their maister / and sent him worde howe they hadde done / “praying hym, if it pleased hym, to come thider, or ellis to commaunde them his pleasirs.” Whan sferaunt  
8 sawe the letters, he redde them with glad chere / and perceyued wele that his folkes had wonne Gayett, the moost stronge place that was withyn the Reaume of Sizile / Than was he as ioyfult as any man might be / and toke suche company as pleased hym, and  
12 went vnto them / and, at his departyng, wrote a lettir vnto the Emperour, shewing him alle this matier, how it was / and howe grete a wele it was for his Reaume; ffor as long as the turkes had ben able to kepe that place, they might haue kepte alle the cuntre  
16 aboute them in tribute. and withyn that lettir he had closed the lettir that had be sent hym by his iij. seruauntes. ¶ Now leueth the tale a while to speke of them, & retourneth to speke of Orkays.

20 **T**Routhe it was, that he knewe wele that the sege was departed / but he knewe not in what maner / notwithstanding he en-  
quired often / but noman wolde <sup>1</sup>telle him, for the Emperour had commaundid so / and so he knewe wele, sith the sege was broken, he coude not be delyuered without raunsome / wherfore he  
24 desired to speke with the Emperour / and the Emperour went vnto him; to whom he seide / “sir, y knowe certaynly that þe sege þat was this before the Towne, is no lenger / wherfore y beseeche you that ye wille entende to my delyueraunce / and y promyse you that  
28 y shalþ do my trewe deuoir to make the pees and accorde bitwene my lorde my fadir, and you” / “fforsothe,” saide the Emperour / “it is alle othir wise than ye knowe; but entre in-to yondir lital chambre / and ij. or iij. of your folkes, suche as best shalle please  
32 you / and y shalþ telle you suche thinges as touche you right nere” / than went he in-to the chambre / and the Emperour called v. or vj. of his counselle with hym / and went in to Orkais, and saide vnto hym / “my frende, for youre wele, it behoueth that ye be aduertised  
36 for suche thinges as are befallen sith ye were prisoner” / than tolde he him alle holly the dethe of his ffadir / the destruccion of his folkes, what nombre was ded of them / Aftir, he tolde him the recouere of his places / and of the takyng of his last place, that  
40 was wonne agein by Surnome and his felawes. Than tolde he him

and all the  
Turks in it  
are slain.

This town is  
Gaeta.

The Turkish  
Prince  
Orcays

[ 1f. 80, bk.]

is told of the  
death of his  
father;

and of the  
loss of his  
towus.

Orcays is not  
to be admit-  
ted to ransom  
till the Em-  
peror has  
retaken all  
his Sicilian  
towns.

As Orcays is  
now Sultan,

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 90]

he declares  
he will keep  
his promise  
to give up  
his Sicilian  
towns to the  
Emperor.

the grace that god had youen him, to be chosen a diffendour of the cristen feith; and how he was Emperour; wherby he was bounde to mayntene & encrese the cristen lawe. Aftir he had tolde Orkais this, he seide, vpone the request that he hade made vnto him for his 4 delyueraunce / that he entendid not to put him to fynauce, bifore he had by force recouerd his inheritaunce / and than he wolde be agreable to his delyueraunce / Orkais, hering thies tidynges, by the whiche he vndirstode the dethe of his ffadir / and of many a noble 8 man that was with him / wherfore he made grete sorow & lamentacion, & so did alle suche of his folkes as he had with him / so moche that noon of hem coude speke a worde. But at laste, a wise knyght of his seid vnto him, "My lorde! suche be the adventures of 12 this world / there is no man can be assured here, of parfit wele / and as for this losse, ye can not recouere it by your sorowe / Wherfore the best meane of remedy is, sith it is so fortunied, now to ouirpasse this sorowe / & to remembre the best waies for your self / for ye be 16 rightfull heire vnto the Turke; & his inheritaunce most descende vnto you / and your abidyng here shalle gretly annoie you / and litil profit vnto the Emperour that is here pre'sent. It is not Longe sith ye aduowed bifore Hym / if the Turke were dede, that ye wolde 20 delyuere vnto his handes as moche as the Turke shold leue you of this Reaume; wherfore, it is wele done now, that ye accomplissh your auowe / and as for your delyueraunce, ye may apointe with him to his pleasir / aftir your power" / "Trewly," saide Orkais, 24 "that y haue promysed and auowed, y am redy to holde" / the Emperour thankid him / "nathelees," he saide, "that he purposed, neither be tretise nor apointement, to recouere no place of his owne Reaume, but like as it had ben taken fro him by force / so wolde 28 he wyne it agein, or euir that he entendid to the deliuerance of any prisoner that he had" / Orkais, hering this answeere, with the remenaunt of his sorowe, was passyng heuy and pensiff, and toke leue of the Emperour / and retourned to his logging / where he 32 endured in grete sorow / til such tyme as ye shalle here-aftir here / fferant, as y haue seide you, did so wele, that he came sauffy to the towne that his folkes had newly taken / where as his thre seruauantes ioiffully receyued him / ye may wele wite there was grete 36 ioie amonges them; for he loued them thre as wele as they had ben his owne children. Now shall y telle you of the Turkes folkes that were retourned in-to their Cuntrees. [*Illumination: March of Troops from a City: baggage-waggons, footmen, horsemen and Chiefs.*] 40

**M**Any tymes bi-fore, hadde they retourned with grete glorie, The Turks who've gone home beaten,  
 semying to them that al the world might not endure ageinst them / But now is it othirwise / for they retourned with  
 4 heuy chere for their maister, that they had thus pitously lost for  
 lakke of corage. They that were in the contre abidyng, hering and their countrymen there,  
 this sorowfull tidinges of the dethe of their lorde, coursed the houre  
 that cuir suche fleers were borne, and helde them as shamed men,  
 8 without honour / and they that had lost their frendes, wolde fulle  
 fayne haue putt them to dethe / Thus wist they not whedir to go / [<sup>1</sup> 1f. 90. bk.]  
 but were fayne to hide them in their houses / as they that durst  
 not be shewed / wisshyng that they had neuir departed out of  
 12 Sizile / but that they had ben slayne whan their maister was / the  
 sorowe was right grete ouir alle the Turkes lande, with alle his  
 sogettes, whan they knewe the trouthe of his dethe / and that he  
 had but one only sone, whiche was yit prisoner / thus had they have no comfort,  
 16 no recomfort / for the moost part of the grete lordes that shold helpe  
 to sustene them and comfort them, were dede in the company of  
 their lorde / natheles, at last they toke hert vnto them / and  
 assembled the iij. estates throughout alle the lond, to take counselle  
 20 and auise vpon the gouernaunce of euery contre & lordshipe / & of  
 the deliuerance of their yonge lord / and as they were for this  
 nede assembled, came tidinges vnto them of the grete losses that  
 they daily had in Sizile / and of the good and stronge Towne that  
 24 the iij. felawes had newly conquered, as ye haue herde bifore, wher-  
 of they were right sorowfulle / Natheles they ordeyned vpon their  
 othir businesse, holdyng the Reaume of Sizile for lost / & alle the and hold Sicily lost;  
 richesse that was caried thider, as is bifore rehersed / thinkyng  
 28 wele this losse might not be recouerd by them / wherfore they con-  
 cluded to take aduise vpon the remenaunt of their charge / whiche  
 the grettist was, to haue agein there yong Lorde that might gouerne  
 them / yn whom they hadde grete affiaunce / wherfore they con- but they wish to ransom Orcays.  
 32 cluded to make a request vnto the Emperour to haue saufcondite  
 for some of them to come to him / and purveide connyng officers  
 of armes to be sent vnto the Emperour / for the request of this  
 saufcondite. ¶ Now leue we them with their charge, and retourne  
 36 to the Emperour.

**T**his meane while the wynter passed, and the newe ceason  
 approche / the Emperour assembled all his counselle, and the  
 Capitaynes, suche as he had moost affiaunce yn, and there  
 40 was speche of alle his bessynesse / and concluded that, yn the

moneth of Iune, the Emperour shold be in the felde, & his puis-  
 saunce, to conquere agein the remenaunt of his places that his  
 enemyes helde *withyn* his Reaume / among alle othir that were sent  
 for / fferauant was comen thider / and had lefte his iij. seruantes 4  
 kepyng the places that they hadde wonne. <sup>1</sup>wherof the Emperour  
 was sore troubled that they were not come / and so was faire  
 Iolante that loued hem ful hertily / and in esspecialle Le Surnome.  
 wherfore she desired moche to se them, and so did alle othir ladies 8  
 and gentilwomen; and some of them seide unto hir, to trouble hir /  
 for they knewe wele she desired moche to se them / that they herde  
 sey / that, at the takyng of the place, Le Surnome was slayne / and  
 the tothir ij. were wounded to the dethe; but ther was noon that 12  
 wolde telle it to the Emperour, for troubling of him. This faire  
 lady, heryng thise tidynges, toke suche sorow at hir hert, that she  
 might neither ete ne drynke / she thought alway that she sawe  
 them bifore hir / doing hir suche service as they were wont to do / 16  
 and had in hir self y-nough of ymaginacions of the beaute and  
 maner of their persones / and of the grete pite and damage that was  
 of their deth / whiche, as she thought, was incomparable / and this  
 thought was neur out of hir mynde. hou be it, bifore hir fadir, 20  
 she couerd hir sorow as wele as she might; But she coude not so  
 wele couer it, but that he perceyued hir hert was not in ease / and  
 he had no moo children but hir / wherfore it greued him moche  
 the more to see her in that / So on a day he toke hir a-part, and 24  
 asked hir what hir ayled / for he saw wele she was right heuy /  
 and she thankid his grace, and saide there was no suche thing; for  
 gretely she dred to telle hym, in as moche as it was tolde hir  
 secretly / and also, if he shold knowe therof, she wist wele / he 28  
 shold make right grete sorowe. The Emperour was not content  
 with this answare / but toke hir forth with hym in-to an Inner  
 chambre / and wold nedes wite whi it was / than kneled she downe  
 a-fore him / and bisought him, that what so euir she shold sey 32  
 vnto hym, that he wold not be troubled ther-with / nor also to  
 thinke in hir, that any fonde lone caused hir to haue the annoy *pat*  
 she had, but only the grete losse & damage of him and of his  
 Reaume / than tolde she him / how she hadde herd say that Surnome 36  
 sholde be slayne at the last towne that was taken / and his othir  
 ij. felawes wounded to the dethe / and this was it that caused hir  
 to be so sorowfuH, to thinke that so noble persones as they were /  
 and by whom grete honour and wele was come to him / and to his 40

The 3 Princes  
 stay at Gaeta,  
 [1 leaf 91]

but some  
 Court ladies  
 declare that  
 Philip is kild,

and David  
 and Hum-  
 phrey wound-  
 ed to death.

Princess  
 Iolante

confesses to  
 her father

her sorrow  
 for the re-  
 ported death  
 and mortal  
 wounds of the  
 3 Princes.



- Reaume, sholde be now so sone ded & destroied / And whan the  
Emperour <sup>1</sup>herde thise tidynges / he thought verily it had ben [1 ff. 91, bk.]  
sothe / & had suche sorowe / that he lened him downe on his bed / The Em-  
peror grieves  
for the news,  
4 and might not speke. he bade his doughter sende for fferaunt / she  
did so / and he came anone / and founde the Emperour liyng, his  
yen fulle of teeres / and coude not speke a worde to him / wherof and has  
Ferant sum-  
mond.  
8 fferaunt was meruailously abasshed / and kneled downe bfore him,  
8 biseching him to telle him / what hym ayled / for in alle his liff had  
he neuir see him in suche plite / for no losse that euir bifelle him.  
So atte laste the Emperour tolde him of thise tidinges with fulle  
grete payue / for his hert was so sore enclosed that he might  
12 vnnethe speke / and whan fferaunt herd this, he was sore abasshed /  
so that he wist not what to thinke / for the grete loue that he had  
to his iij. seruantes; hou be it, that he had seen them sith / and  
lefte them wele y-nough at ease / than seide he to the Emperour /  
16 "trewly, sir, than are they dede sith my departyng / for y lefte Ferant says  
he left the  
3 Princes safe  
and sound.  
them alle hole & sauf / and if it were othir-wise, y wote wele y shold  
not long endure aftir them / for y haue noon honour, but, next god,  
it cometh me of them / wherfore it sholde be right hard and heuy  
20 to me, if it were so / to make suche chere as y do / alas! how shold  
y mow comfort an othir / and ther were no cause of comfort in my  
self" / "forsothe," saide the Emperour, "y leue you wele" /  
"trewly, sir," saide fferaunt / "the place they be yn is not to be  
24 lefte, but in the handes of right trewe and noble men; and that was  
the cause y lefte them there" / Than departed fferaunt from the  
kyng, and sent in alle haste a messanger vnto them / and praied He sends for  
them,  
them to come vnto hym / and to purvey, so that the towne were  
28 surely kepte / Assone as they herde thise tidynges, they were right  
ioyfulle / and moche desired they to se the Emperour / and in es-  
specialle his faire doughter, to whom they were alle thre seruantes /  
and thus departed they assone as they might / and withyn lital  
32 while came to fferaunt their maister / whiche was of them as ioyful  
as any man might be / and, assone as he might, brought them to the  
Emperour, to whom he had no thing tolde that he had sent for and takes  
them to the  
Emperor,  
them / and assone as the Emperour sawe them / he chaunged sore /  
36 coloures / & toke them in his armes, eche one aftir othir / and  
neuir made them suche chere as he did than / and sent them forth-  
with to his doughter / & whan she sawe them, she had suche ioie at  
hir hert / that she coude not <sup>2</sup>a grete while speke o worde, but and to  
Iolante.  
[2 leaf 92]  
40 toke eche of them by the hande, and aduised them wele, thinkyng

Iolante has  
never seen  
such lifelike  
dead folkes as  
the 3 Princes  
are.

[1 MS. smyl-  
lingly]

The Emperour  
musters his  
forces,

wins his best  
town from  
the Turks by  
assault,

and soon has  
his whole  
realm in his  
own hands.

He grants a  
safe-conduct  
[2 lf. 92, bk.]  
for 200 Turks  
to treat for a  
truce.

in hir self, whethir it were a dreme, or matier of trowth / and whan she might speke, she seide vnto them / "forsothe, my frendes, y sawe neuir yn my lif so lifly ded folkes as ye be" / and they answerd hir alle smylyngly,<sup>1</sup> and saide / "forsothe, madame, we are 4 noon othirwise ded than we were wont to be" / and therwith came the Emperour to his daughters chambre, and tolde them what was reported of them / and than knewe they wele that the grete chere that men made them, was for that cause / and fro that day 8 forth, founde they them more bounden to the Emperour and to his faire doughtir, and also to their maister / than they had ben bifore / and eche of them thought in their mynde, whan they conde se their ceason, they wolde meue him for the mariage of his doughtir / for 12 they knewe noon like vnto hir in beaute / and alle othir vertues / ¶ Now retourne we, and speke of the goode and noble Emperoure.

**T**He Emperour sent for his folkes / and by than they were assembled / it drewe vpone suche tyme as he had concludid 16 bifore to take the felde, and so vndirstode him self right wele accompayned / and his ordenaunce was grete. Than went he to the next place of his enemyes, and bisegid it rounde a-boute / and made so sharpe assaute / that withyn litil while þe towne was 20 wonne / and for to put the remenaunt in drede, that helde any place withyn his reame / alle tho that were withyn that towne were put to dethe / And aftir that / alle tho that kepte any othir places were so dredefulle, that they had neither wille ne corage to 24 holde them / but some stale their wey, and lefte the places allone / and some deliuerd them by apointment / The Emperour taried in no place to speke of / til he had perfourmed his conquest / and withyn litil while, he had his reame holly in his hande / The 28 Emperour thus beyng on the felde / came vnto him the same tyme / the kynges of armes that were sent to hym oute of Turkey, requiryng him for a saufecondite, like as was spoken of here to-fore / Themperour was conseiled to agre to this Saufecondite, in asmoche 32 as he had accomplished his conquest / and so graunted a saufcondite to CC. persones / And <sup>2</sup>than he departed his armee, & retourned to themperesse his wif, and appointed a day to assemble the estates of his Reame, to take aise of suche besynesse as he 36 had to do / and there abode he in ioie and rest / til suche day as he had taken / Now cometh this Day of metyng of his estates. And a litil bifore, were comen the Turkes folkes, that had noon othir charge but to put their yong lorde to fynauce / and the Emperour 40

- had herd them bfore the comyng of the estates. So when thise  
 estates were comen / he made to assemble them vpon a gret day in  
 an halle / for there were many folkes / Than, in presence of them  
 4 alle, he shewed his grete besynesse : first, of the demeanyng of his  
 warres, wherof he was in no surete as yit / aftir, of the delyuer-  
 aunce of Orkais, and othir prisoners that he hadde / for whiche  
 cause the Ambassatours came to him out of Turkey / aftir this, spake  
 8 he of the demeanyng of the Empyre / and that, for the grete warres  
 that he hath had / he had not yit be in no place to receyue none of  
 the crownes that to the Empyre bilonged / "Aftir," saide he, "that  
 he is nowe bicomme aged, and that he hath had in the warres grete  
 12 payne to trauaille / wherfore it was nedefulle for hym, fro hensforth,  
 to se the meanes somwhat to be supported and holpen / But in case  
 of nede, to do as welle as euer he did / with the good helpe of his  
 suggettes. but what he mente he shold shewe them, whiche was, as  
 16 semed hym, to marye his doughtir to some mighti prince / by whom  
 he might haue aide and comfort to discharge him of his laborous  
 troubles in his olde dayes / seyng also that she was of resonable  
 yeres to be maried. Thies iiij. thinges touched his hert right nere /  
 20 Requiring / that euerich of them wold take good auisse hereon /  
 ageinst suche houre as they shold mete ther agein." Aftir thise  
 wordes seide, the emperour departed / and they that were of his  
 pryve counselle, spake of thise matiers / whiche thought that two  
 24 the first poyntes were but one / that was, of the warres that he had  
 hadde / and of the deliuerance of Orkais and his othir prisoners /  
 for, by that one, that othir sholde be made / As thus / they semed,  
 seyng the Emperour had alle his reaume in his hande / that by the  
 28 deliuerance of Orkais he might haue a grete fynauce for to helpe  
 hym to his empyre / and by his delyuerance, might he take a  
 longe trewes of x. or xij. yere / and in the meane while might he  
 releyue his crownes / and vnderstande the demeanyng of his  
 32 Empyre / and what aide he might haue there / And than, this  
 trewes ended / he might go aftir in-to the Turkes Land / and put  
 him in deuoir to encrease the cristen feith / and in this meane  
 tyme / he might wele entende to the mariage of his doughtir / In  
 36 this wise, as I haue seide, they auisse the Emperour / whiche sone  
 agreed to their opinion touchyng his warres / and the deliuerance  
 of his prisoners / and the demeanyng of his Empyre / But he  
 thought to vse othir auisse touching the mariage of his doughtir,  
 40 seyng vnto them / "Remembre ye what a valiaunt man is worth ;

The Emperor  
 asks his  
 Council about  
 1. carryng  
 on his war,  
 2. the ransom  
 of Orcays,

3. managing  
 his Empire,

4. marrying  
 his daughter  
 Iolante.

His Privy  
 Council say  
 his points  
 1 and 2 are  
 only one;

also that he  
 should get  
 money by  
 letting  
 Orcays be  
 ransomed ;

[1 leaf 93]

should then  
 visit his  
 Empire;

invade  
 Turkey,

and then  
 marry his  
 daughter.

The Emperour for, sith the comyng of Surnome, as moche wele is fallen to vs by his worthynesse / as if the grace of the holy gost had lighte amonges us / ffor, fro that day sith, we haue so moche be comforted and enhardyed, that they that bifore, no-thing were / became moost 4 worthy / and moost valiaunt / And on that othir side / oure enemyes, that were worthy and hardy, haue lost corage and strength. Thus may ye se, what the body of one noble man is worth / and for asmoche as ther may cowardise be loggid in the hert of a right mighti 8 kyng, aswele as in a symple persone, Therefore y wolde knowe, for the wele of you alle / hym that shuld hane my doughtir, for

wants a brave man, tho' poor, for his son-in-law.

a noble man / for y hadde leuer she had the pore hardy / than the riche cowardle / for the wele of me, my Reaume, and of you alle .I. 12 had leuer she had one of the iij. straungers, that is to sey, Le Surnome, Ector, or Athis / if they were of roialle blode / than the moost riche kyng that at this day is lvyng" / with thies wordes, alle they of his counselle were right wele content / for they sawe wele it 16 meued of grete honour / and of his corage / and moche they thought here vpon / for they thought it right straunge to knowe the corage of folkes / Natheles, one of them auised hym, & saide thus / "hou be it, that to many folkes it shold be right harde to knowe the 20 corage and noblesse of suche princes as shalle desire youre doughtir in mariage / yit it semeth to me right light to vndirstande / and y shall sey you hou / Me thinkith that alle that be here, are agreed to take long trewes / for the causes that haue be shewed / this 24 trewes enduryng / if the Emperour do make crye an high and myghty Tournay / wherin noon shalle tournay, but if he be descendid from a roialle lyne / and that he make to declare the

One of the Council

suggests a 3-days' Tourney, by men of royal blood only, for Iolante.

[1 lf. 93, bk.]

1 mariage of his doughtir / and that who that shalt wynne the price 28 thre daies, shalt haue hir / whiche shalt be a grete payne to any one man, to haue the Renomee by iij. dayes ouir alle worthy / thus shalbe knowen the moost victorious & noble / And if so be that one man wynne not the price alle the iij. daies, then shalt the Emperour 32 be at his choise / to chese for hir whiche of them pleasith him best" / And whan they had herde this opinione, they loughed / hou be it, they thought it right wele, saide / But among alle othir, the Emperour was pleased wele therwith / and was vtirly concluded to 36 shewe it bifore the iij. estates of his Reaume / and what causes

The Emperour adopts this plan.

meued hym / As he concluded, so he did / and shewed it vnto them / with the iij. othir poyntes bi-fore rehersed / wherof they were alle right wele content / And as for the Tournay that shold be for his 40

doughtir / they thought there shold none be there / but if he were  
of Roialle blode / and nere vnto the crowne / And than was it saide  
amonges them / that it was pite that Surnome & his ij. felawes  
4 were not of the roialle blode / and wisshed that Surnome had be so /  
and had hir to his wif / Such conclusion as the Emperour had  
taken bifore, was affermed amonges them. On the morowe, the  
Emperour sent for the Ambassatoures to come bifore hym / and  
8 there they purposed for the deliuerance of Orkais and thise othir  
prisoners, and in like wise for the deliuerance of kynge ffrabrace;  
and there were they longe tyme / and coude in no wise accorde /  
and often tyme they withdrewen them, & went to Orkais, that so  
12 moche desired his deliuerance / that he rought not wele what he  
did / And atte laste they brought this worde, if that the iij. estates  
wold so assente, that if Orkais, and kynge ffrabrace, and alle the  
prisoners of their partie might be delyuered / they wolde in like  
16 wise deliuer alle the prisoners of themperours partie, if any there  
were / & also gif vj. walled Townes & Castelles, suche as the  
Emperour wold chese withyn the Turkes land, Reseruyng the  
chief Citees / and pay at one payment Vc. Ml. florences / and to  
20 haue trewes for iij. yere / and here they to go in-to Turkey, and  
bringe answeere agein withyn iij. monethes / and than to deliuer  
hostage / at their comynge agein, to pay this money at one payment  
withyn the yere / and the Townes and Castells to be deliuered in  
24 to the Emperours Handes withyn ij. monethes aftir / Hereto, at  
the last, agreed the Emperour & the iij. estates / than departid  
the Ambassatours / and sped them so, that withyn litil while  
they came into their contre / where as, sone were alle the nobles  
28 assembled / and there made they reporte, whiche was to them no  
thyng harde nor straunge, sauff yn one poynte / whiche was, the  
deliuerance of their Townes and places in-to their enemyes handes.  
Neuertheles, kynge ffrabrace was there, and put him in suche  
32 deuoir amonges them / and made them suche exortacions, that, in  
conclusion, they were accorded / and whan it was thus concluded  
& accorded / they that hadde the charge, therwith departed / &  
withyn litil while came ther the Emperour was / and by his licence  
36 spake with Orkais / their yong lorde, whiche asked them hou they  
had spedde, and they tolde him alle / and howe grete peyne they  
hadde for the places that shold be deliuerd / He was right ioifull  
to here of his deliuerance / and prayed them, assone as they might /  
40 to make their report / Than, required they to speke with them-

The Emperour  
sends for the  
Turkish Amb-  
assadors,

who propose  
to ransom  
Orcays,  
K. Ferabras,  
and other  
Turks, by  
releasing  
all their  
Christian  
prisoners,  
giving up  
6 Turkish  
walled towns,  
and paying  
500,000  
florins, and  
making a 3-  
years' truce.

[1 leaf 94]

K. Ferabras  
gets the  
Turks to  
agree to these  
hard terms.

The Emperor  
holds a Feast  
and Tourney  
in honour of  
the Truce.

Princes  
Philip,  
David, and  
Humphrey,

don't show  
their arms,  
but have  
their sheldes  
all of one  
colour.

They take an  
oath that  
they are  
Gentlemen.

perour; and he graunted, and made them to be brought biforn him  
and his counselle / & there made relacione, & offred to delyuere their  
hostage at the pleasir of themperour / themperour was content to  
holde his promys / and puruaide, for the honour of the Turke, to 4  
holde a feste duryng iij. dayes / and made a grete tournay, and  
made to assemble the most parte of the ladies & gentilwomen of  
his Reaume / Orkais, knowyng certainly that his delyueraunce was  
concluded, was ioifulle / He knewe also of the feste that the Emperour 8  
had ordeyned for his sake / wherfore he was the more leef to abide  
that day / trustyng, for the loue of faire Iolant, to do so that day /  
to be somwhat the more in hir grace / hopyng to haue hir to his  
wif; and made request to the Emperour to haue hors & harneys & 12  
habilmentes for him / and xx<sup>ti</sup> of his folkes / Aftir this tournay  
was cried / euery man desired to be ther-at / but among alle  
othir, Surnome and his ij. felawes put them in deuoir to be wele  
apointed there; and so were they, as if they had ben knowen kynges 16  
sones / as they were / and though it were vnknownen to other  
folkes, yit echone of them knewe in them-self / what he was, whiche  
[1 lf. 94, bk.] made their hertes the more highly coraged to be habiled ther-<sup>1</sup>aftir /  
Thoroughout the Reaume was ther none othir speche but of ioie of 20  
the fest / for bifore, had they hadde but warres and trouble / Thus  
passed the tyme, euery man in ioie & disport, til the ceason came  
that the Tournay shold be. the night afore the tournay, euery man  
made his musters / as in suche cas bilongith / Than were the 24  
knightes and squiers departed / suche as shold tournay, by notable  
auncient knightes & kynges of armes, & heraudes that ther-to were  
commytted / and they made euery man sette their kageys at their  
wyndowes / or at their gates; and at a wyndowe were hanged the 28  
sheldes of the iij. felawes / but their propre armes were not knowen  
therby, for in their sheldes had they nothyng but alle of one colour,  
& writen thereon their names / euery man meruailed herof, and sup-  
posed therby that they were no gentilmen. Thise wordes came 32  
bifore the ladies, whiche were right sory to here suche speche / for  
wele they Iugid, without grete noblesse of blood, there might not be  
in them suche honour & vertu / and wele thei thought that they  
did it by-cause they wolde not be knowen / Eche of them had in 36  
colour the felde of the armes they to-bere. whan the tournay was  
thus ordeyned / and thies iij. had noon armes vpon their sheldes /  
they were constreyned to swere bifore many noble men, if they  
were gentilmen or not; and toke an othe that they were gentilmen / 40

- and than seide they that herde it, their werkes shewed it wele to be  
so / and eche one of them trustid in him self, that the Emperour  
and alle his Reaume shold knowe that he was a gentilman / Thus  
4 was euery man wele content. On the morowe, bigan the tournay / At the  
Tourney  
the ladies and gentilwomen were at the wyndowes / and they that  
shold tournay, came yn / every man on his side, as they were  
apoynted ouir even. then was the corde cut; and the trumpetes  
8 blewe up; and euery man put him yn peyne to do wele. At this  
tournay, were so many dedes of armes, and so grete strokes, that it  
were to longe to write them. It were to long, to reherce the grete  
noblesse and prowess that Le Surnome and his ij. ffelawes did; also  
12 Orkais, the yonge turke, it were moche to reherce the grete actes  
that he did, as he that was thorough thrilled with the nedle of loue /  
Neuirtheles, that side where the thre ffelawes were on, made alle  
othir to resort bifore them / ffor their <sup>1</sup>mighty strokes and high [1 leaf 95]  
16 prowes, no man myght endure / and so wele thei did that day, that  
ouir alle othir they were renommed; & next them, Orkais had the  
name; but he might not compare *with* noon of the ij. That day  
had Surnome the price / and whan he came to daunce *with* the  
20 ladies & gentilwomen, he and his ij. ffelawes were so richely and so  
wele apointed / that as the sonne in clerenesse passith the mone &  
the sterres, so they ij. ouir alle othir bare the brute of that feste /  
Aftir them, as y seyde bifore, Orkais in alle thing passid alle othir /  
24 this ffeste endured ij. dayes, & euery day bare Surnome the price / get the  
highest  
renown.  
Prince  
Orcays  
comes next.  
Neuirtheles, he wold right fayne that eche of his ffelawes had hadde  
the price of that day / Nowe is this last day accomplisht / and the  
grettist soper ordeyned, that bifore had be sene / In the halle was  
28 no crie, not speche, but of thies iiij. Aftir soper, the daunces began /  
and the prices were youen / euery man spake of Surnome / at eueri  
price were gyuen grete giftes and grete larges / a litil bifore the  
Emperour shold be taken vp, a notable kyng of armes went vpone  
32 a Cupbord on high / & made crie "pees" thre tymes; and than was The Truce  
between the  
Emperour and  
the Turks is  
proclained.  
the trewes publishid bitwene the Emperour and the Turke for ij.  
yere / Aftir this, made the kyng of armes an other crie, whiche was  
this / that for asmoche as the Emperour had in his tyme grete for-  
36 tunes / and that Reaume was next vnto the enemyes of the feith,  
whiche hath caused him meruailous and huge warres / wherfore it  
was nedefulle vnto him and to his Reaume to haue one that sholde  
enherite aftir his daies / of grete nobles and vertu / seying that he  
40 had but one only doughtir. Therefore it was necessarie vnto him

The Emperor  
announces  
the 3-days'  
Tourney for  
Iolante, in  
May twelve-  
month.  
The First  
man on all  
3 days will  
win her.

for to allie hym with som man of grete corage / wherfore he did alle  
men to wite, that at May, come twelue month, the xv. day, shold  
begynne a tourney / and shold endure iij. daies / and that he wold  
giff his doughtir, with grete part of his Reaume, to him that best 4  
shold do the .iij. dayes duryng / so that there shold noon tourney  
ther, but if he were of roialle blode, nigh vnto kynges. Moreour,  
doyng them to wite / that if by one man the iij. dayes were not  
acheued and wonne / he shold not be bounde to gif his doughtir, 8  
but if it pleasid him / and also ther might noon tourney there, but  
if he were cristened. This crie publisht / the kyng of armes  
descended / the daunces bigan agein / and eche man thanked god  
in his hert, of <sup>1</sup>the trewes and good pees that now is in the 12  
Reaume. This faire yonge lady, herying the crie of hir mariage, vexed  
alle rede & shamefast / and also it forthought hir moche, that noon  
might tourney without he were come of roialle blode / for she sup-  
posed wele, that noon of hir iij. seruantes might be rescuyed at 16  
that tourney. among alle othir, was noon more ioyfull herof than  
Orkais was / for that he thought wele / that thies iij. that passid  
him, might not be at the tourney / wherfore he trusted to haue the  
price bfore alle othir / wherby he thought him self sure to haue 20  
that fair lady to his wif, that he loued so moche / thus concluded  
he in him self to rennaye his feith and lawe / and take him to  
cristen feith / where it shewed wele, loue, of more strength than  
lawe. On the tothir side, Le Surnome, *pat* herde this crie, was no 24  
thing sory therof / for he thought wele to haue leiser y-nough to go  
vnto his ffadir, and retourne agein by that tyme, where he wolde  
not faile to be for alle the worlde / for there trusted he to wynne hir  
that his hert moost desired / In like wise thought his .ij. felawes / 28  
for eche of them trusted that day to haue goode aventure / think-  
yng that noon of the tothir shold tourney. This thought, egal and  
like, had eche of them / the night passed / and the disportes endid /  
eueri man went til his reste / til on the morow, that many folkes 32  
toke their leue / aftir their departyng / Orkais made alle his assur-  
aunce with the Emperour, and fulfilled alle that he had promysed /  
and than toke his leue of him / of the Emperesse / and of their  
doughtir / to whom he seide, "I truste to se you agein at this 36  
Tourney / and I promyse you, on my trouthe, if y may haue suche  
fortune as y desire / ther can nothyng be so peynfull vnto me /  
but y wold do for your sake / and if the Emperour your ffadir had  
not do make the crie that he did / y wolde haue spoken with him 40

[1 lf. 95, bk.]

Orcais thinks  
he'll be the  
man.

Prince Phillip  
will go home  
to France,

and then re-  
turn and win  
Iolante.

Orcais takes  
leave of  
Iolante, and  
hopes to win  
her.



bifore my departyng, in suche wise as y trust he shold haue ben  
 content *with* my request / but I wote wele, sith he hath made this  
 ordynaunce / he may in no wise breke it" / This faire lady was  
 4 alle shamefast, and no thing answerd him / thus toke he leue of hir  
 and of alle the tothir ladies and gentilwomen / the Emperour con-  
 veyed him, and did him grete honour / than toke their leue / &  
 many of the Emperours folkes conveyed hym forth / but ferthist of  
 8 alle othir, the iij. ffelawes conveyed hym / for they were moche of  
 an age / and alle of roialle blode / and moost comonly men seke  
 1 their semblable / when tyme came they sholde departe, Orkais  
 saide vnto them / "my faire frendes, fareweH / and y purpose to be  
 12 here agein at this ffeeste, at the whiche y thynke my self right wele  
 vryd, that noon of you may that day tournay / Neuirtheles, if any  
 fortune or wele than bifalle me, y shalbe glad of youre company  
 bifore alle othir" / eche of them thaukid him ; hou be it, there was  
 16 noon of them but thought to endure grete payne / or that he came  
 to that he wende / thus they departed from him, and retourned to  
 the Emperour / and so passed forth tyme, til on a day Le Surnome,  
 Ector, & Athis, were gon to the felde to disport them ; and Surnome  
 20 talkid to them of many thinges ; and amonges othir, he seide thus /  
 "my frendes, whan I departed out of my contre, and fro my pore  
 fadirs hous / my principaH cause was for the renome of the warres  
 of this Reaume / and specially to the wele of my soule, whiche  
 24 euery good man ought to desire / nowe is it, thankid be god, that  
 this Reaume is recouerd, and grete & a long trews taken ; wherefore  
 y purpose nowe no lenger to abide in this Reaume, but to go home  
 to my ffrendes / whiche, y doute not, haue grete desire to knowe hou  
 28 it is *with* me ; ffor y am sure they wote not whethir y be ded or on  
 lyue. and for this cause most y nedes leue your companyes, whiche  
 sore forthinketh me / but that y may noon othir do." Than seide  
 Athis, "by my trouthe, my maister and felawe, youre departyng  
 32 sorowith me, and shalt sorowe me more than any erthly thing ; but,  
 daies of my lif, where so euer I be, I shalbe alle youre / and yit  
 may happe to come the houre that y shalt mowe deserue that ye  
 haue don for me, whiche y neither haue, nor can deserue yit / and sory  
 36 y am that youre contre and myn be no nerre to-gedir. Neuirtheles,  
 y shalt put me in deuoir to se you fulle ofte, so that y knewe where  
 ye dwellid, or of what folkes ye were come : and nowe y haue herd  
 youre entent, I shall shewe you myn / ffor, like as seide to-fore, and  
 40 for the same entent, I put me in the Arme of Scotland, for the

Orkays  
 departs,  
 and the 3  
 Princes  
 escort him  
 far.

[1 leaf 96]

Prince Philip  
 tells David  
 and Hum-  
 phrey

that he  
 means to go  
 home.

Prince David

socour of this Reaume, with othir / and now y se it in pees, my  
 purpose is to drawe me in-to the Cuntre fro whens I came / ffor  
 now, thanked be god, the Emperour hath litil nede of my seruice.”  
 “Nowe forsothe,” seid Ector to Surnome, “if your departyng  
 aught to sorowe any body, it aught sorowe me / for by you haue y  
 ben <sup>1</sup>saued / and ye haue accepted me in-to your company, wherof  
 y thought me right happy / and so wold thinke, if in alle my lif I  
 might do thing that might be your pleasir / and as long as ye had  
 abiden here, I thought not to departe. But sith your pleasir is  
 nowe to departe, I wolt no lenger abide here / but go agein in-to  
 the Reaume of Englund, of whens y am; and there shalbe neur day  
 of my lyf, but my body & goodes shalbe alle youre. [Illumination.]  
**I**N this wise, talke the thre felawes, and diuised the maner of  
 their departyng / and howe they might haue leue / and arguyd  
 sore amonges them / whethir was bettir to take leue to-gedre /  
 or ellis eche one by hym self / But at the last, they concluded alle iij.  
 to-gedre to take leue at their maister at ones / whan they might se  
 him best at leiser. Thus withyn a day or ij. aftir, they waited on  
 their maister at a soper / and aftir he had soped, they thre to-gedre  
 besought him that they might speke with hym / and he, as abashed,  
 toke them a-part / thinkyng ther was som matier of displeasir / for  
 neur bfore had they desired to speke with him in suche wise.  
 Le Surnome spake for them alle, seyng in this wise / “My lorde!  
 it is longe that we haue ben in your seruice, wherin we haue had  
 suche wele, and so grete honour, that we can neur suffice to deserue  
 it / Natheles, in the mooste humble wise that we can, we thanke  
 you,” and therwith they kneled downe / and he made hem to rise  
 vp agein / and Surnome tolde forth his tale, seyng, “my lorde, ye se  
 nowe the estat of this Reaume in suche cace / thankid be oure lord,  
 that there is no werre, to the grete honour of the Emperour / and  
 his Recommendacion is spredde through the world / ye knowe wele  
 the long <sup>2</sup>trewes that he hath taken / wherby he hath litil nede of  
 folkes / And we be pore gentilmen straungers, whiche gladly wille  
 drawe to oure pore frendes / for euery man aught to haue naturalle  
 loue to fadir & modir / and thies thinges considered, we be affermed  
 & constreyned, by reasone & honour, to drawe vs home, and departe  
 out of this cuntre / wherfore, humbly we besече you, to licence vs  
 to departe with the fauour of your good lordshippe / whiche we  
 moost desire, next the Emperour” / It is not to be douted that this  
 desire was as greuous at fierauntes hert / as he had felt him sore

says he shall  
return to  
Scotland:

and Prince  
Humphrey  
says he shall

[<sup>1</sup> If. 96, bk.]

go to Eng-  
land.

They resolve  
to take leave  
of Ferant all  
together;

and Prince  
Philip

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 97]

tells Ferant,

and asks his  
leave for  
them to go.

- hurt with a spere / and not without cause / alle his honour was by  
them iij., ffor he knewe wele at this day he was the moost renoméd  
knyght of the world / and forthwith felle the water in his yeen /  
4 and seide / "my dere frendes, wille ye leue me nowe / haue y done  
any thing that shold mysecontent you with me / no, to my knowlage /  
and as for the warres of this Reaume, they ar not yet ended / trouthe  
it is that there is a trews / but that shalt not long endure / and  
8 whan the warres shal begynne agein / y wold not haue lost your  
company, for no good. and also whan the werres begynne / we shalle  
entre in-to their Reaume, where men shalle se many grete dedes of  
armes / and alas! so moche as y haue loued you / and so glad as  
12 y haue ben to encrece your honoures / hou be ye now content to  
departe fro me?" Le Surnome answerd, "my lord, we may haue  
leiser y-nough to be with oure frendes / and come agein or the  
warres begynne" / whan fferaunt herd his wordes & conclusion, he  
16 departed fro them, and seide, "that on the morowe he wolde speke  
more with them." It is no question if he were that night pensif  
and fult of sorow. his folkes that were aboute him, sawe wele by  
him, that he hadde herd som thing that pleased him not / fferaunt  
20 toke his hors, and rode to the Emperour / and tolde him fulle sorrow-  
fully thentent of his seruantes / wherof the Emperour toke right  
grete sorowe & displeasir / and askid if any remedy were to with-  
olde them / "trewly," said fferaunt, "nay" / "Than," seide the  
24 Emperour, "I shalt make them to be required be my wif, my  
doughter, and alle my ladies" / "fforsothe," seide fferaunt, "alle that  
botith not. But y auisse me of one thing / It is so, that for the  
grete honour ye haue don them / they be gretly bounden vnto you;  
28 wherfor ye may wille them, seyng the mariage of your doughter  
shalbe yn May come tweluemoneth, that eche of them promyse  
you to do your pleasir to be here at that tyme; for they be your  
seruantes / and euery seruaut aught to honour his maister / and  
32 so may ye require them that they do at that tyme / and whan they  
come agein, peraventure ye may so entrete them that they wille  
abide stille with you" / To this counselle agreed the Emperour / and  
yn this purpose departed fferaunt fro him / and went to his loggyng /  
36 and made that night as goode chere as he might / alt-though his  
hert were right sorrowfull / and on the morow, aftir he had dyned,  
came his thre seruantes to him agein, to know his pleasir vpon the  
request they had made him the day bfore / fferaunt answerd them  
40 in this wise / "my frendes, notwithstanding / that of your grete

Ferant weeps,  
tries to per-  
suade the  
three Princes  
to stay,

and promises  
his answer  
next day.

[1 ff. 97, bk.]  
He advises  
the Emperor  
to urge the  
Princes to  
return for  
the Iolante  
Tourney next  
May.

162 *The Emperor urges the three Princes to return for his May Tourney.*

goode wille and curtesy, ye haue done me such honour as to repute  
 you my seruantes / Natheles ye be not so, for y neuir held my self  
 worthy, nor of suche honour, to haue the seruice of so noble men /  
 hou be it, your company hath ben to me moost ioie / and fulle fayne 4  
 wold y haue done you more honour / if it wold haue pleased you to  
 take it. Neuirtheles, ye be now *with* the Emperour; and he had  
 you in suche chierie, that he hath put you vnto his doughter /  
 whiche is the thing in the worlde that he loueth moost / and hath 8  
 grete cause so to do; for she is one *pat* can deserue loue, and the  
 thanke of euery creature / and of thies two most ye take leue / and  
 whan ye haue leue of them, ye and y shalle agree weH y-nough" /  
 they answerd that they "purposed so to do / and that on the morowe, 12  
 with the pleasir of god, they wold go to him; and as they had  
 grete cause to thanke his grace of his grete honour and curtesie that  
 he had shewed them / whiche was impossible for them euir to  
 deserue" / so on the morowe they for-gate not, whan tyme was, to 16  
 come to do their seruice to their maistresse as they were accustomed,  
 whiche had herde of this matier / wherfore she was in grete trouble  
 and annoye / and when she sawe them bfore hir at the table, she  
 coude no[t] withholde the teres from hir yeen / In this dyner tyme, 20  
 ete she nothing that did hir good / for wondrely wele loued she  
 them. whan the Emperour had dynd, they iij. came to-gedre be-  
 fore him / and, as humbly as thei coude, thankid him of the grete  
 wele and honour that, of his <sup>1</sup>grace, he had done them / and aftir 24  
 shewed him, hou "by the grace of god, and of high and good  
 prowesse, and of his suggetes, he had his hole Reaume peasibly;  
 and for that cause they alle were concluded, by his licence, nowe to  
 drawe agein to their cuntrees; for it was longe sith they sawe their 28  
 frendes, or herd of them / whiche euery man of right aught to desire /  
 wherfore they besought the Emperour that it might please him to  
 gif them leue." The Emperour made them many grete desires to  
 abide / and grete and large offres / but by no meane coude he 32  
 remeue them from their purpose; and he sawe that / and in con-  
 clusion, he desired them to come agein to the tourney / that shold  
 be made for the mariage of his doughter / and seide vnto them / "al-  
 though that none of you iij. may tourney there, I shall make othir 36  
 tournays and ffestes, where your worthynes shalbe showed *with*  
 many othir noble men / and also ye know wele it is the custome,  
 euery man to be redy *with* his seruice to his maister and maistresse  
 at any suche ffeest, and ye be reteyned *with* hir / wherfore ye aught 40

Ferant refers  
 the 3 Princes  
 to the Em-  
 peror.

Iolante weeps  
 at their in-  
 tended going.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 98]

The Emperour  
 begs them to  
 stay;

and if not,  
 to return for  
 the Tourney  
 for Iolante.

in no wise than to faile hir" / Alle thre of one wille made hym  
promyse & othe, that if they were in helth and at their large, they  
wold not faile to be there agein at that day. On this condicioun the

The 3 Princes  
agree to come  
back in a  
year.

4 Emperour licenced them to departe. Thus toke they leve of him /  
and went to the Emperesse to take their leve; wherof she was right  
sory / & ther toke they their leve / and went to their maistres / and  
tolde hir hou they had taken leve bothe of the Emperour and of  
8 themperesse / and eueriche of them offred him-self to aventure body,  
liff, and goodes in hir seruice, for hir pleasir and honour / This  
yong lady answerd them with fulle sorowfulle hert / " I pray god,  
my frendes, conduyte you, & sende you asmoche ioye and honour as  
12 eche of you is worthy to haue; and then shalle ye be largely sped /  
and that shalle alway be my prier" / and thus departed they out of  
the chambre / [alle folkes] when they herd here-of, wepte full sore,  
and sorowed / for wondrely wele were thies iij. felawes belouid with  
16 euery creature; neuirtheles it might noon othirwise be / Thies iij.  
felawes went to their loggynges til on the morowe / Themperour sent  
eche of them iij. M.<sup>l</sup> scutes and ij. coursers / and the faire lady, his  
doughter, sent eche of them a purs & a dyamant. In the mornying  
20 toke they leve of alle their company / and eche of them toke leve  
of othir / whiche departyng was <sup>1</sup>right sorowfull, for eche of them  
loued othir as bretheren. Thus leue y them, euery man takyng his  
way / and retourne agein to the Emperour. [*Illumin.: Emperor's reception.*]

Princess To-  
lante wishes  
them well.

[1 lf. 98, bk.]  
Each of them  
starts for his  
home.

24 **Y**E haue herd bifore, hou the Emperour was concluded to go  
to Rome & to othir places / where he shold reseceyue the  
Crownes of the Empire; and as he had concluded, so he  
did, and departed toward them assone as he might, where he was  
28 reseceyued of alle the lordes of the Empyre / ffor his renome was so  
spred ouir alle the worlde, that euery man desired to se him, and  
knowe who he was / they had him in grettir fauour than they had  
bifore. and the lordes askid him of the demeanyng of his warres /  
32 and he tolde them the trouthe, & forgate not to reherce the noblesse  
of Le Surnome and his ij. felawes / Aftir his coronacion, he toke his  
way to millayne, and was crowned ther agein / & from thens departed  
and went to Rome, and helde there a grete court, and there soiourned  
36 a long while, where he was reseceyued of the Pope and alle the Car-  
dynalls with grete ioye / and whan he had contynued there as long as  
it pleased him, he retourned agein in-to his contre / where he made  
grete purueaunce against the tournay / whiche began fast to approche.  
40 & he made thorough alle the Towne, the loggynges to be apointed, and

The Emperor

is crown'd at  
Milan,

and is wel-  
com'd at  
Rome by the  
Pope.

He goes  
home, and  
prepares for  
the Tournay.

dressid in the best wise / and euery man applied him so wele / that  
 alle thing was sure & redy. Euery prince & lord that was of roialle  
 blode, that had herd the crye of this Tournay, and knewe also the  
 grete renoun of this faire lady for whom the tournay shold be / 4  
 aredyed them the moost richely that they coude, to be ther at that  
 day. But our alle othir, Orkais, the <sup>1</sup>yonge Turke, had desire and  
 wille to shewe him self at this ffeeste. he was so sore taken *with* the  
 loue of this faire lady / that he was yn fulle wille to bileue in the 8  
 lawe of Ihesu crist / the gretist drede he had, was, hou he might  
 bringe this aboute by the agrement of alle his suggettes / whan he  
 was comen in-to this contre, he was resceyued as to his estate  
 belonged / and euery man had grete trust in his persone / for that 12  
 they sawe him alle othirwise in his maner and condiciouns than his  
 ffadir had ben bi-fore. Alle thestates of his Reaume came vnto him /  
 for eche of them desired gladly to se him / he was right large &  
 courtaise / and moche conuersaunt with the noble men of his 16  
 Reaume / and many tymes they asked him of the warres, and of  
 the maner of the cristen folkes, in whos handes he had long tyme  
 bene. Orkais tolde hem the trouthe / and rathir seid more of  
 honour, than lesse, to thentent to drawe the hertes of his people the 20  
 more to that bileue / and seide verrily, "that he bileued, that if the  
 god that the cristen folkes worshipped, had not ben their helpe / it  
 had ben impossible for them euir to haue recovered." Than tolde he  
 them in what caas the Cezilians were / and of their pore corage / 24  
 and howe that, by one only man, they were sodeinlye transmuted in  
 to the moost valiaunt nacion that at this houre was cristen / and  
 hou aftir that, ij. othir were comen, by whom, *with* the helpe of the  
 first, was the destruccio[n] of his ffader, & dethe of alle them of his 28  
 lawe, whiche thought him a thing our meruailous / and so moche  
 preised he the cristen feith, that his folkes thought wele he had some  
 pleasir therin / and some of them seide that "the cristen god was  
 more worthi than their god that they bileued on" / and so moche did 32  
 the yonge Turke by his wordes, *with* contynuaunce of tyme, that he  
 sawe & knewe verrily that, suche part as he toke, the most part of  
 his reaume wold take / wherof he was as ioifull as he might be /  
 and thervpone ordeyned his habilementes, the moost riche *pat* had 36  
 be seen in that reaume / & thought to take *with* him the grettist  
 parte of princes & Barons of his reaume, to thentent that they shold  
 be cristen *with* him / and he trusted verrily by this dede to con-  
 quere this faire lady / whiche in hir tyme was very mirrou[r] of alle 40

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 99]Sultan Orkais  
so loves Io-  
lante,that he  
praises the  
Christiansand Prince  
Phillip  
highly,and hopes  
the Turks  
will turn  
Christians  
with him,and thus win  
him Iolante.

othir fair ladies / Many men askid him whider he wold-go, and he  
 seide, his entent was to go the ffeest of themperour, with whom he  
 had ben prisoner, & was in his Daunger by the places that he helde  
 4 in his contre. wherfore he wolde do him honour and pleasir, to  
 thentent he might haue his places the sonner agein / and to take a <sup>[1 lf. 99, bk.]</sup>  
 Lenger trewes with him / "for I propose nomore to Warre with him.  
 They that herde him, were right ioifulle of thies tidynges. they that  
 8 had apointed to go with him / habiled them-self as richely as they  
 coude, and so wele, that the yong Turke thought him-self there  
 sholde come neither kynge ne prince at that day bettir appointed  
 than he and alle his people shold be / he puruaide so that alle thing  
 12 was redy longe bfore the day of his departyng; and in his mynde  
 he dred noman; sith that he knewe wele the iij. seruautes of  
 fferaunt might not turnay, he thought him verily assured that the  
 faire Iolant shold be his wiff. Thus passed forth the tyme alle in  
 16 ioie, trustyng in goode auenture. And thus shalle we leue a while  
 of hym, and speke of the iij. ffelawes that were departed eche fro  
 othir / and euery man hielde his way with grete sorowe and payne,  
 contynuelly remembryng the faire Iolant / whiche eche of them  
 20 trusted to haue to his wif, Remembryng also the bounte of the  
 Emperour and of the Emperesse / and aftir, they thought on their  
 curtaise maister, and of the fortunes they had there / and aftir,  
 remembred hou they shold come agein in-to that Reaume, and hou  
 24 the Emperour shold meruaile to se them come agein, like kynges  
 sonnes / and in esspeciall, fferaunt, whiche hadde reteyned them so  
 long in service / and so shold their ij. ffelawes that most be there  
 that day, whan they shalle saye how long they haue ben ffelawes  
 28 vnto a kynges sone / and euerich of them had his thought bie his  
 two ffelawes. *[Illumination: a King, or Noble, receiuing and embracing a young Man.]*

**N**Owe shall y telle you of eche of them, hou they arryued in  
 their marches. and first shalt y speke of Surnome, for he  
 32 was the first, that departed & lefte his fadir for the seruice of  
 god, and also was the first that came agein in-to his countre. whan  
 Surnome was passed out of the Reaume of Sizile, he called a yonge  
 gentilman vnto him, that was <sup>2</sup>with hym / and saide vnto hym / <sup>[2 leaf 100]</sup>  
 36 "my frende, I shaft peraenture be ashamed if ye sawe the pore  
 place of whens y am comen / wherfore ye shalle departe home agein  
 in-to your contre; and y gif you my horses, sauf only that y ride  
 on, & my harneys, and ij. C. scutes, that yit are bilefte me; & I  
 40 pray you that ye abide in the Reaume of Sizile til tyme of the

Orkais's com-  
 panions dress  
 grandly for  
 their visit to  
 Sicily.

The 3 Princes  
 journey  
 homeward,  
 each wishing  
 for Iolante.

Prince Philip

sends back  
 his attendant  
 with horses  
 and money.

tourney / at whiche tyme y trust to be ther, *with* the mercy of god.  
 neuirtheles, if ye may haue any bettir maister, or othir good fortune  
 in the meane tyme, y pray you leue it not for me" / This yong  
 gentilman, that herd his maister thus speke, thought wele it came 4  
 him of noble corage / and sory was to departe out of his company /  
 and seide vnto him / "*sir*, for goddes sake be not a-shamed of me /  
 for whoos sone that euir ye be, y had leuer be in your company  
 than in the company of the grettist man of the world." Surnome 8  
 thanked him, and saide / "I sha<sup>ll</sup> discouer me now to you / I am  
 a gentilman of roialle lyne; and that y trust shall be knowen or the  
 but is refused. Tournay be ended / But y most go now in-to suche places where as  
 I wilt no company" / his *seruaunt* than departed / and thanked 12  
 him of his grete geftes, and retourned agein in-to Sizile / Nowe is  
 Le Surnome alle alone, and kepith forth his way in-to ffrance / and  
 Prince Philip hears of his father's death, *within* fulle litil while knewe certainly that his ffadir was ded /  
 wherof he was fulle sorrowfulle. also he was ascerteyned that pe 16  
 quene his moder was alyue, and his vnkle, the Duc of Burgoigne  
 was Regent of ffrance; with whom he thought to speke vnknownen /  
 and so rode he forth to Parys, *with* a visour bfore his face, and  
 acquainted him *with* a *seruaunt* of his vnkells / and besought him 20  
 to fynde the meane that he might speke *with* him vnsayne / This  
*seruaunt* came vnto the Regent, and seide vnto him / "my Lord,  
 here is a yong man in this towne that wi<sup>th</sup> not shewe his visage,  
 whiche hath desired me that he might speke *with* you secretly" / 24  
 The Regent, vpon thies wordes, thought moche what it might be,  
 and asked, of what fassion he was / "fforsothe," seid [the] *seruaunt* /  
 "the moost goodly persone that euir y sawe" / "I shall telle the  
 what thou shalt do," said the Regent, "Soone in the evenyng, brynge 28  
 hym in-to myn Inner chambre, & there bere him company til y  
 may be at leyser to speke with him" / Like as he commaundid, was  
 it done. and at the houre apointed, this yong man was brought yn /  
 [1<sup>st</sup> lt. 100, bk.] and the <sup>1</sup>chambre avoided / and whan the Regent knewe therof / he 32  
 made his *seruaunt* to take a light / and nomoo went in *with* him /  
 And assone as Le Surnome sawe him, he did him reuerence, kepyng  
 alway stille the visour bfore his face / and whan he came nere  
 him / he tolde him the cause of his comynge was to put him in 36  
 knowlagge that "the kynges sone of fraunce, that departed out of  
 the londe suche a tyme, was not ded, but in good helth / and  
 that he trusted for trouthe he shold withyn short tyme here  
 tidynge of him / and to disclose the trouthe vnto him, he came 40



- him-self from the place that he was yn." whan the Regent herde  
thies tidynges, he shewde not the high chere of a prince, but streyned  
le Surnome in his Armes, and saide / "A, my frende! ye haue  
4 brought me grete ioie! sith the sorowfull losse, herd y neuir so  
ioifulle tidynges, whiche is more than iiij. yere passed" / and with  
thies wordes, the teeres ranne from his yen / bothe for ioie and pite.  
and saide, "my frende, if it please you, I pray you telle me the  
8 trouthe, hou it is *with* him?" Le Surnome hadde pite of his vnkelt,  
and coude no lenger kepe his visage couerd, but toke his visour  
away / and whan the Regent had auised him, and remembered the  
age of his Nevewe, and the fetures of his face / and than knewe  
12 verrily that it was he / And for the ioie therof, so sodcinly he vn-  
closed his hert, that he was almoost in a swoone / so that he might  
not speke / and whan his hert came to him agein / he kneled downe  
bifore him, and toke him in his armes and kissed him, so that he  
16 wette all the visage of his nevewe *with* teeres that felle fro his yen,  
and sith saide vnto hym, "allas, my lorde, and alle my ioie! where  
haue ye be so longe? / allas, myn owne lord! *your* sorowfull fadir  
had neuir ioie sith *your* departyng / grete synne haue ye for his  
20 dethe / The sorowes of this Reaume that hath ben for you, ben our  
moche to reherce / But now shalle alle tho sorowes be chaunged into  
Ioy. Allas! how shalt my lady *your* modir knowe of this ioifull  
recouere? / I trowe, whan she shalle first knowe it / the chaunge  
24 shalbe so sodeyn that hir hert shalt breke for ioy / My lord, y  
wote not what y shalt say / or how y shalt auise you of *your* demean-  
yng / Wille ye that y calle yn the company that is yonder in my  
chambre, whiche, whan they se you, shalle haue more ioy / than alle  
28 the re'menaunt of *your* Reaume haue had sith *your* departyng." [1 leaf 101]  
"ffaire vnkle," saide Le Surnome, "I shalle telle you alle my demean-  
yng sith my departir hens / and whan ye haue herd my tale / ye  
shalle avise me as ye thinke best / and by *your* counselle wiH I do" /  
32 After thies wordes, began he to telle of his departyng / and of his  
comyng in-to the Reaume of Sizile, and lefte no thing vntolde, sauf  
only that he had done with his owne handes / and saide / "myn  
vnkle, my departyng oute of this Reaume was for this cause / my  
36 lord my ffadir, (whoos soule god pardone!) wold do noon helpe nor  
socours to the Reaume of Sizile, whiche was in way to be lost,  
whiche caused me to departe so allone" / and tolde his vnkle so forth,  
by & by, forgate not specially the ij. seruantes that were *with* his  
40 maister, to reherce the worthynesse of them / and howe the warres

Prince Philip  
takes off his  
visour.

His Uncle,  
the Duke of  
Burgundy,  
kisses him  
and weeps for  
joy.

He tells his  
Uncle all his  
adventures,

and about  
Princess Io-  
lante,

and his love  
for her.

Prince Philip  
asks his Uncle  
to go to the  
Tourney,  
as if for Io-  
lante,

and to wear  
armour like  
his.

The Duke  
consents.

were ended a grete parte by their prowesse / and howe the trewes  
holdith yit for ij. yere / and half / and howe the kynge of Sizile, for  
his noblesse, was chosen to be Emperour / and how he hath the  
fairest lady of the world to his doughtir / and the best / and of the 4  
age of xvij. or xx<sup>ti</sup> yeres / “ and the Emperours desire is, abone alle  
thinges, that she be accompayned with a noble man / wherfore, to be  
the more certayne, he hath made crie a tourney, whiche shalbe kepte  
in may next comyng / and but yif one man may venquyssh the 8  
Tourney iij. dayes / the Emperour shalbe at his liberte to chose the  
best of them, and ther may noon tourney, but if he be borne of  
roialle lyne, knowen & named / and forasmoche as y haue long tyme  
serued there vnknown, I haue the more desire to be ther at that 12  
day / ffor y sha<sup>ll</sup> put me in as grete deuoir and payne as y may  
endure with lif / but I come to that wele / ffor it is she that hath  
my hert assured in hir seruice / and long hath ben / for she is  
incomparable ; Wherfore I haue affermed my self to be there / And 16  
nowe, sith y vndirstond the dethe of my lord my fadir, ye shalle here  
myn auise. The terme is short, and but litille vnto that day /  
wherfore me thinkith best to be vnknown / ye are your self yit of  
resonable age / and haue neither wif nor childe / and men holde 20  
you heyre of this Reaume / wherfore I wolde, if it pleased you, to do  
so moche for me as to be at this Tourney / and to make alle folkes of  
this Reaume to beleue / that ye entende to haue this faire lady to  
your wif / if your fortune be suche / and, y pray you, were suche 24  
deuises as y sha<sup>ll</sup> desire you ; <sup>1</sup>and in the meane while, y sha<sup>ll</sup> kepe  
me in suche places as ye thinke best y may be vnknown ; and ye  
shalle go in suche astate as bilongeth vnto a kyng ; and my harneys  
and abyementes for my body shalbe trussid forth as yours / And 28  
the dayes of the tourney / y shal arme me in your pavilione / and  
ye shalle put a visour ouir your face, and serue me at the tourney.  
and at the ende therof, If I do any thing wele, alle be tymes y sha<sup>ll</sup>  
make me to be knowen, whiche shalbe the grettir ioie to suche as 32  
wold y wele did / and y trust there be none othir there that knowe  
me, but wold be glad to wite me do wele” / The duc of Burgoigne,  
heryng alle his tale, herkened him fulle gladly, remembryng wele hou  
he had herde that by iij. yong men, straungers, the Reaume of Sizile 36  
was gretly holpen / wherfore he thought wele, by the tale of his  
Nevewe, that he shold be one, wherof he was right ioiful / and the  
bettir willed to go. hou be it, he thought alle folkes wold iuge his  
age was nothing accordyng to haue that fair lady / wherfore he 40

praide his Nevewe to take thaduisse of vj. or vij. moo of his preuy  
 counselle, whiche shold be nedefulle, aswele for the purveaunce of  
 their going forth, as for any othir cause. wherto Le Surnome was  
 4 agreable / and at night wold haue departed / but his vnkle wold  
 in no wise lete him / but made the chambre to be avoided; & *pat* Prince Phillip  
 nyght lay ther to-gedir / and the Regent slepte not moche, he was and his Unele  
 so ioyfulle / he thought it shold be but a dreame / it was so Newe sleep to-  
 8 vnto him, that he coude not wele bileue that he sawe & herd / He gether.  
 rose be tymes in the mornynge / and so did the kyng / and than  
 was called yn to the chambre alle suche as the Regent wolde name.  
 and there was discouerd vnto them alle the matier vpone grete othes  
 12 & charge. there may noman thinke of more ioy than was at that  
 tyme in that chambre. This ioy was bydewed with teeres of pite /  
 And after, whan they vndirstode the pleasir of their yong kyng,  
 they were alle concluded to his avise & pleasir, and made the duc of  
 16 Burgoigne to be published thorough the Reaume, that his entent was  
 to go to this tournay / in asmoche he had neither wif ne childe, The Duke of  
 nor coude here no tidynge of the kynges sone / wherby the Reaume Burgundy  
 might falle in-to othir lynage, wherof many inconueniences might proclaims  
 20 growe / wherfore he purposed, in eschuyng of suche Inconuenience, that he will  
 to dispose him to be maryed. <sup>1</sup>Many men saide that he did wele; go to the  
 and som saide "nay / for he might haue ben maried to lesse charge Tourney, for  
 of his Reaume & lesse iubardie of himself: what nedeth him, of his a wife.  
 24 age, to put him in a tournay? The kyng of Ingland had ij. faire  
 ladies to his daughters; and withouten any iubardy he might chose  
 whiche of them that pleased him" / suche argumentes were amonges  
 the people / Natheles, the Duc of Burgoigne toke litelle hede to suche  
 28 wordes / but put him in deuoir and diligence, that alle thinge was  
 redy longe bfore the day / The yong kyng made to ordeyne  
 richesses y-nough / so that he might kepe estate incomparable there  
 to any othir / for he trusted his fortune shold be to haue that /  
 32 that alle other shold faile of / ffor his hert was highly and surely  
 set, &c. Now shalle we leue of him a while / and speke of Ector,  
 how he did aftir his departyng from his ij. ffelawes. [*Illumination.*]  
 36 **H**E rode fulle pensif and soroufulle yn his hert, for their depart- Humphrey,  
 yng / Also fel in remembraunce of his owne departyng out Prince of  
 of his cuntre, & how many noble mennes sones had be lost England,  
 for his cause / wherfore he thought / the ffadirs wold dedly hate  
 hym, whiche brought him in grete drede and annoye / and con- resolves to  
 40 cluded in him-self that he wold not be knowen til he vndirstode keep un-  
 known till

he can judge  
of his wel-  
come home.

He consults  
a Sicilian  
friend,

[1 lf. 102, bk ]

who says  
'Wait till  
you get to  
England, to  
hear tidings.'

They reach  
England,

and are told  
of the King's  
mortal ill-  
ness.

The Realm is  
in trouble,

how they toke his departyng / and how they wold be content with  
his comynge / So fortunyd, that he had a gentilman of Sizile in his  
company / whiche was right wise, as he had founde in his right  
goode counselle in diuerse thinges bifore / wherfore he thought to 4  
discouere vnto him alle his matiers / and tolde him what he was,  
and how he was departed oute of his Reaume, & xiiij. <sup>1</sup>of the  
grettist Lordes sones of the Reaume with him / "wherfore," saide  
Ector, "y am gretly in drede of the hate of their ffadirs / But what 8  
so euir befall me, I most nedes be knowen there." The gentilman  
of Sizile was gretly abasshed whan he vndirstode his maister / he  
was also right glad to knowe his maister of so noble birth / sayng  
vnto him / "my lord, y thanke god that he hath youen me grace 12  
to be nowe in your seruice, & .I. shalt say you what y thinke best /  
that ye conclude you in no thinge til ye be entred in to the Reaume  
of Inglonde. By than shal ye here suche tidynges, as ye shalle more  
surely take youre auise vpon / and, in the meane while, pluk vp 16  
your herte, and take no thought; ffor y trust, at your comyng, the  
kyng and alle the Reaume shalle be so reioysed / that they shalle sette  
litol by the losse of the Remenaunt that were in youre company /  
for perauenture the kyng and the lordes shalle Iuge that they were 20  
the cause and meovers of your going" / "The thing," saide Ector,  
"that y haue moost yn drede, ys, lest that the kynge haue taken  
suche displeasir with my departyng / that he wolt not se me nowe /  
whan y come / nor no thinge departe with me, to appoint my self 24  
like his honour, to be at yondir Tournay / whiche is the place of  
the worlde that y desire moost to be at" / "fforsothe," saide the  
gentilman, "ye haue right" / And with suche talkyng passed they  
forth the wey, til they came in-to the Reaume of Ingland; and the 28  
first Towne they came to / they mette with a grete procession /  
euery man goyng barfoot in their prayers, with grete deuocione, as  
it semed / Ector asked the cause of this procession / and they saide  
for the kynge, that was so sore seke, that noman coude promyse 32  
him liff / wherfore there was made generall procession thoroughout  
the Reaume / for of his dethe, the Reaume shold haue to grete a  
losse / seyng he had noon yssue a lyue but ij. doughters / wherby  
the Reaume shold stande in grete trouble / and likly to falle in the 36  
handes of straungers / whiche was grete pite / ffor the kynge had a  
sone, as goodly a prince toward, as any was o where / and right  
gretly biloued / & right wele coude deserue it, as any man a lyue of  
his youthe, and a iiij. yere passed he departed from hens / and 40

- many a Grete Princes sone of this Reaume *with* him / and neur sith  
 was <sup>1</sup>herd no tidinges of them / wherfore the Reaume is in grete  
 trouble / and neur sith had ioie / and many suche processions haue  
 4 ben made sith that tyme for him / and the kyng himself had neur  
 good day sith" / Ector askid his hoste, of what age he supposed the  
 kynges sone was. "Be my faith, sir," saide he, "I suppose of  
 youre age, if he be a lyue; me thinkith y coude not bettir liken  
 8 hym, bothe in length and ressemblaunce" / "how trowe ye," saide  
 Ector, "wold not the kyng be glad, and the Reaume, of his comyng  
 agein, if he were a lyue?" / "yis, y dare sey," saide his hoste. "The  
 hole Reaume wold make a fyne of half they are worth, to haue him  
 12 agein." Thies wordes pleased Ector moche, and caused him to ride  
 the remenaunt of his iournay more ioyfully than he did afore / and  
 spedde him so, that *withyn* litil while he came to london / & loggid  
 hym yn an Inne / his visour alway bifore his face / and enquired  
 16 tidynges of the kyng: it was saide he was so seke that noman  
 coude promyse him liff / than sent he his man in-to the Towne to  
 enquire ferther / and made him to go vnto one of the lordes, that  
 had lost one of his sones *with* hym, & telle hym that "he was of the  
 20 Reaume of Sizile / and that he had late spoken *with* folkes that  
 had seen the kyng of Inglandes sone a lyue / and hole, but he is  
 yit prisoner" / This gentilman went forth, and did his message to  
 the Erle of Warrewik / and the Erle askid hym / "my ffrende, say  
 24 ye trouthe? may any man speke *with* him that hath tolde you  
 this?" / "fforsothe," saide the gentilman, "y trowe y wote where he  
 is / and I am sure he wolt iubarde his bede of that y haue saide" /  
 "If this be trewe," saide therle, "no fors of alle the remenaunt of  
 28 his company / for they were cause of his goyng" / than toke he  
 him by the hande, and brought him in-to a chambre nye to the  
 kyng / & made him tary there; and went him self in-to the kynges  
 chambre, and tolde the kyng he had founde a gentilman of  
 32 Sizile; and tolde him what tidinges he had brought. The kyng  
 made calle him yn / and herde his tale to an ende / and than he  
 helde vp his handes to god, sayng / "A, my blissed creatour! y  
 haue alway requyred thy grace, that y might se him er y dide / and  
 36 right so, y biseche the that y may." whan the gentilman sawe the  
 kyng so desirous for to se him / he toke the Erle a-part, and saide  
 vnto him / "sir, y shal tel you tidynges that yit shalle please you  
 bettir / <sup>2</sup>sir, he is in good Helthe, for y sawe him but late, and  
 40 spake *with* him, and I am his man / and he sent me hider to

as its Prince  
has not been  
heard of for  
4 years.  
[1 leaf 103]

England  
would give  
half its wealth  
to have its  
Prince again.

Prince Hum-  
phrey sends  
news of him-  
self to the  
Earl of War-  
wick,

who tells it  
to the sick  
King.

He prays that  
he may see  
his Son again  
before he  
dies.

[2 lf. 103, bk.]

The King  
bids Lord  
Warwick  
fetch Prince  
Humphrey  
to him.

Lord War-  
wick goes to  
Humphrey,

and blesses  
the hour of  
his return.

[1 leaf 104]

knowe what men saide of him / and he hath grete desire to come  
hider agein / but he knoweth not wethir his ffelawes be dede or  
a lyue / wherfore he is in grete drede of the kynges displeasir / and  
of the evil wiſh of you, and of othir grete Lordes of this lande / 4  
whoos childe went with hym" / And whan the Erl herd this, he  
was so glad, he coude not sey a worde to the gentilman, but went  
streight to the kyng / and tolde it hym, wherof the kyng was  
ioyfuH as he might be, sayng vnto hym, "ffaire Cosyn, y pray you 8  
make suche purveaunce as ye thinke may be moost for his honour;  
and dispose your-self with suche company as ye thinke best to go  
for him, in what Reaume so euir he be, and brynge him vnto me  
assone as euir ye may" / Than departed therle vnto his loggyng / 12  
& this gentilman *with* him / and whan they were there, the gentil-  
man seid vnto him / "sir, ye nede make no grete purveaunce / for ye  
haue not right ferre to go / ye shalle nede to sadelle no hors therfore,  
but it please you, for y can bringe you thider on foote *with* youre 16  
ease / the fewer that come *with* you, y suppose, the gladder woll he  
be" / Therle herd that, and taried not, but toke this gentilman by  
the arme / and went forth, without other company, streight to his  
loggyng / and whan he came in-to the chambre where Ector was / 20  
he knewe him anone / and knelede downe, and toke him in his  
armes *without* sayng any worde / and whan he might speke, he  
saide / "A, sir! blessed be the houre of youre comyng now in-to  
this Reaume" / then he asked him hou it was *with* him, and of his 24  
auentures that felle him sith his departyng. Ector was in suche  
drede, that he durst say no thyng as than, sauf only that he saide,  
"I shall *with* right good will telle you at leyser of alle my fortunes /  
but first, y pray you, telle me som of your tidynges." Therle tolde 28  
him suche as he knewe, and what sorowe the kyng had, and alle the  
Reaume, for his departyng / seyng / "thanked be god! now, by your  
comyng, this Reaume shalbe revived in gladnesse" / thus passed  
forth the tyme; til at the last, therle saide, "sir, and it please you, 32  
y shal go to the kyng / whiche shalbe as ioyfuH as any man erthly,  
whan he knowith how it is *with* you; and sone y shaft brynge you  
worde of aH his pleasir, hou he woll haue you demeaned / and toke  
his leue & departed." The gen<sup>l</sup>tilman of Sizile brought therle agein 36  
to his Loggyng / & went agein to his maister / and tolde him alle  
hou he had don that day, and howe he had ben *with* the kyng /  
and what he saide; wherof he was right ioifuH. On the tothir  
side, whan therle of Warrewik came to his loggyng / he sent for the 40

- kynges counselle, to whom he shewed, *without hidyng* of anythyng, the maner of comyng of their yong prince, to thentent that thei might take aulse how they shold telle it to the kyng / and so they
- 4 concluded alle togeder to go to the kyng, and telle it him / thus departed they to the kyng as ioyfull as they coude / and whan they came to him, they tolde him how his sone was in the Towne, in grete drede / for that / that he wist for trouthe, he had deserued
- 8 his grete displeasir. whan the kyng herd this, he was so ioyfull that he coude not speke a worde / and whan he might speke, he saide, " assone as it is possible, I pray you bryng him to me, for y fele that dethe approchet fast / whiche y shalt resceyue more ioy-
- 12 fully for alle your sake / whiche haue this daie recouered an heire male to gouerne you aftir my dethe ; I pray god graunte him wele to do." Than departed alle the lordes, with suche company, that alle the stretes were fulle of men / and whan they came nere at Ectours
- 16 loggyng / his hoste aspiied so moche people comyng toward his hous, and had grete drede, and came to Ector in grete haste, sayng, " sir, yf ye haue done any offence to the kyng or to his lawes saue your self be tymes / for here cometh grete number of people, I
- 20 suppose to take you" / Ector, hering thies wordes, wist not wele what to say or to thinke, but abode stille, til the lordes came vp in-to his chambre, whiche did him suche reuerences as longed to his estate / and whan he sawe them, he knewe the moost part of them,
- 24 and welcomed them right curteisly. There was that tyme more ioy in that chambre than y can reherce to you / than tolde they Ector the sekenesse of his ffadir / and how he sent for him to come hastely to him, for he desired moche to se him bifore his dethe.
- 28 Of thies tidynges was Ector right soroufult, and departed out of his loggyng, and toke one of the lordes by the arme / and went forth toward the kyng. The prease was so grete, that vnnethe he might passe, for euery man desired to se hym / and whan <sup>1</sup>he came to the
- 32 Court, he went streight in-to the Kynges chambre, & kneled downe by the beddes side / & whan he sawe the grete payne and sekenesse he was yn / he was in suche sorowe that he coude not speke a worde a grete while / And on the tothir side, the kyng was so glad that he
- 36 coude not speke / At the last, whan the yong prince might speke, he saide, " My lord, y biseche you, pat of youre grace it please you to pardon me the displeasir that y haue done you ; for y haue to gretly offendid you, whiche me sore repenteth / I am redy to obey
- 40 what punisshment it wolþ please you to put me to" / The kyng

He then sends for the King's Council, and tells them the good news.

The Earl and Council tell the King,

who prays them to bring his Son to him at once.

They go to Prince Humphrey,

who starts,

[16. 104, bk.]

enters his Father's room, kneels by his bed,

and asks his forgiveness.

The King  
grants it.

Prince Hum-  
phrey tells his  
sick Father  
all his ad-  
ventures,

and about  
his 2 fellow-  
Princes,

[1 leaf 105]  
and the com-  
ing Tournay  
for Princess  
Isolante.

Humphrey  
begs forgive-  
ness of the  
Nobles whose  
sins he took  
with him.

toke his sone by the hande, saynge, "my sone, y pray god forgif it the; and for my part, y forgif the *with alle* my hert / and thanke god / that hath youen me grace, biforn my dethe, to recouere the / ye se thise noble men of whom ye had the children *with* you, 4 whiche yit be not retourned agein, as y vnderstande / I committe them vnto you / and so do y alle thestates of my Reaume. and, how be it, y am feble, and not like to lyue, yet haue .I. grete desire to knowe of *your* auentures sith *your* departyng" / Than Ector tolde 8 him of his departyng, not charging any othir ther-*with* but himself / than tolde hou he and his company were taken / and hou forthwith they were departed eche from othir / saue it fortun'd a child of his chambre to be lefte *with* hym, whiche lyued but a 12 while aftir / and than tolde he the maner of his Delyueraunce / whiche was caused by a yong cristen esquier, the moost goodly man, and the best assured, and the moost noble man of his handes, that euir y knewe or herd telle of / and by his prowesse he toke 16 the kyng of Perce, the Soudans Brother, by whom he was delyuered / and tolde the maner hou, as is biforn rehersed / and hou that, aftir his deliueraunce, he came in-to the Reaume of Sizile / and there, was in the company of two the worshipfulle men of the 20 worlde, of their degre / of the whiche, one was the same gentilman by whoos meanes y was deliuered; and a-nothir one that was escaped of the armee of Scottes, whiche is an yngoodly man, and a worthy / ffor thise ij. men haue doon more hurt to the Turkes, than alle the 24 Reaume of Sizile / And aftir, he tolde the destruccïon of the Turke, and hou the kyng of Sizile was chosen Emperour, and what terme of trewes was taken bytwene themperour and the yonge Turke / and than he forgate not <sup>1</sup>to telle of the Tournay that was cried for 28 the Emperours doughtir, and tolde the grete beaute and bounte she was of / and noon auenture he vntolde, sauf his oune prowesse / and of his ij. ffelawes rehersed he so moche worship / that euery man meruail'd, that herd it / and whan he had ended his tale / he 32 behelde the grete princes and lordes ther / of whom he had away the sones of / and than went he vnto them & seid / "My Frendes & Cousins, y crie you mercy! for by me are ye differred from your children; for y wolt not, nor can, denye it, but that oure departyng 36 came of me, & not of them / and y trust veryly in god that they be alyue / and if they so be, y promyse you *without* faile, their Raunsone shalbe no charge to none of you / and y trust to haue suche acqueyntaunce ther, to haue them delyuerd *without* fyne or 40



- Raunsom, if they lyue" / whom they forgaff / with right good wille / They grant it.  
sayng / that nowe god had sent them hym, it was but litil change of  
the remenaunt." Than departed he and they alle from the kyng /  
4 and within litil while aftir, he decesed, and yeldid his soule to god / The King of England dies,  
ffor his dethe, was alle the Reaume heuy and right sorry ; but they  
were gretly recomforted by the comyng of the yonge prince / and  
wele they might be / for in his tyme he gouerned the Reaume fulle  
8 wele & rightwisly. The obsequeyes for the kyng were done as and is buried.  
belonged to his estate. And after, his sone was crown'd, as of dewte  
he aught / and aftir his coronacion, he sent for his counselle / and Prince Hum-  
phrey is  
crown'd,  
shewed them what wille he hadde to go in-to the Reaume of Sizile /  
12 to put him in denoir to haue this faire lady, trustyng to accomplissh  
wele his desire, for he was sure that his ij. felawes might not be  
ther-at / In asmoche as noon might tourney there, but he were  
descended of roialle blode right nygh ; and that were not they /  
16 whiche were the men of the word that he moost dred at that  
point / if they might haue ben there / Thise lordes, whan they  
vndirstode his pleasir, contraried him in no-thinge, but thought it  
was right wele to do, though it were only but for to lete him to be  
20 knowen in the Reaume of Sizile, where he had ben so long bi-fore /  
when they were thus concluded, he purueide for his estate / and his and makes  
ready for the  
Iolante Tour-  
ney in Sicilly.  
abilementes to be made aswele and as richely as was possible for  
him / and in this meane while, the gentilman of Sizile that was  
24 comen with him, reherced contynuelly the vertues and the grete  
worthy<sup>1</sup>nesse that was in his maister / and seide that he might not [1 if. 105, bk.]  
faile to haue the Emperours doughtir / seyng / the tothir ij. of whom  
ye haue herd, might not be there-at / and in esspecialt one that was  
28 called Le Surnome, whiche was nounpareilt of the world / The  
kynges purueaunce was alle redy, and abode no-thing but the tyme  
of his departyng / Now is it tyme that we retourne to speke of  
Athis. [Illumination: a King receives Messengers: a Cavalcade rides forth.]  
32 **Y**T is no doute he was right heuy whan he was allone, departed Prince David  
of Scotland  
from his company, whom he loued so moche / but his  
thought was not like the tothir two, for he was not departed  
against the pleasir of his fadir / but by his licence & commaunde-  
36 ment ; wherfore he was assured to be right welcome / Thus rode he  
forth more ioyfully, and nought discourd to noon of his men, of  
his estate, nor what he was. and whan he came in-to Scotland / reaches his  
native land,  
he askid tidynges of the kyng and of his children / and where he  
40 shold fynde the kyng / men tolde him where the kyng was, and

and hears  
of his own  
death.

Prince David  
rides to where  
his Father is.

[1 leaf 106]

The King  
sends his 2  
other sons for  
their brother,

and when  
David comes,  
the King em-  
braces him,

and bids him  
tell his ad-  
ventures.

This David  
does.

alle his children in good helthe / sauf only for the dethe of his  
eldest sone, that died in the cristen armee, that went in-to the  
Reaume of Sizile / Than rode he forth til he came to the Towne  
where the kynge was, & loggid him yn an Inne, vnknownen what 4  
he was, of any body / than enquired he what folkes there where  
about the kynge of his counselle / Than sent he for two or thre of  
them / and whan they came to his loggyng, and knewe him / they  
had as grete ioye as coude be thought / And than said he to them / 8  
“My frendes, the cause that y sent for you, is this / I drede the  
grete ioie that the kynge shaH haue, if he here sodeinly of my  
comyng / shold do him to grete an hurt / wherfore me thinketh  
best that it be tolde him at <sup>1</sup>diuerse tymes and by leyser / first, to 12  
telle hym that y am a lyve / and in prisone / and aftir to telle him  
that y am escaped, and than to telle him that y am comen” / and  
as it was deuised, it was done. And by processe of tyme the kyng  
had knowlage of the comyng of his sone, wherof he was as ioyfull 16  
as he might be / for he neuir loked to haue seen him a-lyue / than  
he sent his ij. brethern for him / and alle the lordes, knightes, and  
Squiers of the Court / grete was the ioy amonges them whan they  
were mette / so that no sorowe was thought on. They that were 20  
comen out of Sizile with him, were sore abasshed whanne they  
knewe their maister was the kynges sone / hou-be-it they thought  
altwey he was of som noble blode, he was so fult of all goodly  
maners / Athis, accompanied with his two brethern, and grete 24  
nombre of princes and lordes, departed from his loggyng, and went  
to the kynge / whom he founde in a grete halle : and whan he sawe  
him he kneled doune ; and assone as the kynge sawe him, he ranne  
to hym a grete paas, and toke him in his armes without speche ; & 28  
whan he might speke, he welcomed him in his best maner, and  
asked him of his Auenturys, & that he sholde telle it openly / he  
began his tale thus / “My lord, here be many yn your presence  
that can telle you of the grete fortune that befell at the port where 32  
we were / and of my self y shaft telle you / for y wote not what  
befelle of the remenaunt. The vessell where y was, smot on land  
bifore the Turkes baner ; and alle that were theryn were drowned,  
sauff vj., wherof y was one / and the Erle Douglas an othir / & 36  
othir iiij. that y remembre not / and we purposed verily to haue  
yolden vs to the Turke / but he charged his men to sle vs / and  
there was the Erle Douglas slayne at my feet / and y withdrew  
me / and set my bak to a Roche / and the Turkes sone espied me / 40

and hadde pite on me, and commaunded alle men to come fro me,  
and toke me *with* his owne handes, and promysed to saue my lif /  
wherof the Turke was not pleased / and wold haue sleyne me in his  
4 handes / but he defendid me right valiauntly / and for cause he was  
a kynges sone / and y was his first prisoner, he delyuerd me frely /  
and brought me surely in-to a cristen place, whiche was beseged  
within two daies aftir / and the Captayne of the place was right a  
8 a noble man & a knyght / and had in his company a man that [1 f. 106, bk.] Prince David tells his Father about Prince Phillip of France  
hight Le Surnome, whiche was the floure and surmountour of alle  
othir: *with* hym haue y bene alle the while sith the tyme of my  
taking / and he deliuered out of the Turkes handes a yong man  
12 that was named Ector, whiche dayly did so wele, that within litil  
while his renome was fer knowen. Thise ij. and I had but one  
purse & one wille; for debate was neuir amonges vs." Than tolde  
he hou, by the worthynesse of his ij. felawes, the Reaume of Sizile  
16 was recouerd; & told of the batailes & grete adventures that were  
duryng the werres / than tolde he of the long trewes that was  
taken / & forgate not to telle of the Tournay that shold be, & for and about the Iolante Tournay,  
whoos sake; & hou noon might tournay there, but if he were of  
20 blode roialle / whan the kyng hadde herde al his tale, he was right  
wele content therwith / and toke him by the hande, & drewe him  
apart *with* v. or vj. othir that he called to him, & askid his sone, by  
his feith, if he had not grete desire to be at this Tournay; & he  
24 saide, "yis, if it pleased him." & besought him at his first comyng  
to graunt him that request / "forsothe," seide the kyng / "& ye  
shalle go as wele acompanyed & appointed as y can make you, what  
so euir it cost me" / Than made the kyng grete purveaunce for his  
28 goyng forth / and appointed the moost part of his noble men, &  
lusty knyghtes of his Reaume, to accompany him. In this besy  
tyme, such sekenesse toke the kyng, that he died. his sone was and dies.  
right sorowfult, as of reason he aught / but he might not be  
32 recouerd / The tyme passed, & his sorowe wele appeased / the yonge  
kyng was crowned / & than ordeyned he his abilementes moche  
more riche than bifore. And purposed him to departe, so that he  
might be ther .x. or xij. daies bifore the Tournay / trustyng to come  
36 to this high wele, and mariage of this faire lady / and thought, whan  
he came there, to enquere alle aboute aftir his two felawes / and to  
kepe them in his company. [Illumination: Meeting of Emperor and King, &c.]

40 **F**Or to abregge my matier, the tyme came that it semed the  
kyng of Scottes ceason to departe; and he departed out of  
THREE KINGS' SONS.

[1 leaf 107]  
and starts  
for Sicily,  
with a grand  
retinue.

King David is

met by the  
Emperor  
and the  
Nobles of  
Sicily,

is reproacht  
for so long  
hiding his  
name,

and is taken  
to his lodg-  
ings.  
He goes to  
the Palace,

[2 lf. 107, bk.]

and is wel-  
comed by the  
Empress,

his contre in grete <sup>1</sup>estate, alle his folkes in a lyuere / and so many lordes & knyghtes with him, that it was meruaile to se; he had to the nombre of a M<sup>t</sup> horses *with* him, or moo / he sent his herbegeours in-to Sizile before, to take vp his quarter for his loggyng / 4 more than a moneth bfore his comyng / and men meruailed moche that he came *with* so moche people / and delyuerd him suche loggyng / as was accordyng to the nombre / whan tyme came, the kynge of Scottes appoched, and lay but viij. myle from the Emperour.<sup>8</sup> and whan themperour hadde dynded, he toke his hors, *with* grete and noble company of princes and lordes, for alle the floure of Sizile was ther / thus departed he oute of the Towne, & mette the kynge of Scottes more then a myle thens / and whan he sawe the kynge of 12 Scottes, he thought it shold be Athis / and asked "where was the kynge" / and whan he knewe for trouthe that it was he / he toke hym in his armes, and seide / "A, sir! ye haue done grete wrong, that thus longe ye haue hidde you from me; for, and y had knowen 16 you to my power, y wold haue honoured you accordyng to your estate / y coude neur haue thought, that the sone of so mighti a kynge, shold haue ben seruaunt to my Senesshalle" / fferaunt, whan he knewe Athis, that so long had ben in his seruice / and 20 sawe him nowe a kynge, humbly came to salewe him / seyng / "sir, y aught gretly to thanke god that hath youen me suche grace, to haue the seruice of a kynge / hou be it / ye aught not to blame me, though y haue not honoured you as me aught / for fulle gladly 24 y wold, if y hadde knowen you" / Thus rode forth the knyghtes of Sizile and they of Scotland; and ther was not forgotten amonges them the grete worthynesse of the kynge of Scottes, and how valiauntly he acypte him at the takyng of the yonge Turke, & in 28 what maner he had deliuerd hym / Anone the tidynges came vnto the Emperesse, and to his doughtir, that the kyng of Scottes, that was now come, was Athis / that so long had ben in seruice there, whiche was to them grete meruaile / anone themperour and the 32. kyng appoched the palaice / But themperour in no wise wold lete him alight there / but brought him to his owne loggyng / and assone as he was a-light there / he chaunged him / and came in to themperesse, that abode him in the halle, and hir fair doughtir, *with* 36. grete company of ladies & gentil<sup>2</sup>wommen / & lordes, knyghtes, & squyers / and whan He came in-to the halle, the Emperesse welcomed him ioyfully / seyng vnto him / that "he was moche to blame to hide him thus long fro them / for they had done him moche 40

- wrong / & alle by his owne cause" / he excused him, seyng, "that he had made his auowe to be vnknown duryng the werres, sith god had youen him that grace to escape with his lif so wele as he did" /
- 4 than went he to this faire lady, the Emperours doughtir, & talkid with hir, seyng / he shold put him in denoir more to deserue hir grace than he had done, if god wold sende him that grace & fortune / This faire lady answerd nothyng / but was alle abasshed, for there
- 8 was no man in the world she was so leef to haue, as one of the iij. seruauntes. But our alle othir, she loued best Le Surnome, if he were of birthe accordyng vnto hers / The kyng of Scottes excused him that tyme for sopyng with themperour / and desired his maister,
- 12 fferaunt, & many othir noble men of Sizile, to suppe with him at his loggyng / thus went they forth with him / Alle they of the Towne that sawe Athis in his estate, preised god, wisshing amonges them that his ij. felawes were of as noble birth and grete power as he
- 16 was. Affir soper, the kyng of Scottes went agein to the ladies / whiche he founde redy to the daunces / the daunces and the sportes were there right grete / and whanne tyme was, spices & wyne were sette / and than went alle folkes to rest / and thus contynued the
- 20 tyme in disportes & pleasir, and the ffeste kepte in grete estate & nobley til affir the mariage; and euery man lyued yn hope and desire to haue this faire lady. ¶ Now shalle we leue a while, & speke of Orkais, the yong Turke. [Illumination: Emperor and Sultan meet.]
- 24 **Y**E haue wele herde here before, how he was determyned to be at this Tournay / and whan he sawe his tyme coueneble, he departed, so richely arayed and so wele accompanied, <sup>1</sup>that euery man thought that he was right wele appointed accordyng to
- 28 his highe estate / and lital while he spedde him so wele, he came into the Reaume of Sizile / his herbegeours were afore, and hadde taken vp his loggyng / whan the Emperour knewe of his comyng / he had grete meruaile / and thought werrily he shold not tournay
- 32 without he were first cristened; and so he supposed the Turke entendid to be / Than went he and the kyng of Scottes to mette with him / and mette him almost at the Towne. There was amonges them grete ioye / and eche did othir grete honour. and
- 36 when the Turke behelde the kyng of Scottes, he knew certainly it was the same that he had taken prisoner to-fore; and whan he remembred his worthynesse, he loste anone moche of his hope of the Tournay / wisshing that he hadde slayne hym whan he toke
- 40 him prisoner / but in asmoche as it was to late / he salewed the

and by Princess Iolante.

King David asks Ferant and other Sicilian nobles to sup with him,

and then goes back to the Court, to daunce.

Sultan Orcays

[leaf 108]

lands in Sicily,

and is welcomed by the Emperor and Prince David.

The Sultan  
and King  
David talk  
over their  
freeing one  
another.

kynges, saynge vnto him / "fforsothe, sir, whan y deliuered you, y wende fulle litil to haue hadde in myn handes the chief of the cristen armee" / "By my feith, sir," seide the kyng of Scottes, "y holde my lif of you" / Than seide the Turke, "y deliuered you / 4 not knowyng what ye were / and ye deliuered me, knowyng for certaine that y was the Turkes sone / by this, was ther gretter bounte yn you than in me; and y am more bounden to you than ye to me" / "trewly," seide the kyng of Scottes, "sauf your grace / 8 ffor y did nought for you, but that y was bounden bfore for to do / and moche more, and y coude / and ye did for me without desert of me or any othir, for my sake" / In suche *communicacion* rode they vnto the Towne / and the Emperour hadde grete pleasir to here 12 them / Aftir soper, the Turke and the kyng of Scottes came to se the Ladies / and so did alle othir straungers, wherof there were so many, that euery man was ameruailled / for there was no cristen nacion almoost, but there were som folkes therof / The ladies and gentil- 16 women made grete chere to the Turke / The Turke made it secretly be broken to the Emperour, that if he wolde breke of this Tournay / and gif hym his doughtir in mariage / he wolde become cristen for hir sake / but his entente was, not to be cristened vpon none 20 certaynte / and if themperour had knowen bfore his desire, with right good wille he wold haue agreed therto / for by that meane his Reaume, for alwey sholde haue bene in peas / neurtheles, he

They go to  
see the  
Ladies.

Orcays tells  
the Emperour  
that if he  
can haue  
Iolante, he'll  
turn Chris-  
tian.

[1 lf. 108, bk.]

The Emperour  
says he can't  
stop the  
Tournay for  
her.

praised<sup>1</sup> him now to remembre that the ffesst of the Tournay was alle 24 redy / wherefore it was now to late to breke it / ffor the loggyng was taken vp by the herbeious for x. kynges and C.C. princes, and grete lordes of blode Roialle, wherefore he neither might, nor wolde, abuse so many grete princes & lordes / for he coude not do it 28 without grete maugre and a shame / But, and he hadde shewed him this whan he was prisoner, Themperour wold haue had grete ioie therof / whan the Turke herd this answe, he thought wele themperour saide trouthe / and content him with the answe, 32 tha[n]kyng moche themperour; and so taried ther stille, abidyng the ffeste / and euery day the kyng of Scottes and he, with many othir grete princes, came to disporte them with the ladies & gentil-women / Now leue we them, & retourne to the kyng of England.<sup>2</sup> 36

King Hum-  
phrey of  
England

**T**He kyng of England had wele herde in what aray & grete estate the kyng of Scottes was departed to this Tournay; wherefore he accompanied him self the bettir / and appointed

<sup>2</sup> Illumination: Meeting of the Emperor and the King of England, on horseback.

- him self aswele as he coude, like as ye haue herde bifore / and whan he thought hys tyme best, departed, & *within* litil while came in-to the Reaume of Sizile / and whan themperour was assertayned he
- 4 was nere / he toke his hors / and in his company, the Turke & the kynge of Scottes, and many othir grete princes and Lordes / and whan they mette *with* the kynge of England / and was assertayned it was Ector, The Emperour was neuir so ameruailed / The Turke &
- 8 the kynge of Scottes were sore abashed / Natheles, eche one made othir grete chere / and in esspecialle the kynge of England made Athis grete chere, no thing wenyng he had ben kyng, nor of blode Roialle ; but whan he knewe he was a kynge, as wele as he & the
- 12 next <sup>1</sup>neighbour that he had / eche of them made meruailous Ioie of othir / But ouir alle men / fferaunt had grete ioie / and helde him self moost vrous man that lyued in his tyme / seying two so grete kynges that had so long contynned in his seruyce / and than came
- 16 he to salewe the kyng of England / and he did him alt the honour that he coude / sayng / “ myne owne maister / Lo, here your seruauant / that neuir sha<sup>ll</sup> faile you, daies of his lif / Here may ye se two of your seruantes : wold oure lord, the thridde were in suche
- 20 condicion ! ” than asked he if any tidinges were of him / “ Trewly,” saide themperour, “ nay / and therof haue y grete meruaile ” / whan the two kynges herd that / they were right sory / thinkynge eche in him self / they wolde gif the third part of their Reaume to haue
- 24 him in their company / The kynge of England thought verily, that if he coude gete him, he wolde marye him to one of his susters / and gif him grete possessionns. thinkyng he coude nowhere so wele bistowe hir with that he were a gentilman / In suche thoughtes &
- 28 wordes, rode they to the Towne. And like as the tidynges of the kynge of Scottes came to themperesse and to hir doughtir, came tidynges of the kynge of England, how for trouthe it was Ector, that so longe had be in seruice there. The Emperesse & hir doughtir, &
- 32 alle the ladies & gentilwomen, gretly reioised it, and thought it was half a miracle, for the meruaile they had therof / Themperour went to his loggyng / and the kynge of Englonde went to his / by the commaundement and ordynaunce of the Emperour ; and the Turke,
- 36 & the kynge of Scottes, brought him there / and went agein to their owne loggyng / and taried not there scantly til they had half soped / but went agein to the kynge of Englonde, and founde him yet stille at soper / and fferaunt *with* him / than sate thei downe *with* hem /
- 40 and than talkid they of Le Surnome. a man might haue had ioie

reaches Sicily.

King Humphrey is met by the Emperor, King David, and Sultan Orcays.

[1 leaf 109]

No tidings have been heard of King Philip of France.

King Humphrey,

King David, and Sultan Orcays talk about King Philip.

King Philip  
is expected at  
the Tournay.

[<sup>1</sup> ff. 109, bk.]

King Hum-  
phrey justi-  
fies himself  
for formerly  
keeping  
unknown.

Dancing  
begins.

Festivities go  
on till the  
Tournay.

King Philip  
of France

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 110]

sends ser-  
vants to  
Sicily, to  
get lodgings  
for the Duke  
of Burgundy  
and his large  
retinue.

and meruaile, to haue herd them reherce the grete noblesse & bountees of him / and for his grete renome, euery man loued him / On the tothir side was themperesse in the halle, accompayned with ladies & gentilwomen / and ther was noone othir talkyng, but of 4 the kynge of Englund, and the kyng of Scottes, hou long they had be amonges them vnknownen / and there was Le Surnome com- playedn / and somme saide that yet he might come to this Tournay tyme y-nough / and if it were possible to him, <sup>1</sup>so wold he accord- 8 yng to his promys / The ladies had grete desir to se him ; but ouir alle other, themperours doughter had grete sorowe that he was not come ; and praied god, Le Surnome might be of as grete blode & power as any of the ij. kynges. Aftir soper, the kynge of Englund 12 & of Scottes, & the Turke, & alle the princes, came to se the ladies / the kynge of Englund was fulle wele receyued amonges them / and questioned, wherfore he kepte him self so long vnknownen. he answerd & saide, that in his emprisonment, & at his deliuerance, 16 he made suche promesse / Than saide he, “y pray god comfort Le Surnome, and sende him good auenture, where so euer he be ; for, next god, y may thanke him of my lif.” and sayng thies wordes, the teeres fille from his yeen / for sorow þat he hadde þat he coude 20 here no tydynges of hym / The ladies gaf him a grete preise, seyng that “Le Surnome had wele bistowed his seruice, that it was so wele remembred” / anoon the mynstralls playde / and the daunces began on alle partes / there knightes, ladies, & gentilwomen daunceyng ; and 24 euer amonges was Surnome remembred / moost of any thing / In this festing & pleasir, abode they til the day of Tournay / Now is it tyme to speke of the kynge of ffraunce, and of his vncle the Duc of Burgoigne. [*Illumination: Meeting of the Emperor and the King of France.*] 28

**T**He kynge of ffraunce, þat wold be vnknownen, wolde not departe so sone as the tothir did / hou-be-it he knewe of the departyng of many kynges and princes / and in what estate and richesse the kynge of Englund & the kynge of Scottes were 32 departed yn. and many tymes was his vncle and he in *communi-* cacion for his purueance ; and the kynge was the best diuiser that any man coude fynde : he devised <sup>2</sup>not as a pore caitif, but as a kynge / so that there was noon, of what estate and condicion he 36 was of / to be compared to him. Thre daies bifore, he had sent his seruantes to take vp loggyng for the Duc of Burgoigne / enheritour and Regent of ffraunce, whiche hath in his company v. or vj. M<sup>t</sup> horses, wherof there be vj. Dukes and xiiij. Erles, beside grete Barons 40



- and noble knightes, that were in his company. He ordeyned than his  
vnele to take vpon him the playne armes of ffraunce, seyng, "that  
it ought to be so / for it shold be to him reпреef to tournay in any  
4 other cote armour than in his owne" / The duc of Burgoigne, whiche The Duke of Burgundy agrees to all that K. Philip proposes.  
entended no-thing so moche as the pleasir of his newew, was content  
with alle that he wold ordeyne / how-be-it, he tolde him that folkes  
wolde speke moche therof / inasmoche as he was not crowned kynge,  
8 nor bare the name therof / Neuirtheles, in conclusioun, thus it was  
apointed / and thus it was done / And ther was noman in alle ffraunce  
that [wold] contrary the Dukes pleasir / hou-be-it, his day was not  
come, by a yere and more, of the vij. yere / and alle such murmur &  
12 wordes, dred the Duc. But it was sure at the ende, what-som-euir  
was saide, shold be to his grete honour / and alle thinge was arriedied  
thus as y haue tolde you / and the kynge departed at suche tyme King Philip starts from France.  
as he might come to the Emperour a ij. nightes before the Tournay /  
16 and whan his herbegours came afore / and asked loggyng for so  
grete a nombre / themperour was abasshed, and meruailed moche /  
Than they tolde him how he was Regent of ffraunce, and enheritour /  
and noon but he apparaunt to be kynge / and so toke he him self /  
20 Of alle this, themperour had grete meruaile / & specially, sith he was  
so nere vnto him, that he had not before tyme sent noon embassat  
for the mariage of his doughtir. ¶ Now cometh the tyme of the  
Dukes departyng / no mañ may thinke the richesse that that tyme  
24 was at Parys, of the grete princes that were come thider / whos  
abilementes and purueaunce were to long to reherce / when alle was  
redy, the Duke departed / and they that he had in his conduyte /  
The kynge went alwey before or behinde / euery man praied god to  
28 sende the Duc good auenture, for moche was he biloued <sup>1</sup>amonges [cf. 110, bk.]  
them; hou-be-it they had a litil grugge vnto him now / for this,  
that he bare the playne armes of ffraunce / and they praied god  
they might ones se the kynges sone a lyue amonges them / for than  
32 sholde he be fayne to leue thoos armes / Thus departed he, as y  
telle you. The Duc spedde his Iournay so, that he came in-to the  
Reaume of Sizile / and whan he first entred in-to the Reaume, he  
was assertayned what kynges & prynces were there / and how the  
36 kynge of England was Ector; and the kynge of Scottes was Athis / and hear of Kings Humphrey and David.  
that so longe had be in seruice there. The Duc knewe thies names  
wele, by reporte of his Neuewe / and had right grete ioie of them /  
and assone as he might, he made relacion vnto the kynge, whiche  
40 had therof a meruailous gladnesse / thinkyng in himself / that suche

The Emperor  
sends his  
Nobles to  
meet the  
Duke of  
Burgundy.

King Philip  
tells the Duke  
his assumed  
names,

[1 leaf 111]

whiche the  
Duke rejoices  
to hear.

King Philip  
will now act  
as a gentle-  
man of his  
uncle's.

aventure had neuer be seen / that iij. kynges sones vnknowne shold  
be daily seruantes yn one house to a knyght / Than thought he that  
this entent might not be had / for he thought before to haue had  
them bothe yn his house / though they had coste him the half of his  
Reaume / whiche now might not be / Than saide he to his vncl,  
“now shalt y ride ioyfully / for y shalt se the moost part of them that y  
loue” / Thus rode they til they came nere vnto the place where them-  
perour was / and at the towne that he logged / next vnto themperour / 8  
there mette with him many noble men / that themperour had sent  
vnto him ; and there dyned they with hym / and the Duc asked  
them many questions of the werres that had ben amonges them /  
and they tolde him, and also of the fortune of fferant, “whiche had 12  
ij. kynges in his seruice / whiche were the moost noble men of the  
worlde sauf one, whiche was in their company, that was named Le  
Surnome, whiche was the floure, and surmounted alle othir” / &  
there they reherced his persone, his worthynesse, and bounte / and 16  
alle the wele that coude be seid of any man / yit knewe not the Duc  
that it was his neuwe that was called Le Surnome. But assone as  
he might departe from them of Sizile / he came to his neuwe / &  
besought him on his feith to telle him how he was named when he 20  
was in Sizile. and the kynge, that wold not displease his vncl,  
tolde him that his first name was Le Despurueu / but the Emperours  
doughtir had chaungid it, and named hym Le Surnome. And whan  
the Duc herde this / and knewe for trouthe it was he of whom the 24  
grete renome sprange so ferre / he embraced him with grete ioie.  
and the kyng asked him what meued him so to do ; and he tolde  
him the grete honour that he had herd spoken of him ; and seid so  
moche, that the kynge wax alle rede & shamefast / and saide, “faire 28  
vncl, they that haue made this report, y suppose be my grete  
frendes ; but paraventure ye shalle here suche tidynges, or ye go  
oute of this cuntre, that happily shalle not please you so moche.”  
The Duc in his mynde praised him moche for that answer, & saide / 32  
“now wille ye go bifore or behinde” / “forsothe,” saide the kynge,  
“y wolt go bifore / and not fer from you, but as a gentilman of  
yours” / The Duc was content with his pleasir / The Emperour  
had alwey hope to here som tidynges of Le Surnome. The ladies 36  
that had herd speke of the grete richesse, and of the grete lordes  
that shold come to the towne, besought themperour they might be  
at the wyndowes to se them come / Themperour was agreeable.  
Themperesse, & hir doughtir, and alle the ladies, went forth / whan 40

they that were in the towne herd thies tidýnges / euery man  
 appointed him self in the best wise they coude / to ride forth and  
 mete the Duc of Burgoigne. The kynge of ffraunce was araied as  
 4 a squier, and set on the best hors that was in alle the company / and  
 iij. or iiij. moo that knewe of his counselle, were araied in sute with  
 him / and eche one a visour bifore his face / Themperour, and the yong  
 Turke, & alle the kynges & princes that were in the towne, rode  
 8 oute to mete the Duc of Burgoigne / and within litil way of the  
 towne, they mette with hym; and there was neither knight nor  
 squyer in his company, but he had outhur trapoures or horsharneys  
 of clothe of gold / or velewet embrowdird / there was neuir so grete  
 12 richessee seen in Sizile bifore in one day / whan the yong kynge  
 saw the kyng of Englund and the kyng of Scottes, he salewed them  
 a ferre; & the hors wheron he rode was so plesaunt, that his maister  
 might guyde him as he wold / and he made ij. or iij. lepes fulle  
 16 manerly / the hors was plesaunt, and the man that was on hym  
 moche more / he was loked on of many folkes / but noon knewe hym  
 [as] he passed forthe. The Emperour came to the Duc, and salued  
 him as perteyned to his estate / aftir acqueyntaunce, they rode alle  
 20 togedir to the towne; and the yong kynge and his company was  
 alway nere vnto <sup>1</sup>the Duc / At their comyng in-to the Towne, was not  
 seen suche estate of richessee sith the worlde began / the wyndowes  
 and the stretes were alle hanged with riche clothes / and alle the  
 24 wyndowes fulle of ladies & gentilwomen / and whan they shold  
 passe by themperesse & hir faire doughtir, the yonge kynge knewe  
 them wele y-nough, ye may wele thinke / the cawey was to litil for  
 his hors & him / for alle that was possible for hym or his hors to do /  
 28 was done bifore the ladies ther; and it semed to as many as bihelde  
 him / that he sate as easely as he had ben vpon a litil amblyng  
 nagge / and the ladies & gentilwomen gaff their beholdyng moost  
 vnto him / but the prese was suche, they lost the sight of him longe  
 32 or they wold. and whan themperour came there as the ladies lay /  
 he alight, and made to conduyte the Duc of Burgoigne vnto his log-  
 ging, with many kynges & princis; & whan they had brought hym  
 there, [. . . .] Than the Duc knewe that themperour had supped /  
 36 and that it was tyme to se the ladies, he departed from his loggyng /  
 so accompanied, that it was meruaile to se / he came to themperours  
 paleis, where he founde themperesse accompanied with grete nombre  
 of ladies and gentilwomen / and so many faire, that it was a paradis  
 40 to biholde them / but as the sonne passeth in beaute the sterres / so,

The Duke of  
Burgundy is  
met by the  
Emperor and  
his kingly  
guests, &c.

[1 ff. 111, bk.]  
The Sicilian  
town is  
magnificently  
adorned.

The Duke  
visits the  
Empress,

and the  
lovely  
Iolante,

whom he  
thinks the  
Nonpareil of  
the world.

King Philip  
looks on at  
the dances.

[1 leaf 112]  
His supposed  
absence is  
lamented.

He resolves  
to do his  
best at the  
Tourney,

in beaute & behaving, passeth alle othir, the faire & good Iolant. The  
duc salued the ladies, as to their estate belonged ; and than he felle  
in talkyng *with* this faire lady / whom he founde so wele assured in  
alle hir behauyng that he thought his nevewe wele fortunèd to haue 4  
such choys / if his fortune might folow the remenaunt of his wille /  
for as him thought, she was nonpareill of the world / The daunces  
began ; the kynges and princes came to se the daunces / the halt  
was newe, made so grete and so plenteuous / that suche a-nothir 8  
was neur seyen / The yong kynge of ffraunce was behinde alle othir,  
holdyng a knight of his by the arme / and bihelde the daunces,  
and specially his faire lady / and besought god his fortune might be  
as good as his wille ; and biheld his ij. felawes disportyng them / & 12  
dauncyng among the ladies / trustyng / or long to / to be known  
there, asmoche to his hertes ease / as was to any of them / There  
was many of themperours court that compleyned sore Le Surnome,  
whiche he him-self might here / seyng, “ that they were nowe alle out 16  
of hope / and that they thought wele that he was outhere dede or  
seke, seyng the promys that he had made to be there at that day /  
and if he were dede / it were the grettist pite of his dethe that euir  
was of any so pore a man in alle this worlde.” Thise wordes herde 20  
many of the frenshmeñ ; and tolde vnto the Duc their maister, the  
grete lawde that this man had, whiche was named Le Surnome.  
and themperour him-self spake of him, and had for him right grete  
sorowe / & so had alle the ladies and gentilwomen. The kynge of 24  
ffraunce, knowyng alle this / saide vnto suche as knewe his entente /  
“ if euer he had hert to do wele / it was now tyme to shewe it at  
this tournay / and also he wist wele, *with*out grete paine & trauaile  
this grete conqueste might not be made wele” / they smyled & seide / 28  
“ they of this Reaume sey so euell of you / that we ar half in drede  
of your spede.” “ Truly,” seide the kynge, “ y shalt do aswele as  
y can” / Themperour praid the Duc of Burgoigne, on the morowe  
to suppe with hym and alle the princes of his company / ffor he had 32  
fested alle other straungers bfore / and this was the even of the  
tournay. The Duc graunted hym / and toke leue of him and of  
the ladies / and went to his loggyng / many were there that wold  
haue conueyed hym, but he wold not suffre them / and assone as he 36  
came to his loggyng / he founde leiser to speke *with* his Nevewe,  
saing vnto him / “ that wele he had chosen / and yf there were any  
prowesse in him / he shold put him in payne now to do wele ; for  
if in his defaute he lost suche a wele / he might be sure neuer to 40

- recouere the semblable" / if the kyng were amorous to-fore / his  
vukells wordes made him more; sayng vnto him / "ffaire vncle,  
myn armes shalle faile me, outhir y shalt dye in the payne / or y  
4 shalt haue hir." The Duc began to laugh, and tolde him how  
themperour had praied him to soper on the next day / and alle the  
princes of his company / this nyght they went to rest. The kyng  
of ffraunce thought euery houre a yere / til the day of the tournay /  
8 and yit was there but one day therto. The ffelde was ordeyned by  
themperours commaundement, where the Tournay shold be / and  
placis apointed, & deliuerd to euery kyng and prince, to hang vp  
1 their tentes and pauilions. I had forgotten to reherce, howe that [1 ff. 112, bk.]  
12 very [? MS.] night was shewed vnto the yong Turke / that, but if he  
were cristened / he might not be receyued vnto the tournay / He made  
many grete doutes, lest his suggetes wold destroie him, or chase him  
out of his Realme / and than the Emperour and alle the kynges and  
16 princis that were there, promised him aide, and to take his part, if  
any suche cause were / and in trust of their promesse, he bicame  
cristened on the morow / the kyng of Englund and the kyng of  
Scottes cristened him / and eche of them put othir to such worship,  
20 that they wold not gyue the Turke their owne name / so that he  
hight aftir neither of them, but was named Charles / also a grete  
part of his company bicame cristened. On the morow, did euery  
man set vp his Tentis & Pauilions / euery man in his owne quarter /  
24 But onir alle othir, the Duc of Burgoignes Tente bare the brute /  
whiche was of the playne armes of ffraunce / and was valued at  
CCC Mt. scutes. that night came the Duc to soper to themperour /  
and the Emperour and the ladies made him grete chere; and at  
28 that soper, was speche of le Surnome, and was asmoche complayned  
as any man might be / The Emperour seide asmoche good of him  
as coude be thought / and tolde the Duc that he was cause of alle  
his honour / and rehersed his persone, maner, and condicions / and  
32 than wisshed him as mighti a kyng as any of his ij. ffelawes / and  
than saide he / "he promysed me to haue ben here agein at this  
day, if he had ben a lyve and at his liberte / wherfore y thinke verily  
he ys dede" / and in sayng thise wordes, the teeres felle from his  
36 yen. whan this faire lady herde speke of the dethe of Le Surnome,  
she coude not kepe hir from wepyng; and alle othir that there were,  
bemoned him moche. And whan the Duc saugh the grete loue  
that alle folkes had to his newew / and herde his grete vertues  
40 rehersed, ye may be sure he had grete ioie / and saide to the

and win  
Iolante,  
or die.

The field  
of Tournay  
is settled.

[1 ff. 112, bk.]  
Sultan  
Orcays,

being promist  
help by the  
Christian  
Sovereigns,  
turns Chris-  
tian,

and is  
baptised  
"Charles."

At the Em-  
peror's  
supper, the  
supposed  
absence of  
King Philip  
is again  
lamented.

Folk think  
he is dead.

Iolante weeps  
for him.

The Duke of  
Burgundy  
[1 leaf 113]  
talks to  
Iolante about  
his Nephew,

and thinks  
her heart is  
toucht.

King Philip  
prays for  
success.

Ten other  
kings and  
K. Philip,

with 205 men  
of Royal  
blood, make  
108 on each  
side in the  
Tourney.

[3 lf. 113, bk.]

Emperour, "truly, sir, he hath wele employde his seruyse / and perauenture he may be seke *without* dethe; and if god wille, ye shal fulle wele se him hereaftir" / Thus, and in suche wordes, passid forth the soper / and aftir soper, the Duc, as though he were a lital <sup>4</sup> envious of the preise that he herde of Le Surnome, saide vnto the faire Iolante, "Madame, me thinketh / Le Surnome wele vred / for whan he was spoken of this night / ye coude not kepe you <sup>1</sup> from wepyng / wherfore y suppose he be more in your grace than many 8 othir" / "In good feith," quod she, "y loue him right wele; and so haue y grete cause / yf ye had in your company one that had done asmoche for you, as Le Surnome hath done for my lord my fadir, & for me / ye had an hard hert, if ye herde speke of his dethe / and <sup>12</sup> were not sory" / The Duc sawe wele she was not pleased with his wordes. he was not sory, for he thought it touchid hir hert somewhat, & trustid w<sup>th</sup>in iij. daies after / the peas shold be made. anoon aftir, he toke his leve, saing, he most that night attende to <sup>16</sup> his besinesse / that night came noon of the tothir Princis to the Emperour / for eche of them attendid that he had to do on the morow. The duc came to his loggyng; and assone as he might, went to the kynge his Nevewe, and tolde him what wordes he had <sup>20</sup> herde of him that night / and what speche was bitwene him and the Emperours doughtir, saing, "sir, now do so, that this preyse and recommendacion may contynue." he answerd, "I pray god graunt me that grace." That night went he to rest / and on the morow <sup>24</sup> rose vp be tymes, and went & herd masse, and than apointed them to be redy. [*Illumination: the Tournay: Knights charging; Iolante, &c. looking on.*]

**T**He Princis were departed by the knightes and kynges of Armes, one ageinst a nothir / and were nombred, of kynges <sup>28</sup> x, beside the kynge of ffrance, whiche was vnknownen; and of othir princes & lordes of Roialle blode, CC. and vj.; so that they were in all CC. & xvj. and on eche side, <sup>2</sup> C. & viij.; on that one side the kynge of England and the Duc of Burgoigne / & on that othir <sup>32</sup> side, the yonge Turke and the kyng of Scottes / The scaffold on the tothir side was where the ladies were; and this faire lady was set vp allone on hight, because euery man shold se hir. Themperour <sup>36</sup> <sup>3</sup> was on an scaffold, accompayned with many noble men / and fferaunt the Seneshalf was *with* him. At the houre that the Tournay shold be, the Trumpetes blew vp / The kynges & princes came out of their pavilions, euery man armed *with* his helme on

<sup>2</sup> MS. on eche side and

his hede / his Cotearmour on him, his baner a-fore him, and alle  
 their horses couerd *with* their armes. The yonge Turke and the  
 kynge of Scottes came on the tone side / the kynge of Englonde /  
 4 and he that men helde the Duc of Burgoigne, on the tothir side /  
 and whan the kynge of ffraunce came out of his pauntyon / eueri  
 man beheld him *with* grete meruaile, wenyng he had ben the Duc  
 of Burgoigne / by cause he ware the playne armes ; and there was  
 8 leyde grete charge vnto him in many folkes mouthis, for weryng  
 thies armes, he not beyng kynge. Alle thise thinges done / thei  
 were embatailed eche ageinst othir, the corde drawn before eche  
 partie / and whan tyme was, the cordes were cutt / and the Trumpetis  
 12 blew vp, for euery man to do his deuoir / And for to assertayne you  
 more of the Tournay, there was on eche side a stake / and at eche  
 stake two kynges of armes, *with* penne and Inke and paper, to  
 write the names of alle them that were yolden / for they shold nomore  
 16 Tournay / The Duc of Burgoigne was on horsbak, accompanied *with*  
 them *with* the visours / and had a visour alwey bfore his visage ; and  
 they kepte them to-geder alway nere the kynge ; for grete desire had  
 the Duc to se his worthynesse. Suche an assemble was neuir noon  
 20 seen bfore / nor so many noble armes to-gedir / euery man payned  
 him to haue the price / The kynge of ffraunce saw where his lady  
 stode / and so did alle the remenaunt, whiche doubled their corage  
 and worthynesse. This Tournay dured longe tyme ; so moche / that  
 24 it was meruaile that any man might endure that / that eche of theym  
 did / Ouir alle othir, the kynge of ffraunce did meruailously : he ouir-  
 threwe men & horses, so that there was vnnethes any that durst  
 abide his strokes. the Emperour, and they that were in the scaffoldes,  
 28 were alle abasshed of the prowesse of the Duc of Burgoigne / there  
 was noon to be compared *with* him / In like wise seid the ladies,  
 and were ameruailed and sory that the kynge of Englonde<sup>1</sup> and the  
 kynge of Scottes were of no bettir power to encountre the Duc. It  
 32 is to thinke, the Duc of Burgoigne had grete ioie to se the worthy-  
 nesse of his Nevewe ; and so had the Frensshemen, wenyng it were  
 the Duc / saing amonges them / "oure maister is a meruailous noble  
 man" / and so seide alle othir nacions that were there / and meruailed  
 36 alle of him. So longe endured this Tournay, til, by the Emperours  
 ordenaunce, the Trumpetes blewe the retrayte, that euery man shold  
*with*drawe him / there were not xxx<sup>ii</sup> men on the Turkes side that  
 might feight / but alle were sent to the stake. There were double the  
 40 feighters on the kynges side of ffraunce ; for, by the seide kynge,

Sultan  
Charles and  
K. David are  
against K.  
Humphrey  
and King  
Philip.

The Tournay  
begins.

On each side  
is a stake for  
the beaten  
men.

King Philip  
of France  
does best  
of all.

[1 leaf 114]

When the  
cease is  
sounded,  
not 30 men  
are left on  
the Sultan's  
side.

King Philip  
is full of  
hope.

Iolante is  
told that she  
will be his.

[11. 114, bk.]

The Emperor  
is askt to  
order that,  
next day, all  
Tourneyers  
shall unhelm.

were sent to the stake vj. kynges and viij. Dukes, & xxij Erles, wherof the yonge Turke was one / whiche at that tyme had leuer haue dyued than lyued / The kynge of Englonde and the kynge of Scottes sawe vele they coude not wynne the pryce alle daies, ffor the 4 first day the pryce was wonne fro them bothe; wherof they were right sorowfulle / than euery man drewe to his Pavillon, trist & pensiff as they might be / But the kynge of ffrance was alle in a nother thought / for he departed with good hope, as glad and ioy- 8 fulle as he might be / and made him to be vnarmed / and his vnle coude not kepe him for takyng him in his armes / whan he remembred his grete noblesse that he had seen him do that day. Than went euery man to soper / and ouir alle the towne ranne the brute 12 on the Duc of Burgoigne / euery man seid that, sauf Le Surnome, he was the moost valiaunt man that euer they sawe / Aftir soper the ladies came in-to the halle to the daunces / and there they seide to this faire lady / "By my feith, madame, and the Duc contynue 16 thus worthyly, ye be his / wold oure lorde he were xx<sup>ii</sup> yere younger than he is!" Some seid that, "to-morow he shalbe so wery, that he shal not mowe contynue / and if he do not, the Emperour may chose whiche of them best pleasith him / and if it so be / I suppose he 20 will knowe your wilt or he make any graunt of you" / "By my feithe," seid the faire lady, "my wilt shal be as pleasith him / and neuir other-wise shal y thynke" / As they were in such talkyng came the kynges and the princis to Courte / but ouir alle othir was 24 the Duc of Burgoigne beholden of alle folkes; & moche murmour was ther of him / somme saide "he made a nothir to tournay<sup>1</sup> in his place; for certain it was not He that was to day yn the felde / it sheweth nothing in his face; for he ys as fressh as he was yester 28 even this tyme." Thise wordes multiplied so moche, that the knightes and ladies had noon othir talkyng but of him / In so moche that men spake vnto themperour therof / and saide, that "by this meane the kynges and princes might be deceyued." Wher- 32 fore they besought the Emperour / that on the morow, to put alle thing oute of suspecion, euery sholde departe oute of the felde vnhelmed / The Dukes folkes herde vele thise wordes that were spoken of their maister / for alle the halle was ful therof / and somme 36 of them went and tolde the Duc therof; and how alle folkes shold go vnhelmed out of the felde / and he made countenaunce of grete displeasir / but he had right grete ioie in his thought, hou-be-it he wold telle his neyewe no thing therof. Than remembered he / how 40



euery kyng bare a crowne on his helme / sauynge the kyng of  
 ffrance / than toke he leue, & went home to him / and tolde him  
 how many folkes spake that he bare the playne armes of ffrance  
 4 that day / and was not crowned / " wherfore it behoueth you to bere  
 the crowne, or ellis to bere myne armes " / Than seid the kyng, " I am King Philip  
agrees to  
wear his  
Crown.  
 content to bere the crowne to-morowe " / Thus concludid, they went  
 to bedde til on the morow / That mornynge, alle the princeis besought  
 8 the Emperour that eche one of them shold come vnhelmed before  
 the ladies ; and so forth euery man go streight forth to his pavilion /  
 Themperour agreed therto. The Duc was ware therof be tymes in  
 the mornynge / and appointed him-self right richely / and sat vpone  
 12 a stately Courser / his visour stille on / and whan tyme came, as the  
 ordenaunce was the day bifore / euery prince came out of his pavil-  
 ion aftir the blowynge of the Trumpetes ; and euery man shold haue  
 come out vnhelmed / But the kyng of ffrance came out alle armed /  
 16 his helme on his hed / and his crowne theron / whan men saw him  
 bere the crowne / euery man meruailed, & saide that " he aught not  
 to bere it / sith he toke not on him the name of kyng " ; euery man  
 spake herof / the cordes were cutte as they were the day bifore.  
 20 The tourney dured long, wele foughten / & grete armes that day  
 were seen / wher-thorough some dyed. Our lalle othir, the Duc of The Second  
day's Tour-  
ney begins.  
 Burgoigne bare the brute / the dedes of alle the tothir that were in [ leaf 115 ]  
King Philip  
again outdoes  
all other men.  
 the tourney, were not to be compared with his / notwithstanding  
 24 the moost worshipfulle of the world were ther / he ouirthrowe man  
 and horses, he racyd of helmes fro hedes / and finally he did so in  
 armes, that euery man fled him ; ther was not of them that were  
 against him whan the Trumpetis blew the retraite, passing x. that  
 28 might defende them ; and if the Trumpetes had taried a litil lenger,  
 alle they on his side sholde haue founde noon to feight with. The  
 kyng of Scottes was not brought to the stake that day, nor the  
 Turke nother / the trumpetes sowned, the listes were closed. The  
 32 kyng of fraunce wende to haue passid as he did the day before /  
 but ffrault came bifore him / and tolde him the crye & orden-  
 aunce of themperour. The Duc of Burgoigne knewe of thies  
 werkes, and was entred withyn the listes alle alone, wherof many  
 36 folkes meruailed / The kyng of ffrance, feling thus taken, had King Philip  
is unhelmed  
by Ferant.  
 grete displeasir in his herte ; hou-be-it, he most nedes obeye, &  
 came bifore the scaffold, where as the Emperour and the ladies  
 were / The Duc of Burgoigne alwey folowing him / Now cometh  
 40 ffrault as nere to the scaffold as he coude, and unlacid the helme

The Emperor  
embraces  
King Philip.

[1 ff. 115, bk.]

His French-  
men cheer  
him.

The Emperor  
praises the  
Duke of  
Burgundy.

of him that he had in charge ; and assone as it was of his hede,  
that he knewe it was Le Surnome, he coude not refrayne him to  
kisse him / and whan the Emperour and the ladies knewe him /  
they made ioie out of mesure / whan the kyng of Scottes and the 4  
kyng of Englund knewe that their felaw was there, they embraced  
him *with* as grete ioie as coude be thought. The Emperour coude  
no lenger kepe him on his scaffold, but came downe, and lepe an  
hors bak, and came to embrace Le Surnome, his special frende & 8  
seruaunt. There was the preas aboute him out of nombre. Somme  
saide, " beholde the outrage of this Duc ! This man is of ffraunce /  
and the Duc knoweth his worthynesse, and hath made him tourney  
in his place, wenyng therby to haue the faire Iolant." The Duc of 12  
Burgoyne toke of his visour / and required to speke *with* the  
Emperour in the presence of alle his ladies. Than came he before  
the Emperour, and spake so high that alle might here him / " sir,  
this same that hath tournaide, is the Kynge of Fraunce " / and tolde 16  
he how he <sup>1</sup>departid out of ffraunce / and of the dethe of his  
ffadir / seing that alle that he had done was by his commaunde-  
ment / wherfore he bisought the Emperour of pardone. whan the  
Emperour knewe that he was kyng of ffraunce, he saide that god 20  
was Iuste. This was anon knowen ouir alle men / and in esspecialle  
amonge them of ffraunce / that knewe nothings thereof afore. But  
than they cried with a high voice, " Nowelt ! " clappyng their handes /  
The Emperour and ladies wepte bothe for ioie & pite ; and aboue alle 24  
othir, made faire Iolant grete ioie / thinking in hir-self there was  
neuer womman more bounde to god / trustyng to be accompanied  
*with* him / that hir hert moost desired / Aftir this grete, ioie euery  
prince went to his pavilione. Themperour coude not wele leue of 28  
embracyng and kissing the kyng of ffraunce. grete was the ioie  
amonges them / and fferaunt, whan he hadde beholde his iij.  
seruauntes saide that, " neuer man of his power was so mightily  
serued as he had ben " / whan the Emperour behelde the Duc of 32  
Burgoyne, he thought he was a passing goodly man of his yeres,  
seyng, " that god had wele ioyned so grete truthe and comlynesse  
in o persone ; for honorably and truly he had acqyte him to his  
Nevewe." the kyng seid then, that " of long tyme had he knowen 36  
his vncles trouthe ; for there was neuer fadir kynder to his childe /  
than he had alway founde his vncle to him." The kyng of Eng-  
land & of Scottes, the more they thought on their fortune, the more  
were they abasshed & ameruailed ; for they had neuer redde in 40

romans nor in Cronicles, noon like vnto theirs. The Turke, whan he sawe this, wondird also gretly in hym-self / and thought wele, by the kynge of ffrance, the Realme of Sizile had be recouerd / therfore it was moost conuenient, & best right, that his fortune shold be to enioie it. Themperour thought this fortune a miracle<sup>1</sup>; wherfore he made alle the belles of the towne to be rongen / and toke the kynge by the hande, & brought him to the chirche / and euery man thankid god, that by his grace he had sent thise iij. kynges to their recouere, and releef of the cristen feith / and alle the straungers that herd therof, yaue god a grete lawde, holdyng it for a very miracle / Frensshmen, that had recouerd their kyng / and knewe for trouthe it was the same<sup>2</sup> that was named Le Surnome, that had done so grete a wele to the realme of Sizile, of whom the renome spred thorough alle the world / thankid god as hertly, and with a grete ioie, as was possible / Than brought themperour the kynge of ffrance to se the ladies / whiche coude not refrayne their lokes fro him while he was there, sauf the faire and good Iolant, whiche was so wele assured in euery manere, whiche bihelde him with suche wommanhode and wisdom, that neither he nor noon othir shold perceyue hir thought, al-be-it she had not leste pleasir to behold him / In like wise was he as wele assured, for he thought than no place nor tyme couenable to shewe that moost touchid his hert / But whan he might, he toke leve of themperour to chaunge him, and aftir soper to come agein to se the ladies. The Emperour made to speke vnto him secretly / that he and his vncle shold come suppe with the ladies / In like wise warned he the kynge of England and of Scottes. The kynge of ffrance agreed to his commaundement without any grugge / for there was no-thinge that he desired so moche, as to be in the company of somme that shold be ther. Thus departed he, and toke ffreraunt by the arme, wold he or not / and so went with him, arme in arme, thorough the towne, til he came to his logging / where as they made grete ioie / and talked of many thinges passed / and so drave forth, til tyme came they shold go to soper to the Emperour / than departed they fro his loggyng til he came to themperour, whiche was accompanied with the kynges afore rehersed. There were set at his boorde, himself, his wif, & his doughtir, and ij. othir grete ladies / The kynge of ffrance, of Englund, and of Scottes, and the duc of Burgoigne; and ffreraunt, maugre his wille, was set there at the request of the thre kynges. At the soper, was rehersed the gouernaunce of them / how they iij.

[<sup>1</sup> MS. miracle]  
The Emperor  
has all the  
bells in the  
town rang.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 116]

He takes  
King Philip  
to see Iolante,

but she will  
not show her  
love for him.

King Philip  
and his  
friends

go to sup  
with the  
Emperor.

had ben *seruauntes* to *fferaunt* / and how they shewed them self at this tournay in *suche fourme*, that their first noblesse might not be forgotten in this Realme. thus passed forth the *soper* / And the Emperour saide to *fferaunt*, "that there might no *mysaventure* 4 befall hym, *seyng* such *iiij. seruauntes* had *seruid* him" / & they seid, "god had sent hem *grete grace* to *serue* so good a *maister* as he was / that, next *themperour*, there was no man *lyving* they <sup>1</sup>*wolde* be gladder to do *honour* and *pleasir vnto*." The *soper* passed forth 8 *ioifully* / *lital* was eten there, for they were alle *fedde with ioie*. The Emperour behelde the *kyng* of *ffraunce*, that his *faire* sone shold be, and thought wele that god had *accomplished* alle *weles* in him. *Themperesse* thought *accordyng* to the same. This *faire* 12 lady, how *moche* so euer she was *reioised* in hir thought, hir maner was *suche* that no man coude *perceyue* it; on the *tothir* side, the *kyng* of *ffraunce*, in *beholdyng* hir, *trustid* as wele to *performe* the *iiij<sup>de</sup>* day as he had *begone*; wherthorugh he was so *ravisht* 16 *with ioie*, that he neither *eete* ne *dranke* / Aftir *soper*, *bifore* the *comyng* of *othir kynges* and *princis* / the *kyng* of *ffraunce* talked *with* the *faire Iolante* / and *askid* hir, by hir *feith*, so many noble *Princis* as were at this *assemble* / if there were not one more than a- 20 *nothir* in hir *grace* / for any *thyng* that he coude do / he coude *perceyue* by no *wordes* of hir / but that alle hir *hert & wille* was at the *pleasir* of hir *ffadir* / *seyng* also she was right *ioyfulle* of the *grete* estate that he was yn, *prayng* god to *sende* him *asmoche* 24 *honour & ioie* as he coude *wisshe* / he *thankid* hir ful *humbly* / and *askid* hir / if god gaf him that *fortune* to come to the *mariage* of / if she wold not so be *aswele content* as *with* a-*nothir* / she *chaunged colour*, & saide, "God gif hir *grace* to *lyue* no lenger 28 than she be content with hym / that *pleasith* hir *fadir* to *yeue* hir, were it be he, or any *othir*." *with* these *wordes* came yn many *othir kynges* and *princes* to *themperours Court*. The *kyng* of *ffraunce*, of *Englond*, and of *Scottes*, went to *mette* them / and brought them 32 yn to the *ladies*; the *mynstralles* *pleide* so many / that alle the *halle* *resounded* / the *daunces* began / The *kyng* of *ffraunce* toke this *faire lady*, his *maistresse*, by the *hande*, and *daunced with* hir / euerie body behelde them *gladly* / And *themperour* and the *Duc* of 36 *Burgoigne* talked *togedir* / and behelde this *goodly couple* *dauncyng*: "*fforsothe*," seid the *Emperour* / "here is a *mete couple* / god, by his *grace*, *preserue* them long" / "*fforsothe*" / said the *Duc* / "If it please you to make the *mariage*, I *trowe* ye *shalle displeas* 40

[1 ff. 116, bk.]

The Em-  
peror's guests  
are too full  
of Joy to eat.King Philip  
talks to his  
love, Iolante.He dances  
with her;and they are  
thought a fit  
couple.  
[2 MS. dis-  
pleasem]

- them neither" / "fforsothe," seid themperour, "if it please the kyng  
to take my doughtir / noon shall haue hir but he / By the orden-  
aunce of this Tournay, no man [can] clayme hir of right / but if he  
4 wyne alle the iij. daies / <sup>1</sup>and that can noman do but he / and [1 leaf 117]  
though he do not / if it please him to haue hir, I wol be right  
ioyfull, ffor he hath deserued a grettir rewarde / yif it were in me  
to yeue it him; for y holde myn honour and this Realme, only by  
8 god and him" / euery man that was in the halle spake of this matier /  
and in their mynde gaf this faire lady to the kyng of ffrance. Aftir  
the daunces, euery man lay downe by the ladies, and talked to-gedir /  
the night came & departed them / and alle folkes went to rest / and  
12 on the morow, at the houre apointed, the kynges and princes came  
to the tournay / as they did the dayes bifore / The kyng of ffrance  
was wele loked on / that day / & if he had done meruailes the ij.  
daies bifore / it semed to alle folkes it was nothing in comparison  
16 to that he did the last day; for at that day there was none that  
might abide his strokes; so that by than the Trumpetes blew the  
retraite, there was not one on that othir side to feight with-alle.  
Thus venguissed he the Tournay by alle iij. daies / and ouir alle  
20 othir next him / the kyng of Englonde & the kyng of Scottes had  
the preys / At the departyng of the Tournay, the Emperour sent  
to alle the kynges & princes to suppe with him that night / and their  
had he ordeyned the most noble and riche soper that euer had be  
24 seen there bifore / thider came all folkes; and euery man set in  
ordre / a prince alwey, and a princesse, or a grete lady / Aftir soper,  
the Emperour called the moost part of the noble men that were in the  
halle, reseruyng them that had tournaide / and also toke vnto hym  
28 the kynges of Armes / and the notable heraldes of euery prince that  
there was, and went in-to another halle in Counselle, and made the  
Daunces to begynne, to disport the princes the meane while / and  
whan he was in his counselle, accompanied as y haue seid you / he  
32 asked what he shold do / and deliuerd the ordre of the tournay; and  
asked if "they knewe any man that had accomplished the trye of  
this, he wold holde his promesse, without makyng lenger tale" / It  
was so clere matier, that alle, of one accorde, gaf the price of alle iij.  
36 daies to the kyng of ffrance. The Emperour wolde haue the witte  
& thause of the ladies, and sent for the emperesse, & for the moost  
part of the ladies / and the remenaunt abode stille at the Daunces  
with his doughtir. Than asked he <sup>2</sup>their aise, as he had done of [2 ff. 117, bk.]  
40 the men / and anone they gaf their iugement to the kyng of

The Third  
day's Tour-  
ney begins.

King Phillip  
surpasses  
himself.

He is the  
First;  
the Kings  
of England  
and Scotland  
next.

The grand  
Council

all adudge  
the prize to  
King Philip  
of France.

ffraunce. Themperour herynge this, toke the Emperesse by the hande, & came in-to the halle, and toke their doughtir as she was dauncyng / bitwene them bothe, and came toward the kyng of ffraunce; and whan he saw them, he came to them. Than said 4 themperour, "Right noble & valiaunt kyng! this Tournay was ordeyned like as ye knowe / wherof the price ys youen vnto you by alle iij. daies / hou-be-it, this Tournay compellith you not to take my doughtir, but if it please you. ¶ Natheles, here y presente hir to 8 you, in keypyng my promesse / and gif you the price / & hir, if it please you to take hir." [Illumination: 1. Iolante offered to K. Philip; 2. married to him.]

The Emperor  
offers his  
daughter  
Iolante to  
King Phillip,

**W**Han the kyng of ffraunce sawe this present that he moost desired, he kneled donne, & saide, "my lord! of the grete 12 honour and curtesie that ye do me / of hir that is so moche worth,—first, y thanke almighti god / and right humbly y thanke your grace & the Emperesse / and to outrageous & ferrest ourseyen shold he be, that suche a present refused / and as for me, 16 I am redy to take hir / and moost glad therof of any thing" / Than toke he the faire maide, & kissed hir / and euery man preide god to sende them long lif to-gedir, with moche honour and ioie / fforthwith was an Archebisshop called, and he ennsured them / and 20 the day of mariage was apointed the thrid day / and agein that day were cried Iustes of .xx. helmes against alle comers / at whiche day the kyng of ffraunce and alle his company apointed them as richely as was possible / The moost part of kynges & princis came to his 24 loggyng, to do him honour & company that day / than went they to the Emperours loggyng / where they fonde <sup>1</sup>themperesse and hir faire doughtir / accompanied with many ladies and gentilwomen redy to go to chirche. I can not reherce the grete richesse that was 28 that day shewed, in aray and in Iewels, amonge the princes and princesses / for eche was araied as riche as they coude / ye may wele thinke, the kyng of ffraunce & his company were not the werst; for, ful sory wold he haue ben to a wist any othir nacion to haue 32 passed him that day / But he and his vncler excided in richesse, that day, alle othir princis that were there. whan he had seen the faire Iolant, he went to chirche, accompanied with many a grete 36 prince. and after was she brought to chirche; where they were married with grete ioie / and than retourned home agein to dyner / whiche was as grete and as roialle, as to such folkes belonged / The kyng of ffraunce gaf to the heraldes grete richesse, whervpone they cried "largesse" thorough the halle, as was accustomed / after the 40

who gladly  
takes her,

is plighted  
to her,

and 3 days  
after

[leaf 118]

marries her.

boordes were taken vp / the daunces endured but a while, be cause of  
the Iustes / At the Iustes, for the loue of the kynge of ffrance and  
of his wif, Themperour was on the vttir party, and the Duc of Bur-  
4 goigne was on the Inne side, *with* the kynge of ffrance / These  
Iustes dured til it was euen / and torche light / There were iij. C.  
helmes / and there were so many ladies & gentilwommen, that there  
were Scaffoldes for them on eche side the felde / there had not be  
8 seen bifore, grettir Iustes than tho. That day, was many an high &  
noble crye of mighti kynges and princes & grete lordes. Thus  
passed the day til soper tyme / & aftir soper, began the Daunces /  
And there were riche monnaynges of grete princes / & many  
12 riche presentes brought to this faire lady / Thus passed forth the  
night, til it was tyme to go to rest / Than was the faire Iolant  
brought to bed / The kyng of ffrance taried not long aftir. Now  
were there togedirs tho persones of the world that moost were to  
16 be preysed / the night passed / the day came / the kynge arose /  
and the quene bothe, and were araied so richely that it was meruaile  
to beholde. The lordes came to se the kynge / the ladies & gentil-  
women came to se the quene / what shalt I make lenger tale / this  
20 fest endured xv. daies hole ; and every day, newe Iustes & Tournay /  
But <sup>1</sup>there was neur ffeste in this worlde / but onys it must haue  
an ende.

Dances  
follow ;  
then Jousts.  
The Jousts  
in honour of  
K. Philip's  
marriage.

The Feast  
lasts 15 days.  
[1 ff. 118, bk.]

24 **Y**N an Euenyng, at a grete assemble, the Turke came to  
themperour, and to the tothir kynges and Princes that were  
there, seyng vnto them / "My lordes, ye knowe wele that,  
in trust of you / y haue lefte the lawe that I held of / and toke me  
to the lawes of Ihesu crist / eche of you hath promysed me aide /  
28 and *withoute* helpe I can not abide in myn onne Cuntre / wherupon  
I require you nowe of counselle and aide" / The princes there pre-  
sent, knewe that he seid trouthe ; [&] remembryng their promesse /  
advised them to sende, euery prince, [a lettre] vndir his seale, to alle  
32 thestates of the Turkes lande, certifying them by the same, to take his  
part, if it so were that they wold rebelle ageinst him / Thus concluded  
they to sende messangers forth / In the meane tyme, avised him the  
kyng of Englund / how he had ij. Susters of grete beaute, and of  
36 resonable age to be married ; wherfore he thought he coude not bettir  
bestowe *the* one of theym, than on the kynge of Seottes, his next  
neighbour, for the grete loue, and long acqweyntaunce and familiarite  
that had ben bitwene them. And the tothir Suster, he thought to  
40 mary to the Duc of Burgoigne / But he seid, "verily he wold neuer

The Emperor  
and kings  
notify to the  
Turks that  
they will  
help him if  
his subjects  
rebel against  
him.

The Duke of  
Burgundy  
declines to  
marry.

Sultan  
Charles's  
beautiful  
Sister

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 119]

refuses, at  
first, to give  
up her Faith  
and marry  
King Hum-  
phrey of  
England,

who is very  
much in love  
with her,

be married / nor in his youthe entendid no mariage" / And whan  
the kynge vndirstode the answere of the Duc, he thought to mary  
hir vnto the Turke / for he herd say the Turke had a Sustir of high  
beaute, & she wold become cristen / he thought it were a metely 4  
mariage for him to mary the Turkes suster, and the Turke to mary  
his / Suche wordes were cast forth amonges the Princes; so that the  
Emperour, and the kynge of ffrance, and the Duc of Burgoigne,  
that was an inly wise man, toke the besinesse vpon them / and 8  
conduyte it so that thise mariages were accorded, and a messenger  
sent forth for the Turkes suster / And assone as she might, she  
came / at the commaundement of hir brothir / and whan they  
knewe of hir comyng / The kynge of ffrance, the kynge of Eng- 12  
lond, and the kynge of Scottes, mette with hir, & brought hir to hir  
logging. And whan she was alight, and they departed / the Turke  
shewed vnto hir the cause of hir sendyng for / and howe he <sup>1</sup>was  
bicomme cristened / and How, if she wold Bicomme cristened, he had 16  
married hir to right a goodly Prince, & a mighti, whiche was the  
kynge of England / But the first day, the seconde, & the third after,  
coude he neuer turne his suster / and whan he sawe it wold no  
bettir be, he came to the Emperour and to the kyng of ffrance, the 20  
kynge of England & the kynge of Scottes, and tolde them / 'how  
in no wise his suster and he coude accorde'; & tolde them what  
answers she made him / The kynge of England,—that be this tyme  
was right amorous, & supprised with hir grete beaute,—whan he 24  
herd thise tidynges was right sorowfuH / and chaunged colour &  
countenaunce so fer forth, that he had not a word to speke. This  
espied wele bothe themperour and the kynge of ffrance / and than  
seide the kynge of ffrance / "brynge hir to the Emperesse, to be 28  
accompanied with the ladies here, to se if they be of any grettir  
power to chaunge hir than ye / and by this meane, may she haue  
some acqueyntaunce of my brother, the kyng of England; whiche,  
peraventure, may so turne hir hert, that she shal pray you of that 32  
ye now pray hir." Themperour and alle they lough / The Turke  
saide, 'and he might by any meane, he wolde bringe hir to the  
Daunces to the ladies' / he did so moche, that aftir soper he brought  
hir. And whan she sawe so grete assemble of Princis & princesses, 36  
she meruailed gretly, thinkyng she sawe neuer so good a sight /  
She salewed the Emperour and themperesse / and alle the ladies /  
and alle the kynges and princis / than began the daunces / where  
she avised wele the kynge of England, & thought him right a 40



- goodly knight / and a wele assured ; and there herd she y-nough  
rehersted of his noblesse & good maners. The ladies escorted hir a-  
part to leue hir lawe / & eche seide the best they coude / but in no  
4 wise coude they conuerte hir / Thus departed she to hir logging,  
whan tyme was / sone aftir, came hir brothir vnto hir / and asked hir  
'how she liked the company that she had seen that night.' she said,  
"right wele" / he asked hir 'how she liked the kynge of England' /  
8 and her hert serued hir vnto him / she saide 'right wele, if she  
might kepe hir owne feith' / othir answere coude he noon gete of  
hir / Thus departed they ; and she went to bedde that night ; [then]  
thought she of this goodly company she had seyne. <sup>1</sup>The kynge  
12 of Englund was not forgotten / the more she remembred him, the  
bettir she liked him / hou-be-it her herte coude not agree for him,  
nor noon othir, to leue hir feith / The kynge of England, on the  
tothir side, the oftener he sawe hir, the more he loued hir / and  
16 supposed wele in his mynde that he coude not bringe his purpose  
about / wherfore he thought best / to depart. And on the morowe,  
came vn-to the kynge of ffrance, and tolde him his entent / The  
kynge of ffrance counseld him yit to abide / and went him self to  
20 the Turke, and tolde him / "ye ar likly to lese here the kynge of  
Englund, for he wilt departe / for he thinkith his abidyng here  
serueth him of nought / and so thinke y also / ffor thinke ye he is  
a man to be kepte so long in speche? me semeth it is wele doo, ye  
24 go to your suster to vndirstonde hir wille / and to take of hir this  
night a ferme answere / ffor it is tyme that he be answerd one way  
or othir" / "By my trouthe," seide the Turke, "it is not in my  
defaute / that he is so long vnanswerd ; but to-morowe y shalt telle  
28 you vtterly hir will" / Aftir this, the Turke departed, and came to  
his suster, and tolde hir, "I most this night telle a playne answere  
of your entent / The kynge of ffrance, the kynge of Englund, and  
othir princis that be in this towne, wille departe / for the good wille  
32 they haue vnto you and me / they haue longe kepte them here ;  
wherfore me thinkith ye deale meruailously / But y pray you now,  
say at ones howe ye wille be demeaned / whethir ye wille be agreeable  
to their desire and myne ; or ellis y shaft lete them departe / and  
36 thanke them of their good wille they haue shewed me / how be it, if  
they thus departe / by you shalt y lese the moost sure & speciale  
frendes y haue in this world." whan his Suster herd him thus sey /  
she knewe wele of force she most discouere hir entente touchyng  
40 his alliaunce / and was so supprised that she wist not what to say /

the' she  
thinks him  
a goodly  
man.

The Sultan's  
Sister wants  
to keep her  
own Faith.

[1 If. 119, bk.]

Then the  
King of Eng-  
land says  
he'll go home.

The Sultan  
Charles  
presses his  
Sister for a  
favourable  
answer to K.  
Humphrey.

The Sultan's  
Sister is in  
great doubt.

She thought, 'if she renaide not hir feith, she shold displease hir brother / and also put him in grete daunger, & losse of his frendes' / She thought also, 'if she shold leue hir feith / and take a newe, what iuarde that shold be vnto hir soule.' Thus was she a grete while 4 without speche. hir brothir presyd sore on hir alway to haue an answer / And at the laste she <sup>1</sup>said, "y am in a sorowfulle case / ffor ye, that be my souerain Lorde and brother, say / if y accomplissh not your pleasir / y shal cause your grete iuarde / and perauenture 8 your destruccion / and on that othir side / yf y renounce my feithe / what shal than befall of my soule" / "Be my feith," seide the Turke, "I take the perell therof on me" / "Than," quoth she, "y pray you respite me for ij. daies" / The Turke in no wise durst 12 graunte hit, til he hadde spoken with the kynge of ffraunce / Than went the kynge of ffraunce and he, to the kynge of Englonde forthis respite / and he was therto agreable, trustyng vpon a good answer. On the morowe, the Turke toke ij. or iij. notable clerkis, & went to 16 his suster, and made them to shewe hir oure feith / and they exorted hir in suche wise that she was agreable to be cristened / and the same night was she cristened by the Emperesse and the quene of ffraunce. Aftir that she was cristened, she came to se the Emperour, 20 & was there with the ladies til she was married / and the thridde day after, was the kynge of Englonde and she married to-gedir with grete solempnite and Ioie.

She asks for 2  
days' grace.

She is con-  
verted by  
Christian  
Clerks,

and marries  
K. Hun-  
plrey of  
England.

**N**OW shaH y telle you of the messangers that were sent in-to 24 the Turkes land: they did their deuoirs, so that the states were assembled, and redde the letters of alle the Princes. and whan they knewe the tidynges, that their lord had taken the cristen feith / they were right sory / how-be-it they durst not make 28 no besinesse against him / for the drede they had of the promyses that alle thise princes had made vnto him / wherfore, of comon assent, they made a lettir to the Emperour and to the Turke, & to alle the princes that were there / puttyng them in knowlache / that, 'as for 32 the chaunge of his feith, they remitted that [to] his conscience; they were content to obey him on suche condicion, that noon shold be constreyned to leue his feith / for that wold they neuer do' / whan the messangers came agein, the Emperour and alle the kynges and 36 princis were wele content with their message. The suretees were taken bitwene them / Alle this done & performed, euery prince toke hede to his owne besinesse / The kynge of ffraunce desired moche to go in-to his Realme. The Turke desired to mary his wif / The 40

The Sultan's  
subjects

require only  
that they  
may keep  
their old  
Faith.

kyng of Scottes in like wise / wherfore euery man wold departe  
 from the Emperour / On a day, at good leiser, they came to the  
 1 Emperour / and shewed him their desire; wherfore he was right <sup>[1 lf. 120, bk.]</sup>  
 4 sory / but he knewe wele it most nedes be so. Than asked he  
 what they wold do. The kynge of Englund spake first, & seid <sup>The large  
Sicilian  
gathering is  
to break up.</sup>  
 he had promysed his ij. Sustres in mariage, as he knewe wele /  
 whiche he wold fayne perfourme. Themperour desired the kynge  
 8 of Englund & the kynge of Scottes, to pray the kynge of ffraunce to  
 abide stille with him / "fforsothe," saide the kynge, "sith my first  
 departyng oute of ffraunce to come in-to the werres of Sizile, sawe  
 y not my lady my moder" / "forsothe," saide themperour, "yo  
 12 haue grete reason than to se hir" / The kynge of Englund than  
 besought the kynge of ffraunce to be at the mariage of his ij.  
 Sustirs / "fforsothe," seide the kynge of ffraunce, "I shall, with right  
 good wille." Themperour, hering alle thise apointementes, saide :  
 16 "trewly, y hold my lond by god & you iij.; and therfore, my sone,  
 y wille first go with you in-to your Realme / & fro thens in-to the  
 Realme of Englund, to the mariage of the kinges Sisters; & so come  
 home thorough the Realme of Scotland, & conduyte the yong Quene;  
 20 & fro thens come hider agin, where y shalt ende the remenaunt of  
 my daies." This conclusion was taken bitwene him, the Turke, &  
 the kynges, & the Duc of Burgoigne. Than euery man ariedied  
 him to departe; and alle on a day departed they. The kynge of  
 24 Englund, his wif, & the Turke, departid to Englund / The king of  
 Scottes in-to Scotland / Themperour, & the kynge of ffraunce & their  
 wives, went in-to ffraunce / Now behoueth it to reherce how euery  
 man sped his Iournay. <sup>[Illumination: Emperor, French King, &c. riding off.]</sup>  
 28 **F**irst shalle we speke of the kynge of ffraunce / At his depart-  
 ing, he sent to assertayne the Realme of ffraunce, & specially  
 vnto his moder, of his comyng, & the trouthe of alle his for-  
 tune / And whan the messangers came there / it can not be writen,  
 32 the ioie that was than in the Realme of ffraunce. But ouir alle othir  
 this disconsolate moder, the Quene of ffraunce, was glad whan she  
 herd tidynges of hir right dere sone / Hou-be-it, she toke displeasir  
 that he had be in ffraunce, & not spoken with hir. And whan she  
 36 first herd <sup>2</sup>tidynges of his comyng, she said / "Allas, my childe! if <sup>[2 leaf 121]</sup>  
 thi good ffadir had knowen the alyve, he had yit lyued / or ellis  
 departid out of this world more at his ease / But now, do god by  
 me his pleasir; so that ones I might se the or y dye" / Suche  
 40 wordes saide the good olde Quene of ffraunce, moder to the kynge / <sup>The King  
and Queen  
of England,  
and the  
Sultan, go  
to England;  
K. David to  
Scotland;  
the rest to  
France.</sup>  
<sup>The Queen  
Dowager of  
France</sup>  
<sup>longs to see  
her Son be-  
fore she dies.</sup>

Ouir alle the realme they range belles & made processions, thankynge  
god of his grete grace; for thei neuer trusted to haue hadde the ioie  
of presence of their yong king / fulle grete ioie had thei also of his  
marriage, & of the good renoune of their yong Quene / This meane 4  
tyme, came themperour & the kinge of fraunce into the Realme / &  
at their first entryng, ther mette them many estates & moche people.  
& whan he came amonges the people, they cried "Nowell" with an  
high voice, yelding thank to god on their knees, ioynynge their 8  
handes to hevinwarde / whan the Emperour & his wif sawe in his  
Realme suche people in suche estate, their hertes were alle renewed  
with ioie. Aftir, came the nobles, in the moost & best biseyn com-  
pany that was seen there bifore. There was the clergie without 12  
nombre, solempnely & honourably set in ordre, whiche, next the  
comon people, salewed the kyng, preysynge god of his agein-comyng,  
whiche was not without wepyng / Than came the noble folkes,  
accompanied as is bifore reherced / and did vnto him their 16  
reuerences / and by one of them were the wordes saide bifore them  
alle, a grete processe / preysynge god of his retourne / grete was the  
preise there. And at thentryng of the Towne, the stretes were  
hanged / before theire houses were the ladies & gentilwommen / 20  
burgeises & maydens; grete was the ioie there. The processions  
were alwey bifore the kyng / And the Emperour and he alighted  
at the chief chirche / and so did the ladies, to praise and thanke  
god. Aftirwarde the kyng conueyed themperour to his loggyng / 24  
and than retournd to his owne. The towne made to the kyng &  
the Quene grete presentes; & so they did to themperour & them-  
presse. Thus was the kinge & themperour receyued in euery place  
they came to in the Realme / and whan the Emperour came to 28  
Paryce, he and his folkes alle meruailed of the gret Richesse they  
sawe there / the kyng brought him to the palice / where as the  
Quene his moder, gretly accompanied with ladies & gentilwommen,  
mette with themperour & themperesse. But whan she sawe hir 32  
sone, she had no power to susteyne hir-self / for the ioie she had /  
and forthwith felt in swoone, wherof themperour & themperesse  
were right so<sup>l</sup>rowfulle / but ouir alle othir, the king was moost sory /  
& brought þe Themperour to his chambre, & forthwith went to his 36  
moder, whiche he fonde somewhat recouerd. & whan he saw hir, he  
kneled downe, and fulle humbly axed hir mercy / and besought hir /  
that it pleased hir to take som payne to make chere to themperesse  
& to hir doughtir / The quene, that was right feble, saide vnto him / 40

King Philip,  
with his  
Queen and  
the Em-  
peror, enters  
France,

to his folks'  
joy.

The clergy

and nobles  
greet them;

so do the  
burgesses  
and maidens.

They give  
presents to  
the King.

His Mother  
swoons for  
joy on seeing  
him.

[1 lf. 121, bk.]

- “my sone, sith that y haue seen you a lyve bifore my dethe, I am  
 now content that god do by me as it pleasith him / Neuirtheles, I  
 shal make the best chere y can ; but trewly my lymmes may not  
 4 yit susteyne me ; wherfore y pray you sende for my faire doughtir,  
 your wif, that y may se hir” / and whan she behelde hir, she thought  
 hir the fairest creature that euir she sawe / & made as moche of hir  
 as she coude / At night, the Emperour and themperesse supped in  
 8 their chambre. The king & the Quene supped *with his modir* / whiche  
 might not ete that soper tyme, for ioie she had of them bothe /  
 That night, were brought grete presentes by them of Parice / bothe  
 to the Themperour & to Themperesse / & to the kynge & to the  
 12 Quene / &, whan tyme was, alle men went to rest / til on the morow /  
 they rose vp at good tyme, & herd diuine seruice / and than went  
 to dyner / And whan they had dyned / the Iustes began / It semed  
 that tyme that alle the world was in ioie / This ffeeste endured the  
 16 space of an hole moneth. The olde Quene reioysed hir so now, that  
 she put oute of mynde alle passed sorowes / Now came the tyme  
 that they most depart, to to go the mariage in Englund. The kinge  
 led *with him* his moder, to cause hir take som disport & ioie / for  
 20 longe tyme had she be *without any* / Themperour, thoroughout alle  
 the Realme, was fested in euery Cite, and in euery grete princes  
 house / that lay in his way / til he came to the departyng out of  
 ffraunce / where as he was as honourably conduyted, as he was  
 24 receyued at his first comyng. Now passeth he the see / & landid  
 at Dover / where as the kynge of Englund, and his wif, and the  
 Turke, reseceyued them *with grete honour* ; & with the Quene were  
 the kynges ij. Susters / that were right faire / The kyng of Scottes  
 28 was not yit come / but he taried not long aftir / ffor the day of his  
 mariage was set or he went out of Sizile. There reseceyued the  
 kyng of Englund, Themperour and Themperesse, the kynge of  
 ffraunce, & the ij. Quenes *with grete honour* / and, as long as they  
 32 were in the Realme, wold suffre them, nor noon of them, to pay for  
 no thing that they spent / Then rode <sup>1</sup>they til they came to  
 London ; and in euery place Themperour and his company wel-  
 comed, as belonged to their estates. And whan they came to  
 36 London, The kynge of ffraunce was inly glad to se the richesse and  
 estate that he sawe there / & how nobly & honourably Themperour  
 was reseceyued ther. Sone aftir their comyng, came the kyng of  
 Scottes, whiche was mette *with* / by the kynges & princes that were  
 40 in the Towne, and was right highly & honourably reseceyued. The

King Philip  
and his  
Queen sup  
with his  
Mother.

Jousts begin.

The Festival  
lasts a  
month.

The King  
and Queen of  
France land  
at Dover,

[1 leaf 122]  
and ride to  
London.

K. Humphrey's Sisters marry the Sultan and the King of Scotland. The Marriage Festival lasts 15 days.

The Emperor promises to

give back to the Sultan the Turkish towns he took (p. 155).

The Emperor and the Kings of France and England visit Scotland.

The Emperor's daughter, Queen Iolante, bears many fair children.

day came, that the Turke and the kyng of Scottes shold be maried to the kyng of Englonde's susters / A meruailous grete feste there was, and a riche & a wele serued / The iustes & festes were grete by many daies. The feste endured xv. daies / Than departed them-  
 perour & the kyng of ffrance. The princes & the lordes of Englonde, that had lefte their childre with the kyng whan he departid fro his fadir / made a grete request vnto the Turke / that there might be a serche thorough his land, if any of their childre were lyving / sayng that they wold with right good wille pay their fynauunce / The kyng of Englonde required him right hertly for the same. The Turke promysed him to do asmoche as was possible therin / The Emperour, that knewe wele that alle his conquest and good fortune was comen him, next goddes helpe, by the thre kynges present, and for the loue that he had to the kyng of Englonde, he saide to the Turke / "the aliaunce that ye haue with the kyng of Englonde, shalt make you nowe to recouere the places that y haue within your land / ffor now ye be his brothir, y yelde and yeue vnto you them frely agein / wherfore say gramercy to your brothir." The Turke right humbly thankid the Emperour, and so did the kyng of Englonde also / Nowe cometh the tyme of Themperours departyng / The kyng of Scottes besought him to take his way thorough Scotland / and besought his ij. felawes that they wold conduyte the Emperour thider / and desired the Turke in like wise. Themperour and alle thise kynges agreed to the kynges of Scottes request / Thus departed they fro londone / and til they were out of the Realme / the kinge of Englonde wold not lete them be chargid with nothing that they toke / And whan they came in-to Scotland, they were there right wele and honourably resceyued, & gretly fested ouir alle the Realme / Thus were they thre wekis in passing thorough the Realme. And many grete festis & Tournais / And whan the Emperour saw thise iij. seruauentes, that so long had serued him / he was right ioifult of their estate & puissaunce / and thought his doughter wele vred / so did he the Realme of Sizile, & desired no thinge so moche / as to se some childre of his doughtir before his dethe / god graunted his request / for he sawe y-nough come of hir, as faire childre as euer were borne / whiche did aftir, grete thinges, as men may finde in Stories of ffrance. There departed he & his ioifult company / at whiche departyng was remembred more sorow than ioie / whan the Emperour shold say fare wele, he coude not speke of a grete while ; but at last, whan

he might speke, he saide that, daies of his lyve, had he neuer be so long to-gedir in ioie & wele / euery man toke leve of him / And whan his faire doughtir sholde take hir leve of him / he toke hir  
4 in his armes, and stode so a long while, & nouthur of them coude speke a worde / And whan the kynge of ffraunce saw that / he made the departyng / and said to themperour / that at any tyme that it pleasid him, she shold come se him / than brought he hir to  
8 the Emperesse / and nouthur of them coude wele loke on othir for wepyng. Than departed the kyng them, like as he had done themperour and hir. Than went she in-to hir chambre, accompanied with many ladies & gentilwomen / Then the Emperour & them-  
12 peresse departed / and the Turke and his wif in his company / The king of ffraunce, Englund, and of Scottes, conveied Themperour, & than toke their leve / at whiche departyng was grete sorowe ; and eche embraced othir ful louyngly. Whan they were departed,  
16 Themperour, the Turke, and fferaunt, kepte their streight course in-to Sizile / and passed forth the tyme with talkyng of suche aventures as they had seen in their daies / & sped so wele that they came in-to Sizile / the Turke taried there but litil / but went home in-to  
20 his owne Cuntre, and his wif with him / where he was right worshipfully reseeyued, for dred of the two kynges that he was alied with / Than made he grete serche thorugh alle the Realme for the childe of Englund, and founde the moost parte of them, so that ther  
24 lakked not passyng two / Than made he them to be bayned, and kepte aswele as they coude / til they were agein in their strengthe and colour. than horsed he eche one of them, and apointed them in the best wise, and sent them in-to Englund, without payng of any  
28 raunsom / and sent letters vnto his brother of Englund, & <sup>1</sup> this present withall / wherof the kynge was ioifult as he might be / and gretely thanked the Turke / and sent him agein grete giftes. Now were the ffadirs & the modirs in grete ioie, that hadde agein their  
32 children.

**T**He kynge of ffraunce, aftir the departyng of Themperour, abode there but a while / and the night before his departyng, supped alle thise iij. kynges to-gedre, & there made assurance & promesse, eche to othir / that neuer noon of them shold faile othir ; but that eche shold loue othir as brethern, and eche take othirs quarell as his owne. On the morowe, departed the kynge of ffraunce / the kyng of Englund & the kynge of Scottes conueied  
40 him / and at the departing there was many a sorowfull embrace

The Emperour  
and Empress

return to  
Sicily.

The Sultan  
and his  
English wife  
go back to  
Turkey,

set free all  
the English  
children  
there, and  
send them  
home.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 123]

The Kings of  
France and  
Englund quit  
Scotland.

yng / for ful glad wold they haue ben to haue contynued the  
 remenaunt of their lyves to-gedre, if it might so be / but eche of  
 them was of suche estate / that their besinesse and charge was  
 suche / that thei might not contynue to gedre, which sore for- 4  
 thought them alle / whan the kyng of ffrance, the Quene, & their  
 company were shipped / the wynde serued them so wele / that  
 within litil while they landed at Scelse. The Erle of fflaundres  
 herd of his comyng, and met with him there / and made him grete 8  
 thro' Bruges chere & feest / and so forth brought him to Bruggys / and there  
 made him alle the chere that was possible vnto him / The kyng, at  
 his departyng, gaf him grete giftes / And whan the kyng came in 12  
 to France. to ffrance / he forgate not his good Hoste at Tolet in Spayne / nor  
 his Nevewe, nor his wif / that longe had logged him / for he thought  
 it was reason, now he was of suche estate & power, to remembre  
 them that had so moche done for him / Wherefore he sent vnto them,  
 assertaynyng them who he was that they had logged, praing them 16  
 alle to come vnto him / And whan they spake with the messenger /  
 & had verrily vnderstande his message / they were alle supprised  
 with ioie / and in alle haste possible arredied them to go vnto the  
 kinge / whiche, at their comyng, made them passing grete chere / 20  
 and thanked them of the grete goodnesse they had shewed him in  
 his disease / and gaf vnto eche of them / of land / possessions and  
 offices, y-nough for them, and those that shold come of them, to lyve  
 [1 lf. 123, bk.] alway in honour / Aftir thise tidynges thus done, <sup>1</sup>the olde Quene 24  
 of ffrance contynued the remenaunt of her daies with grete ioie in  
 goode & perfit lif. The Duc of Burgoigne coude not departe from  
 his Nevewe / The kinge, & the Quene his wif, contynued to-gedre  
 many yeres / & eche loued othir aswele as was possible / and serued, 28  
 loued, & dred god, helde the Realme alle their lif in grete Iustice,  
 peas, & tranquillite, and had children to their pleisir / The kyng of  
 Scottes departed from the kyng of Englonde, and brought his wif  
 home in-to Scotland / and bothe the king of Englonde, and he, & 32  
 their wyues, contynued in many yeres to-geder / & had children,  
 eche of them, suche as they were aftir right ioyfulle of / and helde  
 their Reaume in grete Iustice & peas / and their children contynued  
 in the same aftir their daies, hauyng moo Reaumes to gouerne than 36  
 their fadirs had / wherof this storie makith noo mencion. But y  
 suppose the Cronykells of the Reaume reherceth the noblesse of  
 them / Themperour lyved but a while aftir / Than felle the Reaume  
 of Sizile to the kyng of ffrance, by reason of his wif / wherof he 40

The King  
and Queen  
of France go

K. Philip  
rewards his  
old Host at  
Toledo.

King David  
and his  
English  
Queen go  
home to  
Scotland,  
have chil-  
dren, and  
live happily.

The Emperour  
dies, and  
Sicily falls



toke the possession. The Turke helde fermely the lawes of Ihesu  
 criste / and many of his Reaume / But the moost part wold neur  
 leve their feith / but he lyued not long aftir / nor neuer hadde childe  
 4 by his wif / & aftir his dethe, was neuer goddis [lawe] kepte nor  
 dred in that Cuntre / wherfore she went in-to Englonde agein / and  
 contynued the Remenaunt of hir lif with hir brothir.

to King  
Philip of  
France.

The Sultan's  
English  
widow comes  
home to  
England.

Thus endith this Boke, whiche hath ben translated with peyne,  
 8 for the length of tyme sith alle thise thinges felle. And vndir the  
 Boke was written,

Si fortuna tonat, caueto mergi.

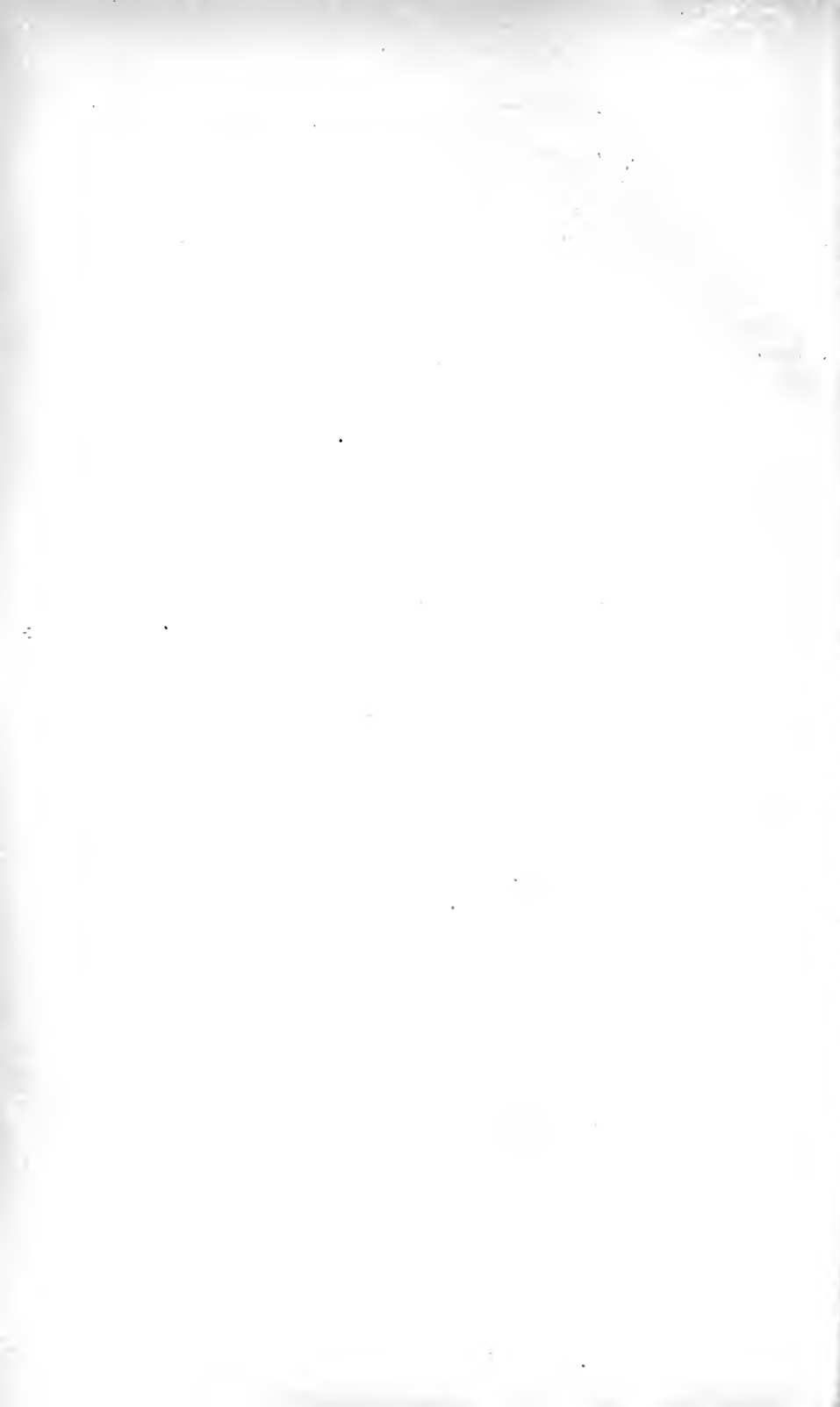
Si fortuna iuuat, caueto tolli.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A much later hand has written above these 2 verses, 4 others as prose :—

“by faith, we please the lord /  
 by faith, we are set free /  
 by faith we work the will of god,  
 faith will not idell bee.”

*Note to page 136, line 5.*

*Poo* or Peacock.—In the 14th century *Chanson de geste* of the *Vœux du Paon* (MS. Addit. Brit. Mus. 16,956, copied from a MS. No. 6985 (?) in the National Library at Paris: P. Paris *Manuscrits Français* iii. 106, A.D. 1840), “Porrus shoots the peacock (73 b.); it is served up at table, and Cassamus calls on all the knights to make their vows upon it (f. 74 b). ‘Elyot,’ a damsel of high degree, in the service of Fezomé (daughter of Godifer), carries it round; the vows are made, and the peacock is eaten (ff. 75-82 b).” Ward's *Catalog of Romances in Brit. Mus.* i. 147.



## GLOSSARY.

BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN.

- A, *interj.* ah! 8/18, 34.  
A, *pron.* he, 63/6, 109/7, 111/9.  
A, *vb.* have, 4/6, 69/28.  
Abielde, *vb. t.* habiled, dressed, 38/22;  
abiled, *pp.* 50/28; abile, *inf.* 38/22.  
Abused, *vb.* ill-used, 16/34.  
Accompany, *vb.* take associates to, 180/  
39.  
Amated, *pp.* dismayed, overcome, 66/  
34. See *Mate*.  
Amegred, *pp.* emaciated, 9/36. Fr.  
*amaigrir*.  
Amenyssht, *pp.* diminished, 4/9.  
Amonest, *vb.* admonish, warn, 5/12.  
O.Fr. *admonester*.  
And, *conj.* if, 7/7, 64/14.  
Anoon, *adv.* anon, 75/30.  
Arnee, *sb.* army, 40/5. Fr. *armée*.  
See *Navee*.  
Arnes, *sb.* do arms, fight, 61/11, 62/5.  
Fr. *faire armes*.  
Arowblast, *sb.* arblast, cross-bow, 42/  
30.  
Artrye, *sb.* artillery, 40/38; Arthery,  
76/30.  
Aryuail, *sb.* arrival, landing-place, 41/  
10.  
As and, as if, 13/37.  
Ascried, *vb.* challenged, 97/21.  
Asserteyne, *vb.* inform, 4/11, 38/3.  
Assured, *pp.* trained, 34/24, 193/18, 199/  
1. Comp. Fr. *assurer un oiseau*, i. e.  
a hawk, and also see *Ensured*. As-  
surance is a *sine qua non* of breeding:  
—'Be bold, be bold, in everything be  
bold, Be not too bold.'  
Aventure, *sb.* hazard, peril, 3/9, 66/12.  
Aught, *vb.* owed, 94/4.  
Ayenst, *prep.* a. hym, before him, on his  
entry, 19/14.  
THREE KINGS' SONS.
- Bargette, *sb.* small barge, 41/16. O.Fr.  
*bargette*.  
Be, *prep.* by, be than = by the time that,  
68/27.  
Beammes, *sb.* trumpets, 75/8.  
Beil, *vb.* befell, 2/23.  
Behelde, *vb.* looked, desired, 33/38.  
Belefte, *pp.* left, 13/31; bilefte, 165/39.  
Bien venu, *sb.* welcome, 131/35. Fr.  
*bien-venue*.  
Boorde, *sb.* table, 128/34, 132/13.  
Brake, *vb.* b. their embusshementes,  
comp. break cover, 30/37.  
Brayng, *sb.* groaning, 12/15.  
But, unless, 168/14; but yif, but if, un-  
less, 168/8.  
By & by, at once, 167/39.
- Castell, *sb.* somer Castells, 44/30. Per-  
haps read 'fore C.'  
Ceason, *sb.* season, 14/26, 21/20.  
Chapelet, *sb.* chaplet of beads: comp.  
Le chapelet se défile (of people falling  
away), 25/1.  
Chase, *vb.* chose, 68/3.  
Chaunge, *vb. t.* he chaunged him,  
changed his clothes, 178/35.  
Chesse, *sb.* chess, 10/19.  
Chierte, *sb.* affection, 162/7. O.Fr. *chiereté*.  
Cloos, *adj.* close, 30/6.  
Condite, *pp.* conducted, 94/23; condited,  
94/14; conduyte, *vb.* conduct, manage,  
9/5; *pp.* 72/9.  
Conduyt, *sb.* conduct, charge, 7/12.  
Costeyde, *vb. ?* directed themselves, as  
mariners did by the coast, 49/1.  
Costeyng, steering, 48/39. Fr. *côtoyer*.  
O.Fr. *costeier*.  
Credence, *sb.* credentials, 22/18, 24/121,  
98/31.

- Cure, *sb.* yn c., careful, 16/7.  
 Cured, *pp.* cared for, 8/26.  
 Currou, *sb.* scout, 15/9, 21/26. Fr. *coureur*.  
 Daies of my lif, all the days of my life, 159/33.  
 Damageous, *adj.* injurious, 77/19. O.Fr. *damajos*.  
 Daunger, *sb.* haue him . . in d. = have him at his mercy, 102/5, 128/31.  
 Dedly, *adv.* in a deadly way, 169/38.  
 Demaunde, *vb.* it is no d. = it is no question, 72/14.  
 Departir, *sb.* departure, 27/37.  
 Depnesse, *sb.* deepness, depth, 41/17.  
 Despense, *sb.* expense, 26/21; dispence, 89/33.  
 Despurueu, ill off (translated dispurveyed on p. 19), 9/24, 19/11. Fr. *dépouru*.  
 Diffended, *vb.* prevented, 146/11.  
 Differed, *pp.* parted from, 102/5.  
 Diligence, *sb.* pains, duty, 43/9, 14.  
 Discomfortable, *adj.* uncomfortable, 31/38.  
 Discomfortid, *pp.* afflicted, 11/38. Fr. *déconforté*.  
 Disherite, *pp.* deprived of his inheritance, 1/17.  
 Dispende, *vb.* spend, 101/23.  
 Dispureaunce, *sb.* dispurveyance, destitution, lack (of children), 25/34.  
 Dispuruaide, *adj.* dispurveyed, unprovided, 4/19, 19/9.  
 Doket, *sb.* ducat, six shillings and eightpence, 108/6.  
 Doule, *sb.* dole, grief, 77/37. Fr. *deuil*.  
 Draught, *sb.* shot, range of a weapon, 42/30, 44/33.  
 Dredefulle, *adj.* dreadful, full of fear, 152/24.  
 Dressid, *pp.* prepared, 164/1.  
 Dressith, *vb.* applieth, turneth, 81/3.  
 Dymant, *sb.* diamond, 163/19. Fr. *diamant*.  
 Elegged, *pp.* alleged, 100/22.  
 Embandon, *vb.* abandon, 88/13.  
 Emploiede, *vb.* applied to, continued, 13/40.  
 Enclosed, *pp.* shut up, straitened, 151/11.  
 Enewred, *pp.* inured, hardened, 2/30.  
 Enlargissing, *sb.* enlargement, release, 102/1.  
 Enquerre, *sb.* enquiry, 63/22. O.Fr. *enquerre*.  
 Ensured, *pp.* trained, 10/18. See *Assured*.  
 Entend, *vb.* listen to, attend to, 12/12. Fr. *entendre*.  
 Entremete, *vb.* meddle, 7/3. Fr. *s'entremettre*.  
 Entreprise, *vb.* undertake, 9/10; entreprynse, 4/22, 6/38.  
 Erste, *adv.* noon erste, not sooner, 19/18.  
 Escape, *vb.* escaped, 46/9, 58/27.  
 Eurous, *adj.* fortunate, happy, 35/4, 38/26; ewrous, 101/2. Fr. *heureux*.  
 Ewred, *adj.* destined, fortunated, 62/23.  
 Feliship, *sb.* escort, company of troops, band, 28/23, 31/33, 45/6.  
 Feuyrer, *sb.* February, 9/20, 27/37. Fr. *février*.  
 Fille, *vb.* fell, 143/40.  
 Flee, *sb.* fugitive, 149/7.  
 Florence, *sb.* florin (Sicilian florin is 2s. 6d.), 155/19.  
 Forerider, *sb.* advanced rider, 14/33; forrider, 31/34.  
 Fors, no fors = no matter, 171/27. Fr. *force*.  
 Fortraunail, *adj.* tired out, 31/19.  
 Fote, *sb.* foot (Proverb), 29/5.  
 Fronters, *sb.* frontiers, 28/32.  
 Frussh, *sb.* burst, 15/27. O.Fr. *froisser*.  
 Fynaunce, *sb.* ransom (used also in Romance of *Partenay*, l. 1853), 20/39, 93/13, 94/6, 95/11.  
 Fyne, *sb.* end, 8/17. Fr. *fin*.  
 Gabbid, *pp.* talked idly, lied, 32/12. Comp. Fr. *gaber*.  
 Golde, *sb.* gold, 18/24; goold, 13/21.  
 Gonne shotte, gunshot, 42/33; gownes, guns, 75/34.  
 Grehounde, *sb.* greyhound, 30/30.  
 Gressith, *vb.* grazeth, 112/13.  
 Half, *sb.* at the lest h. = at least, 92/26. Before 'half' (92/8), words were probably left out by the MS. copyist.  
 Hardies, *sb.* boldness, 23/30. Fr. *hardiesse*.  
 Herbegeour, *sb.* harbinger, marshal, 178/3; herbeior, 53/31.  
 Hoolde, *vb.* hold, 51/10.  
 Hou . . . someuer, howsoever, 8/15.  
 Humbles, *sb.* humblesse, humility, 35/39.

- Induce, *vb.* introduce, induct, 2/16.  
 Infortune, *sb.* misfortune, 1/23, 45/37.  
   *Fr. infortune.*  
 Journey, *sb.* battle, fight, 15/31, 32/29.  
   *Fr. journée.*  
 Iubarde, *sb.* jeopardy, 78/13; iubardy, 169/25.  
 Inbarde, *vb.* jeopard, 171/26.  
 Labores, *sb.* labourers, ? 'laboreres,' 97/33, 102/15.  
 Large, *adj.* bountiful, free-handed, 164/15; a large half heure = a full h. h., 33/27.  
 Large, at their = at large, 163/2.  
 Lawe, *sb.* faith, 132/9.  
 Leest, *adv.* least, 17/29.  
 Lette, *vb.* hinder, prevent, 70/18.  
 Leue, *sb.* leave, haue l. = have taken l., 162/11; liberty to go, 162/31.  
 Leue, *vb.* leave, 29/27; leueth, *imp.* leave off, 119/16; leue of, leave off, 119/32.  
 Leue, *vb.* live, 29/28; leuyth, liveth, 11/39.  
 Leve, *vb.* believe, 151/22.  
 Loos, *sb.* praise, 17/23, 117/36. *Fr. los.*  
 Lyuerey, *sb.* delivery, 53/6.  
 Make, *sb.* mate, 63/8.  
 Male-eurus, *adj.* unhappy, unlucky, 60/17. *Fr. malheureux*, O.*Fr. maleureus*.  
 Malyncolious, *adj.* melancholy, 79/16. O.*Fr. melancolious*.  
 Maner, *sb.* manuer (manners), politeness, 33/8; manere, 29/1; the manere, 36/18. *Fr. manière*.  
 Marchers, *sb.* lords of the marches, 6/9.  
 Marches, *sb.* borders, 6/37, 9/26.  
 Mate, *adj.* mortified, downcast, 79/22. *Fr. maté*.  
 Maugre, *sb.* ill-will, 81/12, 180/29. *Fr. malgré, mal gré*.  
 Mette, *vb.* meet, 179/33; met, 179/34.  
 Meyne, *sb.* attendants, household, 88/7. O.*Fr. maisnée, meyné*.  
 Mischief, *sb.* mishap, at a m., in evil plight, 52/28. O.*Fr. meschief*.  
 Moorning, *vb.* mourning, 7/26.  
 Moost, *adv.* most, 13/28, 30.  
 Most, *vb.* must, 21/19.  
 Muster, *sb.* make his musters (of knights), watch his arms, 156/24.  
 Mysbelcue, *sb.* misbelief, heresy, 13/7.  
 Navce, *sb.* navy, 40/13. O.*Fr. navie*.  
 Neuirles, nevertheless, 65/40.  
 Noblè, nobley, *sb.* magnificence, dignity, 68/5, 179/21.  
 Non, *sb.* noon, 92/5.  
 Nounpareil, nonpareil, matchless, 55/28.  
 Nowell, cry (Nowell is also used by Chaucer), 192/23. *Fr. crier Noël*, cry Christmas (used for a wished-for thing), and much like 'Hurrah.'  
 Obeisaunce, *sb.* obedience, 4/22.  
 Of, *adv.* off, 2/36, 53/2.  
 Of, *prep.* for, like *Fr. de*, 35/33.  
 On, *prep.* used like *Fr. sur*, conquer on . . ., 72/11.  
 Ordeyned, *pp.* cared, prescribed for, looked to, 19/12.  
 Othe, *vb.* swear, 163/2.  
 Ouirthrewe, *vb.* was overthrown, 16/18. See also *Conquest of Ireland*, 62/21.  
 Out, *vb.* get out, 6/22.  
 Pame, *sb.* tennis, 37/25. *Fr. paume*.  
 Party, *sb.* game, match, 67/7. *Fr. partie, tenir la partie*.  
 Pavis, *sb. pl.* large shields for covering body, 52/12. *Fr. parois*.  
 Peas, *sb.* peace, 4/3; pees, 1/7. O.*Fr. pais*.  
 Peisaunt, *adj.* weighty, 25/8. *Fr. pesant*.  
 Perdicion, *sb.* destruction, 68/32.  
 Perdurable, *adj.* everlasting, eternal, 7/32. *Fr. perdurable*.  
 Peyne, *sb.* pain, trouble, work, 69/7.  
 Pleasir, *sb.* pleasure, 6/6, 17/33. *Fr. plaisir*.  
 Point, *sb.* break, 59/28, 67/13. *Fr. point du jour*.  
 Poo, *sb.* peacock, 136/5, etc.  
 Premener, *sb.* promoter, 6/38.  
 Purceuant, *sb.* pursuivants, 32/28.  
 Recomfort, *sb.* comfort, 11/28.  
 Recomfort, *vb.* comfort, 12/8.  
 Recouerir, *sb.* recovery, 84/39, 86/13.  
 Recoured, *pp.* recovered, 22/22.  
 Recured, *pp.* recovered, made their way back, 124/29.  
 Redeles, *adj.* senseless, 70/30.  
 Reise, *vb.* raise, levy, 91/14.  
 Renay, *vb.* deny, 102/14; rennaye, 158/22. *Fr. renier*, Lat. *renegare*.  
 Renome, renone, *sb.* renown, 4/1, 159/22. *Fr. renom*.  
 Renomee, *sb.* renown, 98/25. *Fr. renommée*.

Rescous, *sb.* rescue, 125/23; rescouse, 125/5; rescuse, 46/1, 69/7. O.Fr. *rescouste*.

Resort, *vb.* retire, 157/15; resorted, returned, 76/28.

RESSplendissed, *vb. int.* glittered, 123/8. Fr. *resplendir*.

Retoured, *vb. t.* turned, 16/16. Fr. *retourner*.

Rood, *vb.* rode, 75/33.

Rought, *vb.* recked, 155/12.

Russet, *vb.* ? rushed, 60/10.

Ryuage, *sb.* beach, shore, 40/16. Fr. *rivage*.

Sad, *adj.* sober, 24/18.

Sacred, *pp.* consecrated, 86/36. Fr. *sacré*.

Salowed, *vb.* saluted, 104/36. Fr. *saluer*.

Sauffcondite, *sb.* safe conduct, 93/40. Fr. *sauvconduit*.

Saute, *sb.* assault, 52/12.

Sawe, *prep.* save, except, 87/25.

Scutes, *sb.* florins (see p. 72), 71/14. Fr. *écu*, so called from the shield of arms on it. Here it is the small *écu*, or half-crown.

Serpentyne, *sb.* serpentine, gun with bore of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches, 40/38.

Showre, *sb.* storm, tempest, shower, 131/11.

Somer, *sb.* sumpter, 53/39. Fr. *sommier*.

Sowde, *vb.* pay, 4/27. Fr. *souder*.

Sowne, *sb.* swoon, 11/24.

Spense, *sb.* expense, 122/14.

Spore, *vb.* spur, 49/15.

Spradde, *pp.* spread, 38/8.

Sprynge, *sb.* spring of day, like *point*, 140/36.

Stale, *vb.* stole, 152/25.

Steerne, *sb.* helm, 60/10.

Suffised, *pp.* contented, 8/38.

Surely, *adv.* in safety, 177/6.

Surmountour, *sb.* surpasser, exceller, 177/9.

Surnoine, *pp.* surnamed, 36/39. Fr. *sur-nommé*.

Surtee, *sb.* affidavit, treaty, 107/40. Fr. *sureté*.

Swone, *sb.* swoon, 39/25.

Sy, *vb.* saw, 15/34.

Taberyne, *sb.* tabor, 40/24. O.Fr. *tabourin*.

Tain, *num. adj.* one, 14/31.

Taklee, *pp.* tackled, rigged, 81/32.

Taried, *vb.* detained, 10/27.

Than, *conj.* by than = by when, by the time that, 68/27, 152/15.

There as = where, 13/19. See *Where as*.

Titinges, *sb.* ? thinges, things, 109/39.

To, *prep.* on board; to shippe = aship, 39/37.

Toppis, *sb.* tops (of the masts), 44/30.

To-scrag, *pp.* scratched, 130/9.

Touchid, *vb. t.* to, touched, 25/22.

Tough, *conj.* though (note pronunciation), 11/14.

Trapoures, *sb.* trappings, 185/10. Fr. *trappure*.

Treter, *sb.* traitor, 18/13.

Trist, *adj.* sad, 26/36. Fr. *triste*.

Trussid, *pp.* packed, 168/28. O.Fr. *trosser*, *torser*.

Vacche, *sb.* watch, 74/39.

Valet, *sb.* servant, 30/26.

Vesselt, *sb. pl.* vessels, 63/35.

Vigours, *adj.* vigorous, 20/15.

Vndrowned, *pp.* unsunk, 42/34.

Vnsayne, *pp.* unseen, 166/21.

Vntolde, *vb.* did not tell, left untold, 174/30.

Vp, *adv.* they founde vp, 53/24. Comp. hunt up.

Vred, *pp.* well ured = fortunate, happy, 145/15.

Vrous, *adj.* happy, 181/14.

Wacche, *sb.* the belle of the wacche, 123/3. Comp. τοῦ κώδωνος παρενεχθίεντος, Thuc. iv. 135. London Watchmen also carried bells.

Warte, *sb.* ward, warder, 14/32.

Weeles, *sb.* weals, goodnesses, 133/32; weelis, 33/3; wele, 36/24; welcs, prosperities, 24/21.

Wery, *vb.* were, 153/3.

What-som-euer, whatsoever, 27/24.

Where as = where, 14/29.

Where-someuir, wheresoever, 64/40.

Wided, *pp.* voided, departed, 88/11.

Wilke, *vb.* walked, 47/19.

Wite, *vb.* know, 12/24, 168/34.

Withelde, *vb.* retained, 22/31.

Yelde, *vb.* repay, requite, 37/7.

Yen, *sb.* eyen, eyes, 79/40.

Yngoodly, *adj.* excellent, 174/23.

Yolden, *pp.* yielded, 176/38.

# INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, &c.

BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN.

- ALBORS, King of Spain, weds his daughter to the King of Sicily, 3.
- Alfour, King of Sicily, marries Princess Sybil of Spain, daughter of King Albors, 3; has a daughter, Iolante, 3; seeks help against the Turks, 4; gets no help, 5; is joined by Ferant and Prince Philip, 14; hears of capture of Ferabras, 21; Ferabras is handed over to him, 33; Prince Philip presented to him, 34; the French, English, and Scotch expedition reach Gaeta, 40; he is complained of by his allies, 54, who suffer loss by a storm, 59; holds a Council about the loss of the allies at sea, 66; goes to Naples, 68; proposals for ransom of Ferabras laid before him, 94; resolves to consult Ferant about it, 95; welcomes Prince Philip and Prince David at Court, 108; plans defence of Naples against the Turks, 120, 121; gives his officers a banquet, 132; recaptures his towns, 145, 152; is made Emperor, 146; refuses to let Orcays be ransomed, 148; consults his Council on marriage of Iolante, 153; holds a preliminary Tourney on her account, 156, and proclaims final one, 158; goes to Milan to be crowned, and to Rome, 163; welcomes King Humphrey, 181; holds the Tourney, 188; agrees to help the Sultan, 197; visits England, 204; visits Scotland, 204; his death, 206.
- Baltasar, a mercenary, a knight of the Sultan's, 42.
- Brunswick, Frederick, Duke of, 146.
- Burgundy, Duke of, is made regent of France, 86; talks with Philip, 166; intends personating Philip at the Tourney, 168; goes to Naples, 182; is met by the Emperor, 185; refuses Orcays' sister, 197, 206.
- Bussaunt, Earl of (? Buchan), saved from shipwreck, 63.
- Capletrent, 122. Cape (or Point) Tri-onto, on the coast of Italy, extending into the Gulf of Taranto. Lat. 39° 35' N.; long. 16° 50' E.
- Charles, King of France, marries a daughter of the King of Nauerne (? Navarre), 1; they have a son, 1; is urged by his son to help the King of Sicily, 5; he declines, 5-7; finds his son is departed, 11; his ships at Gaeta, 43; reproaches himself, 65.
- Constable of France, 43; his fate unknown, 63.
- David, Prince of Scotland, heads the Scotch troops, 27; holds a Council, 46; is shipwrecked, 60, and taken, 61; saved by his captor, and released, 62; goes to Sizé, 72; joins in the sally, 75; captures his captor, Prince Orcays, 76, and sets him free, 77; his rashness, 99; goes to the Neapolitan Court, 108; relates his adventures, 133; goes to see Iolante, 151; does well at the Tourney, 157; goes home, 163; his arrival, 175; succeeds his father, 177; returns to Sicily, 178; returns home, 201; his marriage, 204.
- Douglas, Earl, of Scotland, 39; shipwrecked, 60; slain, 61, 133.
- Dover, 203.

England, King of, promises help to the Sicilians, 24; prepares his forces, 38; laments his loss, 65; sorrows for his son's departure for Sicily, 84; mourns his son as dead, 86; dies, 175. See *Humphrey*.

Ferabras, King of Persia, brother to the Sultan, with him subdues half Sicily, 13; is at Fondi, 14; is captured by Prince Philip in a skirmish, 16; desires to see his captor, 18, 20; is handed over to King of Sicily, 33; proposals for his ransom laid before the King, 94; a Council held thereon, 101; Turkish knights visit him in prison, 104; is enlarged for a time, 106; reaches the Sultan, 107; sends Prince Humphrey to Prince Philip, 113; Sultan apologizes to him, 115; goes to Persia about his ransom, 116; terms of his ransom, 155.

Ferant, a Sicilian knight, King Alfou's Seneschal, is sent to Spain to ask help, 13; leaves Toledo with Prince Philip, 13; reaches Sicily, 14; is rescued by Philip, 16; visits him, 19; reports Ferabras's capture to the king, 21; his troops attacked by troops of King Ferabras of Persia, 30; commands garrison of Sizé with Philip, 68; Prince David of Scotland joins him, 72; sallies out of Sizé, 75; resolves on a sortie, 96; blames Philip and David for rashness, 99; holds a Council to advise King of Sicily, 100; is welcomed at Court, 108; takes the three Princes to the Emperor, 151; is sorry at their departure, 161.

Fosses, a town four miles from Gaeta, 51; is captured from the Turks, 53.

Foundey (Fondi), a town near Gaeta, in kingdom of Two Sicilies, is held by the Turks, 14; Scotch spies come near it, 47.

France, King of, Charles, weds a Princess of Nauerne (? Navarre), 1; objects to help Sicily, 5; is against his son's departure, 7; mourns at his departure, 11; agrees to help Sicily, 24; prepares his forces, 38; recalls them after the shipwreck, 63; his death, 86. See *Philip*.

Gayette, Gaeta, occupied by the Sultan,

and the Christian fleet anchor there, 40; Turks repel the Christians, 45; the fleet leaves it, 56; is recaptured from the Turks, 147.

Humphrey, Prince, of England, 78; wishes to help Sicily, 81; starts, 83; is captured, 85; is let out of prison, 110; the Sultan wants to drown him, 111; King Ferabras sends him to Prince Philip, 113; joins the other Princes, 117; tells of his release, 134; is taken to the Neapolitan Court, 151; at the Tourney, 157; goes home, 163; is told of his father's illness, 170; goes to his father's death-bed, 173; is crowned king, 175; makes ready for the Tourney, 175; is welcomed back at Naples, 181; second at the final Tournament, 195; marries Oreays' sister, 200; returns home, 201; his sisters marry the Sultan and the King of Scotland, 204; returns from Scotland, 205.

Iolante, daughter of the King of Sicily, 3; desires to see Prince Philip, 23; Philip falls in love with her, 37; she loves him secretly, 109; the three Princes go to visit her, 151; her marriage pondered, 153; a three days' Tourney is to decide it, 154; the preliminary Tourney, 156; the grand Tourney proclaimed, 158; is told that Philip will win her in the Tourney, 190; meets Philip, 193; dances with him, 194; her marriage, 196; welcomed in France as queen, 202; goes to England, 203.

Le toure de Gretus, a port near Gaeta, 56.

London, 171, 203.

Luby (? Lybia), King of, 145.

Millayne (Milan), 163.

Naples, the King of the Two Sicilies goes there, 67, 68; Turkish messengers arrive there, 94; Neapolitan Court, 108; the Sultan resolves to besiege it, 120; the king arranges the defence, 121; the siege, 123; Ferant sets a gallows up on the walls, to hang Oreays, 127; a grand banquet there, 132; the Turks do not succeed,



137; the siege raised, 140; the Sultan killed before it, 142; Council held there, 153; preliminary Tournament to decide about Iolante's marriage, 156; adorned for final Tournay, 185.

Nauerne (? Navarre), 1.

Oliver, Ferant's brother, is captain at Taprey, 14, 29, 49, 51.

Orcays, son of the Great Turk, takes Prince David of Scotland, and sets him free again, 61, 62; sends him to his friends, 71; is captured by Prince David, 76; released by him, 77; is captured again, 125; gallows prepared for him, 127; at the banquet, 132; tells his history, 135; vows to give back his father's conquests, 136; in love with Iolante, 137; the Turks wish to ransom him, 149; his ransom advised, 153; terms of it, 155; is at the Tournay, 157; his departure, 159; wants Iolante, 164; his return to Sicily, as Sultan, 179; offers to turn Christian, 180; turns Christian, and takes name of Charles, 187; goes to England, 201; marries a sister of David of Scotland, 204; returns to Turkey, 205; his widow returns to England, 207.

Paris, 9, 12.

Peacock, used to swear by, 136.

Persia. See *Ferabras*.

Philip, son of Charles, King of France, is born, 1; is christened, 2; urges his father to help the King of Sicily, 5; is grieved at refusal, 7; resolves to go to Sicily, 9; leaves Paris, and changes his name, 9; goes to Toledo and falls sick, 10; starts from Toledo with Ferant, 13; reaches Sicily, 14; fights his first skirmish, 15; captures King Ferabras, 16; the Sicilian ladies are anxious to see him, 23; is ordered to Sicily, 28; retakes King Ferabras, 31; pledges his faith to Ferant, 35; falls in love with Iolante, 37; commands garrison of Size with Ferant, 68; is at the Council on ransoming of Ferabras, 101; advises Christian captives to be freed, 102; is welcomed at Neapolitan Court with Ferant and David of Scotland, 108; is

joined by Prince Humphrey of England, 117; is captured by the Turks, 124; the Sultan resolves to hang him, 126; is rescued, 129; helps to take Gaeta, 146; Iolante sorrows for his supposed death, 150; is taken by Ferant to her, 151; does best of all at the preliminary Tournay, 157; resolves to return home, 159; returns, 163; talks with his uncle, 166; returns to Naples, 182; acts as his uncle's squire, 184; his supposed absence lamented, 187; does best at the Tournament, 189, etc.; the Emperor embraces him, 192; is taken to see Iolante, 193; accepts her, and is married, 196; his welcome in France, 202; goes to England, 203; returns home, 205; succeeds to throne of Sicily, 206.

Port Dean, in Scotland, 39.

Rome, 163.

Schuse, Shuys, 206.

Scotland: the king refuses to help Sicily, 6; the Estates advise him to do so, 25; Prince David heads expedition, 27; the king makes joint preparations with France and England, 38; the joint fleet reaches Gaeta, 40; is repulsed, 45; Scotch spies sent out, 47; losses in the Scotch fleet, 63; grief of the king, 65; his death, 177. See *David*.

Shipwreck of vessels of the allied fleet, 59, 63.

Sicily, *i. e.* the Two Sicilies, *passim*.

Size, Sessa, a town near Gaeta, a garrison left there, 67; the Turks resolve to lay siege to it, 69; Prince David goes there, 73; Prince Orcays captured in a sally, 75, 76; daily sallies, 87; the Turks think of raising the siege, 89; a sortie resolved on, 96; success of it, 98.

Spain. King of, asked to help Sicily, 13; will give no help, 66. See *Albors*.

Sultan (the Grand Turk), subdues half Sicily, 13; opposes the landing at Gaeta, 40; calls a Council, 42; detains Prince David, 62; resolves to besiege Size, 69; goes to see the encampment, 75; calls a Council about the siege, 88; wishes a truce, 103, and settles it, 107; leaves garrisons

- in Sicily, 109 ; wants to kill Prince Humphrey, 112 ; apologizes to King Ferabras, 115 ; appeals to his subjects for help, 119 ; resolves to besiege Naples, 120 ; wishes to hang Prince Philip, 127 ; sees the siege is useless, 137 ; holds another Council, 138 ; is killed before Naples, 142.
- Sybil, the King of Spain's daughter, marries King Alfour of Sicily, 3.
- Talpoir, same as Taprey, 21, 22.
- Taprey, a town in the kingdom of the Two Sicilies, near Gaeta, 14, 16 ; called Tapyr, 47 ; still held by Oliver, 48, 51.
- Toledo. See *Towlette*.
- Tournament, preliminary, to decide about marriage of Iolante, 154, 156 ; the field for the final one is settled, 187, 188 ; King Philip's side wins, 189, 191, 195 ; the party disperses, 201.
- Towlette, Toledo in Spain, is reached by Prince Philip, 10 ; he lies sick there, 12, 22, 206.
- Turks make war against Sicily, 4 ; repulse the Christian fleet at Gaeta, 45 ; besiege Sizé, 69 ; make a year's truce, 107 ; besiege Naples, 123 ; blame their Sultan, 139 ; defeated before Naples, 142 ; are downcast, 149 ; make a three years' truce, 155. See *Sultan*.
- Warwick, Earl of, welcomes Prince Humphrey on part of King of England, 171, 172.
- Warwick, son of the Earl of, reproaches Prince Humphrey, 79, 82.







10. 10. 10.

**PRATT**

-8. MAR. 1903  
JAN 7 1985

**VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY**

